

**PROJECT FOR STATISTICS ON LIVING STANDARDS  
AND DEVELOPMENT**

**SOUTH AFRICANS RICH AND POOR:  
BASELINE HOUSEHOLD STATISTICS**

**AUGUST 1994**

## PROJECT FOR STATISTICS ON LIVING STANDARDS AND DEVELOPMENT

This Project has been a team effort involving dozens of people in different capacities. The list that follows names those who worked on the Project, recognising that a number of people served in more than one capacity. The importance and quality of the field work done by the survey organisations (which are listed below) is gratefully acknowledged but the names of all those who worked in their teams around the country have not been included. Similarly, the many different people who participated in workshops; technical advisory groups; or as individual critics are not listed here but are warmly thanked for their important contributions to the overall work of the Project.

### Reference Group

Brigalia Bam; Frans Barker; Cheryl Carolus; Liz Clarke; Patricia de Lille; Alec Erwin; Peter Hansen/Yoke Brandt; Marion Jacobs; Johan Liebenberg; Mak Makalima; Trevor Manuel; Joe Matthews; Charles Meth; Eric Molobe; Wiseman Nkuhlu; Selva Saman; Lawrence Schlemmer; Charles Simkins; Mahlamola Skhosana; and Nick Vink; plus members of the Steering Committee.

### Steering Committee

Francis Wilson (Chairperson); Pieter le Roux (Institute for Social Development, University of the Western Cape); Pundy Pillay; Servaas van der Berg (Department of Economics, University of Stellenbosch); and Martin West.

### Sampling Team

Pundy Pillay (Project Director); Chris Scott (Consultant); Carlo del Ninno; Servaas van der Berg; Peter Ellis; Ashley Ruiters; Mark Kensley; Ib Thompson (1992); and Sintu Mpambani (Transkei)

### Survey Organisations

The Bureau of Market Research (Pretoria); Data Research Africa (Durban); Human Sciences Research Council (Cape Town); Human Sciences Research Council (Durban); Mark Data (Pretoria); and Social Surveys (Johannesburg).

### Statistical Tables: Production and Editorial

Dudley Horner (Co-ordinator) and Carlo del Ninno (World Bank); with Ingrid Woolard (DBSA); Yisgedullish Amde; Ameena Parker; Rahiema Sulaiman; Faldie Esau; Mark Kensley; and Ashley Ruiters; with helpful inputs from Harold Alderman; Lawrence Haddad; Neeta Sirur; as well as Pieter le Roux; Pundy Pillay; Servaas van der Berg; and Francis Wilson.

### Saldru Management Team

Francis Wilson (Director); Dudley Horner (Deputy Director); Pundy Pillay (Project Director); Lynne Aschmann (until April 1993); Jaqui Goldin; Saddick Johaadien (until December 1993); and Lesego Mosetle; with support from: Brenda Adams; Faldie Esau; Nomabaso Mquqo; and Lynn Woolfrey.

### World Bank Team

Neeta Sirur (Leader); Harold Alderman; Carlo del Ninno; Lawrence Haddad; Chris Scott (Consultant); Ib Thompson (1992); Peter Ellis; Yisgedullish Amde; and Rhodora Mendoza.

### Data Capture

Saddick Johaadien (until December 1993); Simon Mpele (Supervisor); Rahiema Sulaiman (Supervisor); and data capturers: Galiema Davids; Judith Fillmore; Bonita Manuel; Malika Marlie; and Bronwyn Stewart.

### Regional and Thematic Studies

Peter Ellis (Facilitator); Dudley Horner and Moira Levy (Editorial); and Jaqui Goldin (Production); plus authors and co-researchers as listed in the individual studies.

### Verification and Cleaning

Pieter le Roux; Wilmot James; Rahiema Sulaiman; Ingrid Woolard (DBSA); Ameena Parker; Bronwyn Stewart; Simon Mpele; Victor Thamage; Pumza Mpoyiya; Cheryl Thebus; Cathy Searle; Jaqui Goldin; Deborah Hene; Anna Mosetle; and Mandisa Moyake; with much help from World Bank partners including Harold Alderman; Carlo del Ninno; Lawrence Haddad; and Yisgedullish Amde.

## Acknowledgement of Donors

We are indebted to the governments of Denmark, The Netherlands and Norway for their generous sponsorship of this project.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Introduction.....</b>	<b>i</b>
<b>Methodology .....</b>	<b>iii</b>
<b>General notes.....</b>	<b>viii</b>
<b>Calculation of weights by enumeration and census.....</b>	<b>ix</b>
<b>Sample of all survey clusters .....</b>	<b>x</b>
<b>Map.....</b>	<b>xx</b>
<b>List of statistical tables .....</b>	<b>xxi</b>
Chapter One: Distribution of sampling frame.....	1
Chapter Two: Household structure and demographics.....	17
Chapter Three: Education .....	29
Chapter Four: Housing characteristics and living conditions.....	59
Chapter Five: Rural land: access and use .....	95
Land: access and use .....	95
Agricultural production.....	109
Chapter Six: Employment and income earning activities .....	127
Employment status and earnings from wage activities .....	127
Self-employment .....	177
Transportation .....	185
Chapter Seven: Remittances .....	195
Chapter Eight: Expenditure, food consumption and debt structure.....	209
Chapter Nine: Health incidence and expenditure .....	247
Chapter Ten: Fertility .....	271
Chapter Eleven: Children's health and nutritional status.....	277
Chapter Twelve: Perceived quality of life .....	287
Chapter Thirteen: Welfare and income distribution.....	309
<b>APPENDIX .....</b>	<b>343</b>
<b>List of Regional papers and Cross-cutting themes .....</b>	<b>344</b>
<b>Questionnaire .....</b>	<b>1</b>

## SOUTH AFRICANS RICH AND POOR: BASELINE HOUSEHOLD STATISTICS

### INTRODUCTION

This book contains the main selection of tables from a major survey of some 9000 households, drawn from a carefully selected sample throughout the length and breadth of South Africa. The principal purpose of the survey, which was undertaken during the nine months leading up to the country's first democratic elections at the end of April 1994, was to collect hard statistical information about the conditions under which South Africans live in order to provide policy makers with the data required for planning strategies to implement such goals as those outlined in the Government of National Unity's Reconstruction and Development Programme.

The idea for such a survey was first mooted by a delegation of South Africans, from the African National Congress and the Congress of South African Trade Unions, led by Mr. Thabo Mbeki, when they met officials of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (World Bank) in Washington in April 1992. Responding to the South African request for more thinking about effective strategies to combat poverty, the World Bank sent a task force, led by Ms. Neeta Sirur, to the country to assess what needed to be done. As a result of this visit the Southern Africa Labour & Development Research Unit (Saldru) in the School of Economics at the University of Cape Town was asked to co-ordinate and manage the collection of data required. In order to broaden the base of the process a small steering committee drawn from social scientists at all three universities in the Western Cape was appointed to oversee the project. At the same time a reference group of persons, drawn from across the political spectrum, was established in order to ensure that the process was as technically sound, politically legitimate, and ideologically unbiased as possible.

Funding for the Project was generously provided by the governments of Denmark, the Netherlands and Norway working through the World Bank whose participation in the Project enabled the South African team to draw on a wide range of international experience and advice. A notable feature of the process has been the fruitful interaction between South Africans responsible for the Survey and the staff and consultants of the Bank. What began as a debate between South Africans and officials of the World Bank about the Survey rapidly became a discussion amongst interested colleagues on how best to deal with the different problems (e.g. sampling) that emerged during the course of the Project. The model of a project of this nature, run by citizens of the country concerned in such a way as to enable creative inputs and interaction from and with an institution such as the World Bank, is, we believe, one that needs to be developed further.

Two important understandings were reached and agreed upon in the early negotiations. One was that the data obtained as a result of the Survey would be public property, available to anybody wished to make use of it. It would not belong to any particular research institute, university, government department, nor to the World Bank. The data, it was agreed, would be placed in the public domain. In this way those involved in the Survey hoped to encourage and consolidate an attitude in South Africa that sees the public accessibility to all such data, from whatever source, as a fundamental attribute of a democratic society. It is in this spirit that this book of statistical tables drawn from the data is being published as rapidly as possible. And it is in this spirit that computer disks and code books containing the data itself are also available, for a nominal fee, to any person who wishes to use it.



The second important understanding lay in recognition of the fact that collection of data was not the only goal. No less important was the need to ensure that the actual process of running the Project happened in such a way as to enlarge and strengthen the South African capacity to generate and to analyse such data. It was agreed that it was especially important to find ways of drawing upon the insights and experience, whilst simultaneously enhancing, the skills of South Africans in order to help overcome the legacies of Apartheid.

In order that the Survey might not take place in a vacuum, the World Bank suggested that a comprehensive search of the available literature be undertaken in order to collate all information about living standards and development in South Africa just prior to the start of the Survey itself. Basically this was an attempt to document how the situation had or had not changed in the decade since the main empirical work was done for the Second Carnegie Inquiry into Poverty & Development in 1983/84. Social scientists were drawn in from universities and other research organisations around the country, workshops were held, common guidelines were teased out, and a number of papers were commissioned. Altogether thirteen papers are being published by Saldru. Of these, nine are regional poverty profiles of the Eastern & Northern Transvaal, the PWV, Orange Free State & Qwa-Qwa, Kwazulu/Natal, Durban, Transkei, Ciskei, Port Elizabeth & Uitenhage, and the Western Cape. The other four are cross-cutting studies focusing on Energy, Nutrition, Water Supply, and Housing. These papers are listed on page 344.

One of the most important stages in the project was that of drafting the main questionnaire. Drawing largely on World Bank experience with similar surveys in other countries, a preliminary draft questionnaire (Mark One) was drawn up as a basis for discussion. A workshop in Cape Town involving some thirty social scientists and others from around South Africa took this draft apart and put it together again as Mark Two. This process of drawing upon a wide range of informed criticism and suggestions by means of commissioned comments and of workshops in different parts of the country went on for almost a full year and took the questionnaire through at least twelve drafts, three of which were tested in pilot projects in the field. The final result was by no means perfect but the process did help

to eliminate a number of inconsistencies and to ensure that a lot of thought (and debate!) went into deciding what to include, what to exclude, and how best to phrase each question. Needless to say those working on the Project discovered more flaws after it was too late to change Mark Twelve but the lessons learned during the course of this first, base line, survey can be incorporated into subsequent surveys as the new South Africa develops an ongoing capacity to monitor living standards and the emerging pattern of development.

Drawing up the integrated questionnaire was one part of the process. No less difficult was that of administering it, particularly in so diverse a field as South Africa. The Project was fortunate to be able to enlist the services of a number of professional survey organisations, each with different strengths, to apply the questionnaire in the field. The organisations which undertook the actual field-work were the Bureau of Market Research (Pretoria), Data Research Africa (Durban), Human Sciences Research Council (Durban), Mark Data (Pretoria) and Social Surveys (Johannesburg). In addition a team in Umtata lead by Mr. Sintu Mpambani, in close liaison with Saldru, worked through the Transkei.

In order to ensure consistency a number of workshops were held to train field workers in different parts of the country. Members of the Project staff, based in Cape Town, kept in close touch with the main offices of the survey organisations in different centres. The months during which this took place were not the quietest in South Africa's history and we should like to pay a special tribute to those data gatherers in the field who were prepared to take considerable risks in order to do their work. The hijacking of one minibus containing a set of already completed questionnaires was a sharp reminder of the difficulties facing survey organisations. In the event only two of the 360 clusters chosen in the sample were not surveyed because of the dangers involved. A process was also put into place whereby observers independent of the particular survey organisation working in an area were sent into the field to spot check the answers filled in for individual questionnaires. The process of verification in the field, whilst not as comprehensive as we should have liked, helped to confirm the accuracy of the household roster in most (though not quite all) areas of the country whilst at the same time alerting us to certain weaknesses

(particularly with regard to some of the anthropometric data) which meant that some tables could not be included in this book.

Once collected, the information gathered had to be entered into a computerised data base and then cleaned. This process involving meticulous attention to detail took several months. It is this set of data, the first based on a comprehensive sample of the entire South African population (including the former TBVC<sup>1</sup> states) and using an integrated household questionnaire, that is now available to all who wish to make use of it. But access to data in South Africa is not sufficient unless it is accompanied by a deliberate process of ensuring that those who might find the data useful for whatever purpose have acquired the skills to analyse it. To this end, plans have been made to ensure that publication of the data is followed by a series of workshops in a training programme aimed at those in government, in trade-unions, in policy-making bodies, in universities, in non-governmental institutions, and elsewhere. The purpose of these workshops is to ensure that, as far as possible, the data is disseminated in such a way that it becomes used to its fullest potential as a basis for public policy debate in this country. Meanwhile this book of tables has been prepared in order to provide readers, as quickly as possible, with the basic information about living standards, distribution, and the basic pattern of development in South Africa on the eve of its first democratic elections which paved the way for its transformation from an Apartheid state to a country ruled by a Government of National Unity.

It is hoped that this baseline study will be followed by others which will not only build upon all that has been learnt during the course of this survey but which will also enable South Africans to monitor changes taking place over time and to analyse critically, in a manner that facilitates affirmation or correction, the impact of policies that affect the pattern of development in the country.

<sup>1</sup> Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei. The other six non-independent homelands were also included in the sample.

## METHODOLOGY

### THE QUESTIONNAIRES

The main instrument used in the survey was a comprehensive household questionnaire. (See Appendix) This questionnaire covered a wide range of topics but was not intended to provide exhaustive coverage of any single subject. In other words, it was an integrated questionnaire aimed at capturing different aspects of living standards. The topics covered included demography, household services, household expenditure, educational status and expenditure, remittances and marital maintenance, land access and use, employment and income, health status and expenditure and anthropometry.

This questionnaire was available to households in two languages, namely English and Afrikaans. In addition, interviewers had in their possession a translation in the dominant African language/s of the region.

The first section of the questionnaire was a detailed household roster which provided for the basic demographic or personal details of individuals whom the respondent considered members of the household in terms of the specified criteria (see below). In the analysis of living standards the demographic information is necessary to provide answers to such questions as the following:

- (i) Who are the poor?
- (ii) What is the relationship between education, age, gender and household income?; and
- (iii) Are female-headed households more likely to be poor?

A crucial concept in the questionnaire was the definition of the **household**. The household definition was drawn up in such a manner as to avoid double-counting of individuals who may live in more than one place. Two definitions of the household were used. The first was used only in the first section of the questionnaire, i.e. the Household Roster and the second was

used for the rest of the questionnaire. The first definition of the household comprised all individuals who:

- "(i) live under this 'roof' or within the same compound/homestead/stand at least 15 days out of the past year; **and**
- (ii) when they are together they share food from a common source [i.e. they cook and eat together]; **and**
- (iii) contribute to or share in, a common resource pool" [i.e. they contribute to the household through wages and salaries or other cash and in-kind income or they may be benefitting from this income but not contributing to it, e.g. children, and other non-economically active people in the household]. Visitors were excluded from this definition.

The second definition of the household included only those members who had lived "under this roof for more than 15 days of the last 30 days". This definition was derived to eliminate double-counting of individuals.

The second section on household services was designed to obtain information regarding access to services, namely housing, water, sanitation and energy. This section could provide answers to the following questions: To what kind of housing do people have access? What is the degree of overcrowding? How much do households spend on housing? From where do households get water? What sanitation facilities are there available? What is the pattern of electricity distribution? What are the main sources of energy for the household? How much does the household spend on water and energy? This data is important to government and non-governmental organisations which are concerned with developing the country's infrastructure, in this case, housing, provision of water, sanitation and electricity.

Section Three of the questionnaire concerned food spending and consumption patterns of the household. There is an on-going debate both internationally and locally about whether data on income or data on expenditure are more accurate. Data on food expenditure is important for a number of reasons. Where income data is unreliable, absent or incomplete, expenditure provides an alternative measure of household

welfare. From a policy point of view, food spending data is essential for three main reasons. An analysis of the food expenditure pattern, particularly in poor households, can lead to government designing subsidies for particular commodities, e.g. maize, bread, milk, so that prices of these products are kept within the range of poor households. Secondly, analysis of food expenditure patterns, particularly again of poor households, may result in the elimination or reduction of indirect taxes - GST, VAT on particular products. Third, analysis of food expenditure patterns is important from a cost-of-living aspect. In South Africa, food inflation generally has tended to be higher than that of the overall level of prices.

Section Four of the questionnaire related to spending on items other than food and completed the data on household expenditure (other than on education and health). Section Five on Education attempted to gather data on enrolment patterns of household members, transport to school, and education spending.

Section Six contained a number of questions relating to remittances. One of the major aims of the survey was to obtain data on household income. For many households in South Africa remittances comprise an integral part of their monthly or annual income. Given the prolonged economic crisis in this country reflected in, inter alia, high levels of unemployment, data obtained in this section can inform policy makers about how the poor, particularly in rural areas where the economic crisis is probably at it most intense, are coping.

Questions in Section Seven on land access and use were designed to obtain information about the extent to which households had access to land for farming and grazing, whether they were able to use this land and to obtain a measure a degree of land ownership. Information about land access and utilisation is crucial for the development of policies relating to agricultural development in particular and rural development in general. The second part of this section asked questions about ownership of other property and income derived from such property. This information is crucial for the study of inequality.

consumption patterns of the household. There is an on-going debate both internationally and locally about whether data on income or data on expenditure are more accurate. Data on food expenditure is important for a number of reasons. Where income data is unreliable, absent or incomplete, expenditure provides an alternative measure of household

The second part of this section asked questions about ownership of other property and income derived from such property. This information is crucial for the study of inequality.

Section Eight concerned employment, unemployment and income. Such data collected from households will be invaluable to policymakers and researchers in improving their understanding of how the labour market operates in South Africa. The statistics will help policymakers as they attempt to design employment policies to address the problems of unemployment, underemployment and the working poor. Moreover, information on income at the level of the household, and by individual members thereof, is vital if we are to obtain an adequate picture about poverty in South Africa.

Section Nine asked questions about the health status of household members. Vital information was obtained about the incidence of disease and health expenditure. Finally, Section Ten concerned anthropometry. In each household children under the age of six were weighed and their heights measured. This exercise was crucial for the determination of nutritional outcomes and provides important information for policymakers in the field of nutrition and health development, although errors in the use of the scales have reduced the value of some of the information.

In addition to the detailed questionnaire referred to above, two other questionnaires were also designed. A "Community Questionnaire" was administered in each cluster. The purpose of this questionnaire was to elicit information on the facilities available to the community in each cluster. Questions related primarily to the provision of education, health and recreational facilities. Furthermore, there was a detailed section for the prices of a range of commodities from two retail sources in or near the cluster: a formal source such as a supermarket and a less formal one such as the "corner cafe" or a "spaza". The purpose of the this latter section was to obtain a measure of regional price variation both by region and by retail source. These prices were obtained by the interviewer. For the questions relating to the provision of facilities, respondents were "prominent" members of the community such as school principals, priests and chiefs.

The third questionnaire that was developed and administered was a Literacy Assessment Module (LAM). The aim of LAM was to test proficiency in English and mother tongue with respect to both reading

comprehension and numeracy. Moreover, the scores attained in these tests could be correlated with, inter alia, gender, race, household income level, location of residence and educational status. The aim of LAM was to test proficiency in English and mother tongue with respect to both reading comprehension and numeracy. This module was administered to approximately one-fifth of the households in each cluster. LAM comprised a series of literacy and numeracy exercises in English and mother tongue. In each household, two individuals from different generations were tested to determine language proficiency across generations. The total time allocated for this module was 45 minutes and it was administered during a second visit by the interviewer. The mother tongue questions were available in Afrikaans, English, Pedi, Southern Sotho, Tsonga, Tswana, Xhosa, Venda and Zulu.

### **SAMPLING**

The sample design adopted for the study was a two-stage self-weighting design in which the first stage units were Census Enumerator Sub-Districts (ESDs, or their equivalent) and the second stage were households.

The advantage of using such a design is that it provides a representative sample that need not be based on accurate census population distribution. In the case of South Africa, the sample will automatically include many poor people, without the need to go beyond this and oversample the poor. Proportionate sampling as in such a self-weighting sample design offers the simplest possible data files for further analysis, as weights do not have to be added. However, in the end this advantage could not be retained and weights had to be added. (See p.vii).

The sampling frame was drawn up on the basis of small, clearly demarcated area units, each with a population estimate. The nature of the self-weighting procedure adopted ensured that this population estimate was not important for determining the final sample, however. For most of the country, census ESDs were used. Where some ESDs comprised relatively large populations as for instance in some black townships such as Soweto, aerial photographs were used to divide the areas into blocks of approximately equal population size. In other instances, particularly in

some of the former homelands, the area units were not ESDs but villages or village groups.

In the sample design chosen, the area stage units (generally ESDs) were selected with probability proportional to size, based on the census population. Systematic sampling was used throughout, that is, sampling at a fixed interval in a list of ESDs, starting at a randomly selected starting point. Given that sampling was self-weighting, the impact of stratification was expected to be modest. The main objective was to ensure that the racial and geographic breakdown approximated the national population distribution. This was done by listing the area stage units (ESDs) by statistical region and then within the statistical region by urban or rural. Within these sub-statistical regions, the ESDs were then listed in order of percentage African. The sampling interval for the selection of the ESDs was obtained by dividing the 1991 census population of 38 120 853 by the 360 clusters to be selected. This yielded 105 800. Starting at a randomly selected point, every 105 800th person down the cluster list was selected. This ensured both geographic and racial diversity (ESDs were ordered by statistical sub-region and proportion of the population African). In three or four instances, the ESD chosen was judged inaccessible and replaced with a similar one.

In the second sampling stage the unit of analysis was the household. In each selected ESD a listing or enumeration of households was carried out by means of a field operation. From the households listed in an ESD a sample of households was selected by systematic sampling. Even though the ultimate enumeration unit was the household, in most cases "stands" were used as enumeration units. However, when a stand was chosen as the enumeration unit all households on that stand had to be interviewed. Details of the enumeration procedure were provided in an Enumeration Manual.

Census population data, however, was available only for 1991. An assumption on population growth was thus made to obtain an approximation of the population size for 1993, the year of the survey. The sampling interval at the level of the household was determined in the following way: Based on the decision to have a take of 125 individuals on

average per cluster (i.e. assuming 5 members per household to give an average cluster size of 25 households), the interval of households to be selected was determined as the census population divided by 118.1, i.e. allowing for population growth since the census. It was subsequently discovered that population growth was slightly over-estimated but this had little effect on the findings of the survey.

Individuals in hospitals, old age homes, hotels and hostels of educational institutions were not included in the sample. Migrant labour hostels were included. In addition to those that turned up in the selected ESDs, a sample of three hostels was chosen from a national list provided by the Human Sciences Research Council and within each of these hostels a representative sample was drawn on a similar basis as described above for the households in ESDs.

#### DATA COLLECTION

Data collection was carried out by the survey organisations listed earlier. The workload and areas were assigned to the organisations on the basis of their previous experience and their geographical location. The Bureau of Market Research was responsible for the rural and the predominantly non-African urban areas of the Transvaal excluding the homelands. Mark Data conducted surveys in the Orange Free State, Qwa-Qwa, Bophuthatswana and Lebowa. Social Surveys covered the African townships in the PWV as well as Venda, Gazankulu and Kwandebele. Data Research Africa from Natal was responsible for the field work in Kwazulu and Kangwane. The rest of Natal and the Ciskei was covered by the HSRC in Durban. The HSRC in Cape Town covered the Northern, Western and Eastern Cape. Finally, a team under Sintu Mpambani from the University of the Transkei covered the difficult terrain in the Transkei.

Completed questionnaires were sent to Saldru where data entry, management and cleaning were centralised.

#### DATA ENTRY, DATA MANAGEMENT AND CLEANING

All the questionnaires were checked when received. Where information was incomplete or appeared contradictory, the questionnaire was sent back to the relevant survey organisation. As soon as the data was available, it was captured using local development platform ADE. This was completed in February 1994.

Following this, a series of exploratory programs were written to highlight inconsistencies and outliers. For example, all person level files were linked together to ensure that the same person code reported in different sections of the questionnaire corresponded to the same person. The error reports from these programs were compared to the questionnaires and the necessary alterations made. This was a lengthy process, as several files were checked more than once, and completed at the beginning of August 1994.

The final data set is made up of 38 single and multi-level files. These closely follow the questionnaire in terms of organization and structure. A manual for data entry and a code book describing all the files and variables in the database have been compiled, and are available together with the data set.

#### WEIGHTS

A self-weighting sample design should in principle eliminate the need for weighting. A number of factors intervened, however, which made it essential to use weights after all. Amongst these was violence, which prevented survey teams from conducting interviews in two clusters on the East Rand; failure to continue interviewing in a cluster until the required take had been interviewed; and systematic under-representation of whites in the sample. This last problem resulted both from systematic non-response (whites were found to be more likely to refuse to be interviewed, or to be absent than other groups) and from sampling problems themselves.

The importance of race in determining living standards in South Africa is such that the racial distribution of the population has a major bearing on

measures of living standards and inequality. It was thus regarded as essential that the problems mentioned above should be overcome by applying appropriate weights to the data. The most appropriate weights to apply would usually be the average values obtained in a cluster for the missing questionnaires from that cluster in order to capture the homogeneity usually inherent in residential contiguity. However, that presented some difficulty for the two clusters in which violence prevented surveying and for those clusters in which there were only a small number of questionnaires completed. It was felt that this method would therefore not be appropriate.

Accordingly it was decided to use weights as far as possible at the level of the old provincial/homeland boundaries and race. The listing of households in each cluster combined with the sampling interval was used to determine how many households should have been interviewed. Where this deviated from the number actually interviewed, this was taken into account. The assumption was that the households left out were racially distributed in the same proportion as the actual households interviewed. When these numbers were then calculated at the provincial level, a weight could be calculated for each race group to rectify errors made in the field work. These errors typically resulted from the fact that most field work organisations involved had little experience of using anything but a weighted sample and were used to replacements that could easily be added *ex post*, not necessarily in the same area. When these mistakes were discovered, it was too late to go back to the field.

The sample of 360 clusters of 25 households each based on an expected household size of 5 should have yielded a resident population of 45 000. In fact, a different household size should not affect the results. In any particular cluster, the expected take of individuals would remain the same if the census population were accurate, irrespective of household size, for a smaller household size (as in the case of whites) would only have yielded more households, of whom a given proportion would have been interviewed. If in a particular cluster the census population was 472, every fourth household should have been interviewed (based on a sampling interval calculated to produce 125 persons per cluster in 1993, the expected take based on the census data of 118.1 per cluster divided into




the same population size). Irrespective of household size, then, one quarter of the cluster population would have been included in the survey. An average household size of 5 would have given 94 households of whom 23 would have been interviewed, i.e. 115 resident household members would have been found. If the household size were only three, on the other hand, one-quarter of the 157 households would have been 39, representing 117 household members. Only small differences from the expected take of 118 should thus arise, due to rounding. Only if the estimate of population based on the census is wrong, however, would the actual number of households deviate substantially from the expected take. In such a case, one quarter of the actual (i.e. listed or enumerated) rather than of the census population would have been included in the survey, i.e. there would have been an automatic adjustment. This gives the sample design its self-weighting character.

The census population for the survey data was estimated by applying Sadie's population growth rates to the adjusted 1991 census figures. The resultant racial and geographic distribution of the population of 40.1 million was as shown in Table 1.5 presuming, of course, that no migration across provincial and homeland boundaries had occurred since the census. This implies that a raising factor of 891.4154 (40.1 million divided by an expected take of 45 000) should be applied to the results weighted by enumeration to obtain the population it represents. Applying the weights according to enumeration, 38.1 million people were covered by the survey, i.e. there was a 2 million under-enumeration amounting to about 5 per cent. Broken down by race, the under-enumeration was particularly large amongst whites, for whom the best census data exists, indicating that the problem did not lie so much with the census as with the survey. However, this is to be expected - a survey of this nature is better at capturing inequality and living standards than population size. Nevertheless, the margin of error in aggregate population estimates is relatively small, considering the presence of some homeless people, uncertainties about ESD boundaries in some areas and the likelihood of incomplete listings of households for various reasons. These results are therefore encouraging regarding the accuracy of the survey and also confirm that the adjusted census does not deviate substantially from population estimates obtained in a different manner.

However, the raised enumeration results deviate more from the census results where the provincial breakdown is concerned if Tables 1.4 and 1.5 are compared. The reason for this is not hard to find. The sample design introduced stratification only by geographic area (statistical regions) and proportion of the ESD population that was black. South African population clusters are still predominantly racially homogeneous, inter alia, because of past controls on residential patterns. It is therefore not surprising that in particular regions too few or too many clusters of a particular group were selected. In Natal, for instance, coloureds and Indians are over represented in the data, even when weighted by enumeration, while whites are under-represented. At the aggregate level, this should have little effect on the validity of the conclusions drawn, but it emphasises the fact that care should be taken when drawing implications from the survey for small populations. In small provinces (for instance, the new Northern Cape), only a small number of clusters has been included, with the result that little can be concluded about living standards there, even though these clusters are important in determining overall distribution.

In the further analysis, figures presented are as in the enumeration, i.e. weighted by enumeration (listing of households) in the survey and without adding census-based weights. In the data made available to researchers, however, both sets of weights will be provided. (Refer to table on p.ix).

### GENERAL NOTE

- = No sample drawn or no characteristic captured.
-  = Sample size too small for valid conclusions to be drawn.
- Rounding = Rounding of numbers to the nearest 100 and of decimals to 1 place results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.
- KwaZulu/Natal = Within tables for reasons of brevity, KwaZulu/Natal has been abbreviated to Kwazulu.

Calculation of weights by enumeration and census

Province	Code	Race	Expected as census	Household as enumerated	Raised individuals as enumerated	Households obtained	Raised individuals obtained	Enumeration		Census	
								Sweight	RSweight	Cweight	RCweight
Cape	1	1	2 056 069	411	1 641 345	342	1 369 214	1.20	1 071.26	1.50	1 338.59
Cape	1	2	2 901 093	612	2 618 622	556	2 378 296	1.10	981.20	1.22	1 087.37
Cape	1	3	47 000	0	0	2	5 348	1.00	891.42	8.79	7 833.39
Cape	1	4	1 360 572	495	1 389 939	288	806 731	1.72	1 532.12	1.69	1 503.40
Cape	1	5	0	1	2 674	1	3 566	1.00	891.42	1.00	891.42
Natal	2	1	1 023 454	178	733 064	180	738 983	0.99	881.51	1.38	1 234.56
Natal	2	2	107 932	49	191 316	53	206 808	0.92	824.14	0.52	465.22
Natal	2	3	794 654	211	836 994	215	853 085	0.98	874.83	0.93	830.36
Natal	2	4	600 031	114	260 151	112	255 836	1.02	907.33	2.35	2 090.70
Transvaal	3	1	6 647 448	1 898	5 904 753	1 652	5 127 421	1.15	1 024.16	1.30	1 155.68
Transvaal	3	2	322 650	60	222 497	63	230 877	0.95	848.97	1.40	1 245.75
Transvaal	3	3	175 059	42	153 502	40	145 301	1.05	935.99	1.20	1 073.98
Transvaal	3	4	2 776 984	1 023	2 726 635	893	2 375 622	1.15	1 021.18	1.17	1 042.02
Transvaal	3	5	0	3	8 023	2	3 566	1.00	891.42	1.00	891.42
OFS	4	1	1 866 227	514	1 819 004	541	1 911 195	0.95	846.93	0.98	870.44
OFS	4	2	73 263	19	65 038	19	65 073	1.00	891.42	1.13	1 003.60
OFS	4	4	367 846	103	291 056	70	197 894	1.47	1 311.65	1.86	1 656.96
Kwazulu	5	1	5 868 637	998	5 835 990	997	5 804 897	1.00	892.31	1.01	901.20
Kwazulu	5	4	0	1	2 674	1	3 566	1.00	891.42	1.00	891.42
Kangwane	6	1	827 740	161	819 487	161	820 102	1.00	891.42	1.01	899.72
Owa-Qwa	7	1	364 227	80	288 105	54	194 329	1.48	1 320.62	1.87	1 670.77
Gazankulu	8	1	1 014 196	204	1 000 168	205	1 006 408	1.00	887.07	1.00	898.31
Lebowa	9	1	2 911 162	685	3 419 469	685	3 411 447	1.00	891.42	0.85	760.69
Kwandebele	10	1	429 406	92	537 167	92	537 523	1.00	891.42	0.80	712.12
Transkei	11	1	3 691 429	751	3 748 937	764	3 782 276	0.98	876.25	0.98	870.00
Transkei	11	2	0	3	10 697	3	15 154	1.00	891.42	1.00	891.42
Bophuthatswana	12	1	2 390 040	652	2 297 926	551	2 290 938	1.00	893.03	1.04	929.98
Bophuthatswana	12	4	0	1	2 674	1	3 566	1.00	891.42	1.00	891.42
Venda	13	1	593 577	114	592 453	112	582 986	1.02	907.33	1.02	907.61
Venda	13	3	0	1	3 566	1	3 566	1.00	891.42	1.00	891.42
Ciskei	14	1	902 904	195	785 694	194	779 988	1.01	896.01	1.16	1 031.89
Total			40 113 599	9 571	38 209 621	8 850	35 911 561	33.00	29 539.00	44.00	39 363.00

NOTE 1: Race 1 = African  
Race 2 = Coloured  
Race 3 = Indian  
Race 4 = White  
Race 5 = Other

NOTE 2: Race 5 (Other) was incorporated into Race 4 (White).

NOTE 3: Two households were dropped because no permanent resident therefore the Number of 'Households obtained' dropped from 8850 to 8848.

NOTE 4: When the Number of 'Households obtained' is very small, the weight has been set to 1.

NOTE 5: Rweight is the weight times the raising factor = 891.4154

## Sample survey clusters

Province	Statistical Region	Magisterial District	MD Code	ESD Name	ESD Code	Population	Cluster	% Black
CAPE	Stat. Region 1	Wynberg	006	Langa	4197	33748	1	99
		Wynberg	006	Khayelitsa/Lingeletu West	4199	189586	2	99.4
		Wynberg	006	Khayelitsa/Lingeletu West	4199	189586	3	99.4
		Wynberg	006	Gugulethu	4196	54635	4	97.5
		Cape Town	001	Sea Point	129	352	5	7.2
		Bellville	003	Durbanville Proper	212	548	6	2.8
		Wynberg	006	Retreat	1768	456	7	1.6
		Wynberg	006	Claremont	107	584	8	0.9
		Goodwood	004	Adriaanse	1652	892	9	0.6
		Wynberg	006	Beacon Valley	2029	904	10	0.4
		Bellville	003	Churchill	14	726	11	0.2
		Wynberg	006	Tafelsig	2076	974	12	0.2
		Wynberg	006	Lentegeur	1990	892	13	0.1
		Goodwood	004	Bishop Lavis	1610	1122	14	0
		Bellville	003	Belhar	1607	659	15	0
		Wynberg	006	Grassy Park/Montague's Gift	1576	726	16	0
		Wynberg	006	Grassy Park	1520	830	17	0
		Wynberg	006	Westridge	2192	807	18	0
	Stat. Region 2	Somerset West	007	Somerset West	33	556	19	1.9
		Kuils River	005	Brackenfell	7	900	20	0.4
		Somerset West	007	Macassar	1500	582	21	0
		Paarl	010	Paarl	1548	626	22	0
	Stat. Region 3	Caledon	017	Grabouw	23	1209	23	100
		Caledon	017	Caledon Non-Urban (NU)	4206	1578	24	36.1
	Stat. Region 4	Knysna	046	Plettenberg Bay	45	350	25	3.3
		Riversdale	027	Riversdale	1504	662	26	0
	Stat. Region 6	Oudtshoorn	032	Oudtshoorn	1514	819	27	0.3
	Stat. Region 7	Worcester	022	Worcester	3	721	28	1.1
		Ceres	024	Ceres NU	4210	1850	29	40.7
	Stat. Region 8	Vredenburg	015	Vredenburg/Saldahna	1502	793	30	19
		Vredenburg	015	Vredenburg/Saldahna	1505	688	31	0
	Stat. Region 9	Vanrhynsdorp	043	Klawer	2	1080	32	0.8
		Namakwaland	045	Alexander Bay	6743	681	33	0
	Stat. Region 12	Prince Albert	034	Prince Albert NU	4204	218	34	0.6

Province	Statistical Region	Magisterial District	MD Code	ESD Name	ESD Code	Population	Cluster	% Black
CAPE	Stat. Region 16	De Aar	094	De Aar	1506	501	35	0.3
	Stat. Region 17	Gordonia	108	Mier	6703	1114	36	0
	Stat. Region 19	Warrenton	099	Warrenton	1504	190	37	16.2
	Stat. Region 20	Kimberley	097	Galeshewe	4195	72077	38	87.9
		Kimberley	097	Homevale	1521	1203	39	1.3
	Stat. Region 22	Postmasburg	105	Postmasburg NU	4203	416	40	85
	Stat. Region 23	Vryburg	107	Vryburg NU	4218	591	41	78.3
	Stat. Region 36	Maclear	081	Maclear NU	4209	531	42	98.7
	Stat. Region 37	Queenstown	088	Queenstown	1	841	43	10.5
	Stat. Region 38	East London	093	Kwelera/ Newlands/Mooiplaas	4198	36381	44	100
		East London	093	Greenfield	167	900	45	11.9
		East London	093	East London NU	4266	521	46	99.8
	Stat. Region 39	Bedford/Adelaide	060/061	Bedford/Adelaide	2	145	47	70.7
	Stat. Region 40	Hofmeyer	074	Hofmeyer NU	4202	661	48	78.5
	Stat. Region 43	Kirkwood	053	Kirkwood NU	4222	1112	49	88.7
	Stat. Region 46	Humansdorp	049	Jeffreys Bay	1516	727	50	7.3
	Stat. Region 47	Port Elizabeth	051	Motherwell	4196	72918	51	99.8
		Uitenhage	052	Kwanobuhle	4195	92381	52	99.8
		Port Elizabeth	051	Ibhayi	4195	256897	53	98
		Port Elizabeth	051	Ibhayi	4195	256897	54	98
		Port Elizabeth	051	Ibhayi	194	821	55	6.7
		Port Elizabeth	051	Mount Road/Cannonville	52	895	56	2.3
		Uitenhage	052	Despatch	1625	692	57	0.4
		Port Elizabeth	051	Bethelsdorp	1603	762	58	0
		Port Elizabeth	051	Bethelsdorp	4195	7570	59	100
		Pinetown	221	St. Wendolins, Savannah Park	89	942	60	20.8
		Durban	219	Grosvenor/Jacobs/Bonela	485	625	61	14
NATAL	Stat. Region 48	Durban	219	Windermere	2368	531	62	9.5
		Inanda	220	Verulam	1570	477	63	5.1
		Durban	219	Sparks	2362	678	64	2.6
		Pinetown	221	Pinetown	2324	372	65	1.3
		Inanda	220	Tonga	5008	405	66	0.6
		Inanda	220	Newlands West	2554	461	67	0.3
		Inanda	220	Sunford	2442	681	68	0
		Inanda	220	Rockford	2556	599	69	0
		Chatsworth	222	Crossmoor	4275	891	70	87.9
	Stat. Region 49	Lower Tugela	232	Lower Tugela NU				

Province	Statistical Region	Magisterial District	MD Code	ESD Name	ESD Code	Population	Cluster	% Black
NATAL	Stat. Region 51	Pietermaritzburg	210	Imbali	4195	33297	71	100
		Pietermaritzburg	210	Eastwood	1515	854	72	4.6
	Stat. Region 52	Umzinto	203	Umzino North	2318	873	73	5.1
	Stat. Region 53	Alfred	201	Alfred NU	4206	931	74	64.8
	Stat. Region 57	Lions River	211	Howick	8	353	75	8
		New Hanover	212	New Hanover NU	4216	807	76	86.7
	Stat. Region 60	Klipriver	223	Ladysmith	2310	340	77	0.3
		Dundee	225	Sibongile	2712	1182	78	99.8
		Newcastle	227	Newcastle NU	4219	598	79	94.4
	Stat. Region 62	Ngotshe	231	Ngotshe NU	4218	1002	80	97.6
TRANSVAAL	Stat. Region 63	Lower Umfolozi	237	Richards Bay	20	1108	81	2.8
	Stat. Region 24	Schweizer Reneke	367	Ipelengeng	2701	479	82	99.8
		Lichtenburg	362	Biesiesvlei	26	426	83	77.1
		Potchefstroom	364	Potchefstroom NU	6702	1010	84	99.8
		Ventersdorp	360	Ventersdorp NU	4218	1143	85	92.3
		Ventersdorp	360	Ventersdorp NU	4223	1103	86	85.1
	Stat. Region 25	Swaruggens	357	Swaruggens NU	4210	536	87	100
		Marico	358	Marico NU	4217	576	88	24.3
	Stat. Region 26	Klerksdorp	365	Joberton	4195	74376	89	99.3
		Klerksdorp	365	Stilfontein	87	765	90	11.1
		Klerksdorp	636	Klerksdorp NU	4215	1595	91	87.7
	Stat. Region 64	Ermelo	633	Kwazanele	2711	981	92	99.9
		Piet Retief	633	Piet Retief	9	849	93	7.1
		Standerton	324	Standerton NU	4223	862	94	96.1
		Standerton	324	Standerton NU	4213	616	95	91.8
	Stat. Region 65	Hoeveltdrif	325	Embalenhle	2796	519	96	99.8
		Balfour	323	Balfour NU	4213	2063	97	95.7
	Stat. Region 66	Witbank	334	Phola	2703	811	98	99.9
		Witbank	334	Witbank NU	37	702	99	7.3
		Witbank	334	Witbank NU	4251	1061	100	98.6
		Witbank	334	Witbank NU	4248	317	101	49
	Stat. Region 67	Barbeton	341	Barberton NU	4275	371	102	100
		Lydenburg	344	Lydenburg NU	4214	316	103	77.9
	Stat. Region 68	Pietersburg	349	Pietersburg	13	716	104	3.8
		Phalaborwa	346	Phalaborwa NU	4214	762	105	81.5
	Stat. Region 69	Potgietersrus	350	Potgietersrus NU	4214	1423	106	94.4

Province	Statistical Region	Magisterial District	MD Code	ESD Name	ESD Code	Population	Cluster	% Black
TRANSVAAL	Stat. Region 70	Warmbad	354	Warmbad	1	537	107	0.4
	Stat. Region 71	Pretoria	316	Atteridgeville	2788	670	108	100
		Wonderboom	317	Mamelodi	2728	615	109	100
		Soshanguve	318	Soshanguve	2832	675	110	99.8
		Soshanguve	318	Soshanguve	2965	418	111	99.3
		Pretoria	316	Menlo Park	713	959	112	20.1
		Pretoria	316	Constantia Park	768	1033	113	13.6
		Pretoria	316	Wonderboom Suid	172	845	114	10.8
		Pretoria	316	Elarduspark	753	440	115	8.2
		Pretoria	316	Silverton	663	826	116	4.8
		Pretoria	316	Pretoria Central	295	351	117	0.4
	Stat. Region 72	Randburg	306	Alexandra	4195	124585	118	99.9
		Randburg	306	Alexandra	4195	124585	119	99.9
		Johannesburg	300	Soweto	4196	596632	120	99.7
		Johannesburg	300	Soweto	4196	596632	121	99.7
		Johannesburg	300	Soweto	4196	596632	122	99.7
		Johannesburg	300	Soweto	4196	596632	123	99.7
		Johannesburg	300	Soweto	4196	596632	124	99.7
		Johannesburg	300	Diepmeadow	4197	241098	125	99.6
		Johannesburg	300	Diepmeadow	4197	241098	126	99.6
		Johannesburg	300	Diepmeadow	4197	241098	127	99.6
		Johannesburg	300	Westcliff	288	1274	128	37.6
		Randburg	306	Rivonia	301	422	129	27.8
		Johannesburg	300	Kensington	547	753	130	22.9
		Johannesburg	300	Kensington	536	556	131	19.3
		Johannesburg	300	Robertsham	867	814	132	16.1
		Randburg	306	Randparkrif	108	581	133	12
		Randburg	306	Midrand	389	252	134	6.8
		Johannesburg	300	Johannesburg & Claremont	1	1202	135	2.1
	Stat. Region 73	Alberton	301	Tokoza/Alberton/Newmarket	4197	74087	136	100
		Alberton	301	Katlehong	4196	201795	137	100
		Alberton	301	Katlehong	4196	201795	138	100
		Benoni	304	Daveyton	4195	151660	139	100
		Benoni	304	Daveyton	4195	151660	140	100
		Kempton Park	305	Kempton Park Res.	180	208418	141	100
		Kempton Park	305	Tembisa	4196	28576	142	99.9



Province	Statistical Region	Magisterial District	MD Code	ESD Name	ESD Code	Population	Cluster	% Black
TRANSVAAL	Stat. Region 73	Boksburg	303	Vosloosrus	4195	76014	143	99.7
		Boksburg	303	Comet	80	674	144	23.6
		Benoni	304	Benoni	2	620	145	14
		Kempton Park	305	Norkem Park	80	606	146	11.1
		Kempton Park	305	Glenmarais	23	667	147	8.6
		Benoni	304	Actonville	2315	993	148	4.8
		Brakpan	312	Tsakane	4195	76859	150	99.9
	Stat. Region 74	Nigel	314	Duduza	4195	49283	149	100
		Springs	313	Kwathema	4195	81345	151	99.9
		Brakpan	312	Dalview	5	804	152	9.7
		Brakpan	312	Geluksdal	1502	499	153	2.4
	Stat. Region 75	Roodepoort	307	Dobsonville	4195	53091	154	100
		Randfontein	310	Mohlakeng	2717	470	155	100
		Oberholzer	309	Khutsong	4195	55834	156	99.9
		Krugersdorp	311	Kagiso	2738	813	157	99.8
		Krugersdorp	311	Protea Rigde A.H.	50	482	158	39.5
		Krugersdorp	311	Krugersdorp North	26	724	159	16.2
		Roodepoort	307	Weltevreden Park	203	676	160	11.6
		Westonaria	308	Westonaria/Discovery	14	791	161	5.5
	Stat. Region 76	Cullinan	319	Refilwe	2709	770	162	100
		Brits	355	Brits NU /Cullinan	4251	1818	163	81.1
	Stat. Region 77	Vereeniging	321	Randvaal	186	201038	164	100
		Vanderbijlpark	320	Evaton	4195	201038	165	100
		Vereeniging	321	Orangefarm en omgewing	4199	49838	166	99.7
		Vanderbijlpark	320	Lekoa	4196	142484	167	99.6
		Vanderbijlpark	320	Vanderbijlpark	117	517	168	47.5
		Vereeniging	321	Ennerdale	4196	20403	169	5.9
		Vereeniging	321	Vereeniging NU	4212	273	170	55.2
	Stat. Region 80	Moutse	339	Moutse NU	4263	1169	171	100
ORANGE FREE STATE	Stat. Region 27	Welkom	424	Thabong	4195	88547	172	100
		Odendaalsrus	424	Kutlwanong	4195	42353	173	99.7
		Welkom	424	Rheederpark	13	726	174	10.9
		Odendaalsrus	423	Odendaalsrus NU	4221	640	175	100
	Stat. Region 28	Wesselsbron	422	Monyakeng	2713	608	176	100
		Kroonstad	441	Maokeng	2758	714	177	99.7
		Kroonstad	441	Kroonstad	8	629	178	7.2

Province	Statistical Region	Magisterial District	MD Code	ESD Name	ESD Code	Population	Cluster	% Black
ORANGE FREE STATE	Stat. Region 28	Bothaville	442	Bothaville NU	4219	985	179	96.1
		Hoopstad	421	Hoopstad NU	4208	1326	180	92.6
	Stat. Region 29	Ficksburg	434	Mautse	2700	243	181	100
		Ficksburg	434	Megheleng	2707	638	182	98.6
		Senekal	433	Senekal NU	4215	906	183	96.1
		Harrismith	439	Harrismith NU	4218	672	184	92.3
	Stat. Region 30	Botshabelo	413	Botshabelo	4195	177732	185	99.6
		Botshabelo	413	Botshabelo	4195	177732	186	99.6
		Excelsior	429	Excelsior NU	4206	341	187	96.5
	Stat. Region 31	Bloemfontein	410	Mangaung	4195	124170	188	99.3
		Bloemfontein	410	Mangaung	4195	124170	189	99.3
		Bloemfontein	410	Heidedal	1504	793	190	5.3
	Stat. Region 34	Bethulie	402	Lephoi	2701	654	191	97.1
		Sasolburg	447	Sasolburg NU	4219	660	192	92.8
KWAZULU	Stat. Region 90	Umlazi	504	Umlazi	7995	298381	193	100
		Umlazi	504	Umlazi	7995	298381	194	100
		Empumalanga	508	Mpumalanga	7996	62139	195	100
		Ntuzuma	509	Kwamashu	7997	156680	196	100
		Ntuzuma	509	Kwamashu	7997	156680	197	100
		Ntuzuma	509	Ntuzuma	7995	102309	198	100
		Embumbulu	503	Kwamakuta	7995	13609	199	99.9
		Empumalanga	508	Empumalanga NU	7999	201464	200	100
		Empumalanga	508	Empumalanga NU	7999	201464	201	100
		Ntuzuma	509	Ntuzuma NU	7999	75665	202	100
		Embumbulu	503	Embumbulu NU	7999	253394	203	99.9
		Embumbulu	503	Embumbulu NU	7999	253394	204	99.9
	Stat. Region 91	Madadeni	524	Osizweni	7028	585	205	100
		Emnambithi	516	Ezakheni	6894	529	206	100
		Madadeni	524	Madadeni	6819	898	207	100
		Madadeni	524	Osizweni	6979	866	208	99.8
		Ezingolweni	500	Ezingolweni NU	8333	716	209	100
		Ezingolweni	500	Ezingolweni NU	8236	860	210	100
		Emzumbe	501	Emzumbe NU	8135	884	211	100
		Hlanganani	505	Hlanganani NU	8242	397	212	100
		Ndwedwe	506	Ndwedwe NU	7999	317635	213	100
		Ndwedwe	506	Ndwedwe NU	7999	317635	214	100

Province	Statistical Region	Magisterial District	MD Code	ESD Name	ESD Code	Population	Cluster	% Black
KWAZULU	Stat. Region 91	Ndwedwe	506	Ndwedwe NU	7999	317635	215	100
		Hlanganani	505	Hlanganani NU	8084	903	216	100
		Kwa Mapumulu	510	Kwa Mapumulu NU	8109	1208	217	100
		Kwa Mapumulu	510	Kwa Mapumulu NU	8236	640	218	100
		Inkanyezi	512	Inkanyezi NU	8223	331	219	100
		Inkanyezi	512	Inkanyezi NU	8112	699	220	100
		Nkandla	513	Nkandla NU	8126	767	221	100
		Msinga	515	Msinga NU	8162	727	222	100
		Msinga	515	Msinga NU	8012	768	223	100
		Enseleni	517	Enseleni NU	8071	849	224	100
		Emnambithi	516	Emnambithi	8166	486	225	100
		Enseleni	517	Enseleni NU	8270	684	226	100
		Mahlabatini	519	Mahlabatini NU	8032	1529	227	100
		Enseleni	517	Enseleni NU	8325	393	228	100
		Nongoma	520	Nongoma NU	8152	975	229	100
		Ingwavuma	521	Ingwavuma NU	8113	854	230	100
		Madadeni	524	Madadeni NU	8138	905	231	100
		Madadeni	524	Madadeni NU	8090	730	232	100
		Okhahlamba	525	Okhahlamba NU	8048	559	233	100
		Emzumbe	501	Emzumbe NU	8020	761	234	99.9
		Nkandla	513	Nkandla NU	8124	746	235	99.9
		Enseleni	517	Enseleni NU	8293	1067	236	99.9
		Simdlangentsha	523	Simdlangentsha NU	8082	776	237	99.9
		Hlanganani	505	Hlanganani NU	8185	452	238	99.8
		Enseleni	517	Enseleni NU	8216	487	239	99.8
		Emnabithi	516	Emnabithi NU	8179	406	240	99.7
		Okhahlamba	525	Okhahlamba NU	8074	939	241	99.6
		Nongoma	520	Nongoma NU	8104	684	242	98.1
					6849	639	243	98.9
	Stat. Region 92	Vulindlela	507	Edendale	8081	1002	244	100
		Vulindlela	507	Vulindlela NU	6807	981	245	99.6
KANGWANE	Stat. Region 96	Nsikazi	602	Matsula	8083	821	246	100
		Nkomazi	601	Nkomazi NU	8269	574	247	100
		Nkomazi	601	Nkomazi NU	8149	672	248	100
		Nsikazi	602	Nsikazi NU	8197	707	249	100
		Nsikazi	602	Nsikazi NU	8249	620	250	99.8
		Nkomazi	601	Nkomazi NU				

Nsikazi	602	Nsikazi NU	8249	620	250	99.8
Nkomazi	601	Nkomazi NU				

Province	Statistical Region	Magisterial District	MD Code	ESD Name	ESD Code	Population	Cluster	% Black
KANGWANE	Stat. Region 96	Eerstehoek	600	Eerstehoek NU	8084	1180	251	99.6
QWA - QWA	Stat. Region 95	Witsieshoek	700	Witsieshoek NU	7999	315758	252	100
		Witsieshoek	700	Witsieshoek NU	7999	315758	253	100
		Witsieshoek	700	Witsieshoek NU	7999	315758	254	100
		Witsieshoek	700	Witsieshoek NU	7999	315758	255	100
GAZANKULU	Stat. Region 93	Lulekani	804	Lulekani/Nkowakiwa	6804	538	255	100
		Mhala	800	Mhala NU	8070	596	256	100
		Ritavi	801	Ritavi NU	8031	976	257	100
		Ritavi	801	Ritavi NU	8089	964	258	100
		Malamulele	803	Malamulele NU	8127	545	259	100
		Hlanganani	805	Hlanganani NU	8133	673	260	100
		Lulekani	804	Lulekani NU	8025	579	261	100
		Malamulele	803	Malamulele NU	8067	730	262	99.9
		Malamulele	803	Malamulele NU	8150	631	263	99.8
		Malamulele	803	Malamulele NU	8150	631	263	99.8
		Namakgale	900	Namakgale	6808	768	264	100
		Bolobedu	901	Ga-kgapane	6803	1009	265	99.9
		Bolobedu	901	Bolobedu NU	8000	766	266	100
		Bolobedu	901	Bolobedu NU	8152	559	267	100
LEBOWA	Stat. Region 94	Bolobedu	901	Bolobedu NU	8152	559	267	100
		Bolobedu	901	Bolobedu NU	8144	842	268	100
		Bolobedu	901	Bolobedu NU	8144	842	268	100
		Bochum	903	Bochum NU	8201	762	269	100
		Mokerong	904	Mokerong NU	8114	1172	270	100
		Bochum	903	Bochum NU	8164	953	271	100
		Mokerong	904	Mokerong NU	8463	794	272	100
		Thabamoopo	906	Thabamoopo NU	8105	1032	273	100
		Seshego	905	Seshego NU	8301	791	274	100
		Seshego	905	Seshego NU	8177	671	275	100
		Seshego	905	Seshego NU	8432	393	276	100
		Thabamoopo	906	Thabamoopo NU	8176	401	277	100
		Nebo	907	Nebo NU	8176	401	277	100
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8004	919	278	100
		Nebo	907	Nebo NU	8100	450	279	100
		Mapulaneng	910	Mapulaneng NU	8081	767	280	100
		Naphuno	909	Naphuno NU	8207	736	281	100
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8324	562	282	100
		Mapulaneng	910	Mapulaneng NU	8151	463	283	100
		Bolobedu	901	Bolobedu NU	8122	1115	284	99.9
		Thabamoopo	906	Thabamoopo NU	8036	903	285	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9
		Sekhukhuneland	908	Sekhukhuneland/Nebo	8210	731	286	99.9

Province	Statistical Region	Magisterial District	MD Code	ESD Name	ESD Code	Population	Cluster	% Black
LEBOWA	Stat. Region 94	Mokerong	904	Mokerong NU	8347	1204	287	99.8
		Mapulaneng	910	Mapulaneng NU	8197	639	288	99.8
		Mokerong	904	Mokerong NU	8270	885	289	99.5
KWANDEBELE	Stat. Region 97	Mdutjana	950	Siyabuswa	6825	688	290	100
		Mdutjana	950	Mdutjana NU	8135	692	291	100
		Mkobola	951	Mkobola NU	8307	329	292	100
		Mkobola	951	Mkobola NU	8147	534	293	99.8
CISKEI		Hewu	C01	Rocklands	8034	2493	294	
		Keiskamma Hoek	C02	Ntaba Kandoda Forest	8036	208	295	
		Mdantsane	C03	Mdantsane	6800	191825	296	
		Mdantsane	C03	Mdantsane	6800	191825	297	
		Peddie	C04	Enxuba	8048	3302	298	
		Zwelitsha	C05	Tyutyu	8044	1933	299	
		Zwelitsha	C05	Kalana	8113	740	300	
		Mpofu	C06	Upper Blinkwater/Tidbury's Toll	8027	323	301	
TRANSKEI		Bizana	T01	Clerkville			302	
		Bizana	T01	Dumsi			303	
		Elliotdale	T03	Qadini/Rhini/Mdeni			304	
		Engcobo	T04	Ngaphesheya/Mission/Nkencezi			305	
		Flagstaff	T05	Dudmeni			306	
		Flagstaff	T05	Fama			307	
		Idutwya	T06	Mngqosini			308	
		Kentani	T07	Zizana			309	
		Libode	T08	Maqanyeni			310	
		Lusikisiki	T09	Matheko			311	
		Lusikisiki	T09	Phumlo			312	
		Maluti	T10	Mahangwe			313	
		Maluti	T10	Tsitsong			314	
		Mt. Fletcher	T12	Gaqangana/Nokgohloko			315	
		Mt. Fletcher	T12	Koeqana			316	
		Mt. Frere	T13	Luyengweni			317	
		Mqanduli	T14	Hayi/Mngazi/Ndita			318	
		Ngqeleni	T15	Corana			319	
		Nqamakwe	T16	Nbuqwini			320	
		Port St. Johns	T17	Lugengeleni/Gxeni			321	
		Qumbu	T18	Magwaca			322	

Province	Statistical Region	Magisterial District	MD Code	ESD Name	ESD Code	Population	Cluster	% Black
----------	--------------------	----------------------	---------	----------	----------	------------	---------	---------

Province	Statistical Region	Magisterial District	MD Code	ESD Name	ESD Code	Population	Cluster	% Black
TRANSKEI		Cofimvaba	T19	Ward 6			323	
		Tabankulu	T20	Mkhamba			324	
		Tsolo	T21	Mfolozi			325	
		Tsomo	T22	Lamthole			326	
		Umtata	T23	Sithebe			327	
		Umzimkhulu	T24	Sidikidiki			328	
		Umzimkhulu	T24	Mvolozane			329	
		Willowvale	T25	Fort Malan			330	
		Lady Frere	T27	Percy			331	
		Sterkspruit	T28	Ngquba			332	
		Umtata	T23	Ngangelizwe			333	
		Lady Frere	T27	Enzibeleni			334	
						4293	335	
						6653	336	
VENDA		Dzanani	V01	Matsa				
		Thohoyandou	V02	Shayandima		4129	337	
		Thohoyandou	V02	Tshitereke, Donald Fraser		801	338	
		Thohoyandou	V02	Vhutalu, Mudzidzidai		2742	339	
		Vuwani/Tshitale	V03	Vhangani			340	
BOPHUTHATSWANA		Odi	B01	Block X			341	
		Odi	B01	Ward H			341	
		Odi	B01	Ward H			342	
		Odi	B01	Ward F			343	
		Odi	B01	Matlou			344	
		Odi	B01	Maumong			345	
		Moretele	B02	Dihibidung			346	
		Moretele	B02	Moeding			347	
		Moretele	B02	Moema			348	
		Tlhaping-Thlaro	B03	Madinkgwana			349	
		Tlhaping-Thlaro	B03	Matolong/Matthoro			350	
		Ditsobotla	B04	Itsoseng			351	
		Molopo	B05	Motlhabeng			352	
		Molopo	B05	Modimola			353	
		Mankwe	B06	Mmakau			354	
		Bafokeng	B07	Tlhabane			355	
		Taung	B08	Kokomeng			356	
		Taung	B08	Molelema			357	
		Thaba-Nchu	B09	Mokwena			358	
		Lehurutshe	B10	Welbedacht 1			359	
		Lehurutshe	B10	Ramanyapelo a Ramole			360	
		Madikwe	B11	Kgaboesele				





## LIST OF STATISTICAL TABLES

### 1. DISTRIBUTION OF SAMPLING FRAME

Questionnaire Section 1: Household Roster .....	2
Table 1.1: Distribution of households interviewed by old boundaries and race (Percentage) .....	4
Table 1.2: Distribution of <b>all</b> individuals in households interviewed by old boundaries and race (Percentage) .....	5
Table 1.3: Distribution of <b>resident</b> individuals in households interviewed by old boundaries and race (Percentage) .....	6
Table 1.4: Distribution of <b>resident</b> individuals in households interviewed by old boundaries and race - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage) .....	7
Table 1.5: Distribution of <b>resident</b> individuals in households interviewed by old boundaries and race - Weighted by enumeration <b>and</b> census (Percentage) .....	8
Table 1.6: Distribution of <b>resident</b> individuals in households interviewed by old boundaries and province - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage) .....	9
Table 1.7: Distribution of households by province and race - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage) .....	10
Table 1.8: Distribution of <b>resident</b> individuals by province and race - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage) .....	11
Table 1.9: Distribution of households by province and location: Rural and Urban - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage) .....	12
Table 1.10: Distribution of <b>resident</b> individuals by province and location: Rural and Urban - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage) .....	13
Table 1.11: Distribution of households by location and race - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage) .....	14
Table 1.12: Distribution of <b>resident</b> individuals by location and race - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage) .....	15

### 2. HOUSEHOLD STRUCTURE AND DEMOGRAPHICS

Table 2.1: Distribution of individuals by race and age (Percentage) .....	18
Table 2.2: Distribution of individuals by household size and age (Percentage) .....	19
Table 2.3: Average household size by province and race .....	20
Table 2.3.1: Average household size by location and race .....	21
Table 2.3.2: Average household size by type of dwelling and province: African .....	22
Table 2.3.3: Average household size by type of dwelling and location: African .....	23
Table 2.4: Dependency ratio by province and race .....	24
Table 2.5: Characteristics of household heads by race, location, age, gender and residence (Percentage) .....	25
Table 2.6: Percentage of female headed households by race, location and household size .....	26
Table 2.7: Percentage of households headed by persons aged 65+ by race, location and household size .....	27

### 3. EDUCATION

Questionnaire Section 5: Education .....	30
Table 3.1: Enrolment in formal education by province and race, persons aged 6-24 (Percentage) .....	32
Table 3.1.1: Enrolment in formal education by province and race, persons aged 6-13 (Percentage) .....	33
Table 3.1.2: Enrolment in formal education by province and race, persons aged 14-17 (Percentage) .....	34
Table 3.1.3: Enrolment in formal education by province and race, persons aged 18-24 (Percentage) .....	35
Table 3.1.4: Enrolment in formal education by gender and location, persons aged 6-24 (Percentage) .....	36
Table 3.2: Average household expenditure on <b>tuition</b> fees per child enrolled per annum by province and race: All (Rand) .....	37
Table 3.2.1: Average household expenditure on <b>tuition</b> fees per child enrolled per annum by province and race: Primary (Rand) .....	38
Table 3.2.2: Average household expenditure on <b>tuition</b> fees per child enrolled per annum by province and race: Secondary (Rand) .....	39
Table 3.2.3: Average household expenditure on <b>tuition</b> fees per child enrolled per annum by province and race: Tertiary (Rand) .....	40

Table 3.3:	Average household expenditure on <i>non-tuition</i> fees per child enrolled per annum by province and race (Rand)	41
Table 3.4:	Individual school attainment by age group and gender: All (Percentage)	42
Table 3.4.1:	Individual school attainment by age group and gender: African (Percentage)	43
Table 3.4.2:	Individual school attainment by age group and gender: Coloured (Percentage)	44
Table 3.4.3:	Individual school attainment by age group and gender: Indian (Percentage)	45
Table 3.4.4:	Individual school attainment by age group and gender: White (Percentage)	46
Table 3.5:	Percentage of individuals aged 14+ that have completed at least standard 6 by language and race: All	47
Table 3.5.1:	Percentage of individuals aged 14+ that have completed at least standard 6 by language and race: Rural	48
Table 3.5.2:	Percentage of individuals aged 14+ that have completed at least standard 6 by language and race: Urban	49
Table 3.5.3:	Percentage of individuals aged 14+ that have completed at least standard 6 by language and race: Metropolitan	50
Table 3.6:	Percentage of individuals aged 16+ that have completed at least standard 8 by language and race: All	51
Table 3.6.1:	Percentage of individuals aged 16+ that have completed at least standard 8 by language and race: Rural	52
Table 3.6.2:	Percentage of individuals aged 16+ that have completed at least standard 8 by language and race: Urban	53
Table 3.6.3:	Percentage of individuals aged 16+ that have completed at least standard 8 by language and race: Metropolitan	54
Table 3.7:	Percentage of individuals aged 18+ that have completed at least standard 10 by language and race: All	55
Table 3.7.1:	Percentage of individuals aged 18+ that have completed at least standard 10 by language and race: Rural	56
Table 3.7.2:	Percentage of individuals aged 18+ that have completed at least standard 10 by language and race: Urban	57
Table 3.7.3:	Percentage of individuals aged 18+ that have completed at least standard 10 by language and race: Metropolitan	58

#### 4. HOUSING CHARACTERISTICS AND LIVING CONDITIONS

Questionnaire Section 2: Household Services.....		60
Table 4.1:	Type of dwelling by province (Percentage).....	64
Table 4.2:	Type of dwelling by race: All (Percentage).....	65
Table 4.2.1:	Type of dwelling by location and race: Rural (Percentage).....	66
Table 4.2.2:	Type of dwelling by location and race: Urban (Percentage).....	67
Table 4.2.3:	Type of dwelling by location and race: Metropolitan (Percentage).....	68
Table 4.3:	Type of dwelling by race: Female headed households (Percentage).....	69
Table 4.4:	House ownership by province and race (Percentage).....	70
Table 4.4.1	House ownership by location and race (Percentage).....	71
Table 4.5:	Number of rooms per capita by province and race.....	72
Table 4.5.1:	Number of rooms per capita by location and race.....	73
Table 4.6:	Access to all sources of water by province: All (Percentage).....	74
Table 4.6.1:	Access to all sources of water by province and race: African (Percentage).....	75
Table 4.6.2:	Access to all sources of water by province and race: Coloured (Percentage).....	76
Table 4.6.3:	Access to all sources of water by province and race: Indian (Percentage).....	77
Table 4.6.4	Access to all sources of water by province and race: White (Percentage).....	78
Table 4.6.5:	Access to all sources of water by race and location: African and Coloured (Percentage).....	79
Table 4.7:	Distance to water source for water that has to be fetched by location and province: African (Percentage).....	80
Table 4.8:	Percentage of households with flush toilets by province and race.....	81
Table 4.8.1:	Distribution of households by type of toilet by province, African: All (Percentage).....	82
Table 4.8.2:	Distribution of households by type of toilet by province and location, African: Rural (Percentage).....	83
Table 4.8.3:	Distribution of households by type of toilet by province and location, African: Urban (Percentage).....	84
Table 4.8.4:	Distribution of households by type of toilet by province and location, African: Metropolitan (Percentage).....	85
Table 4.9:	Access to electricity (from grid) by province and race (Percentage).....	86
Table 4.9.1:	Access to electricity (from grid) by location and race (Percentage).....	87
Table 4.9.2:	Main source of energy for <i>cooking</i> by race (Percentage).....	88

Table 4.9.3:	Main source of energy for <i>lighting</i> by race (Percentage)	89
Table 4.9.4:	Main source of energy for <i>heating water</i> by race (Percentage)	90
Table 4.9.5:	Main source of energy for <i>heating</i> by race (Percentage)	91

Table 4.8.4:	Distribution of households by type of toilet by province and race (Percentage).....	87
Table 4.9:	Access to electricity (from grid) by province and race (Percentage).....	88
Table 4.9.1:	Access to electricity (from grid) by location and race (Percentage).....	
Table 4.9.2:	Main source of energy for <b>cooking</b> by race (Percentage).....	
Table 4.9.3:	Main source of energy for <b>lighting</b> by race (Percentage).....	89
Table 4.9.4:	Main source of energy for <b>heating water</b> by race (Percentage).....	90
Table 4.9.5:	Main source of energy for <b>heating home</b> by race (Percentage).....	91
Table 4.10:	Time taken to collect wood in minutes by province, African: Rural (Percentage).....	92
Table 4.11:	Average monthly household expenditure on energy, water and rates by province (Rand).....	93
Table 4.11.1:	Average monthly household expenditure on energy, water and rates by race and location (Rand).....	94

## 5. RURAL LAND: ACCESS AND USE

### 5.1-5.7 Land: Access and Use

5.1-5.7 Land: Access and Use.....		96
Questionnaire Section 7: Land Access and Use.....		100
Table 5.1:	Percentage of rural households that have access to cropland for farming by province and race .....	101
Table 5.2:	Type of ownership of cropland for farming by race (Percentage) .....	102
Table 5.2.1:	Type of ownership of cropland for farming by province (Percentage).....	103
Table 5.3:	Average size per farmer of cropland used in the past year by province and race (Hectares).....	104
Table 5.4:	Main water source for croplands by province (Percentage) .....	105
Table 5.5:	Percentage of rural households that have access to land for stock farming by province and race .....	106
Table 5.6:	Type of ownership of land for stock farming by race (Percentage).....	107
Table 5.6.1:	Type of ownership of land for stock farming by province (Percentage) .....	108
Table 5.7:	Main water source for stock farming by province (Percentage).....	

### 5.8-5.13 Agricultural Production

5.8-5.13 Agricultural Production		110
Questionnaire Section 8.5: Agricultural Production.....		
Table 5.8: Percentage of rural households engaged in crop and/or livestock production by province and race .....		116
Table 5.9: Pattern of crop production by race (Percentage).....		117
Table 5.9.1: Pattern of crop production by province (Percentage) .....		118
Table 5.10: Average quantity harvested last year by race (Households that produce crops) (Kilograms) .....		119
Table 5.10.1: Average quantity harvested last year by province (Households that produce crops) (Kilograms).....		120
Table 5.11: Pattern of livestock production by race (Households that own livestock) (Percentage) .....		121
Table 5.11.1: Pattern of livestock production by province (Households that own livestock) (Percentage) .....		122
Table 5.12: Average number of livestock owned by race (Households that own livestock).....		123
Table 5.12.1: Average number of livestock owned by province (Households that own livestock) .....		124
Table 5.13: Percentage of households owning mechanized farming equipment by province and race .....		125

## 6. EMPLOYMENT AND INCOME EARNING ACTIVITIES

### 6.1-6.10.3 Employment Status and Earnings from Wage Activities

Questionnaire Section 8.1: Employment Status.....	128
Questionnaire Section 8.2: Regular Employment.....	131
Questionnaire Section 8.3: Wage Work: Casual or Temporary.....	135

Table 6.1:	Employment status by race and gender, persons aged 16-64 (Percentage).....	141
Table 6.1.1:	Employment status by race and location, persons aged 16-64 (Percentage).....	142
Table 6.2:	Employment status by race and age, persons aged 16-64: All (Percentage).....	143
Table 6.2.1:	Employment status by race and age, persons aged 16-64: Male (Percentage).....	144
Table 6.2.2:	Employment status by race and age, persons aged 16-64: Female (Percentage).....	145
Table 6.3:	Reasons for not looking for a job by race and age, persons aged 16-64: All (Percentage).....	146
Table 6.3.1:	Reasons for not looking for a job by race and age, persons aged 16-64: Male (Percentage).....	147
Table 6.3.2:	Reasons for not looking for a job by race and age, persons aged 16-64: Female (Percentage).....	148
Table 6.3.3:	Reasons for not looking for a job by race and location, persons aged 16-64 (Percentage).....	149
Table 6.4:	Regular employment, type of occupation by race: All (Percentage).....	150
Table 6.4.1:	Regular employment, type of occupation by race: Male (Percentage).....	151
Table 6.4.2:	Regular employment, type of occupation by race: Female (Percentage).....	152
Table 6.4.3:	Regular employment, type of occupation by province (Percentage).....	153
Table 6.5:	Regular employment, type of employer by race: All (Percentage).....	154
Table 6.5.1:	Regular employment, type of employer by race: Male (Percentage).....	155
Table 6.5.2:	Regular employment, type of employer by race: Female (Percentage).....	156
Table 6.5.3:	Regular employment, type of employer by province (Percentage).....	157
Table 6.6:	Regular employment, type of economic sector by race: All (Percentage).....	158
Table 6.6.1:	Regular employment, type of economic sector by race: Male (Percentage).....	159
Table 6.6.2:	Regular employment, type of economic sector by race: Female (Percentage).....	160
Table 6.6.3:	Regular employment, type of economic sector by province (Percentage).....	161
Table 6.7:	Regular employment, union membership by province and race: All (Percentage).....	162
Table 6.7.1:	Regular employment, union membership by province and race: Male (Percentage).....	163
Table 6.7.2:	Regular employment, union membership by province and race: Female (Percentage).....	164
Table 6.8:	Casual employment, type of occupation by race: All (Percentage).....	165
Table 6.8.1:	Casual employment, type of occupation by race: Male (Percentage).....	166
Table 6.8.2:	Casual employment, type of occupation by race: Female (Percentage).....	167
Table 6.8.3:	Casual employment, type of occupation by province (Percentage).....	168
Table 6.9:	Casual employment, type of employer by race: All (Percentage).....	169
Table 6.9.1:	Casual employment, type of employer by race: Male (Percentage).....	170
Table 6.9.2:	Casual employment, type of employer by race: Female (Percentage).....	171
Table 6.9.3:	Casual employment, type of employer by province (Percentage).....	172
Table 6.10:	Casual employment, type of economic sector by race: All (Percentage).....	173
Table 6.10.1:	Casual employment, type of economic sector by race: Male (Percentage).....	174
Table 6.10.2:	Casual employment, type of economic sector by race: Female (Percentage).....	175
Table 6.10.3:	Casual employment, type of economic sector by province (Percentage).....	176

#### 6.11-6.11.2 Self Employment

Questionnaire Section 8.6: Other Forms of Self Employment.....		178
Table 6.11:	Types of non-agricultural self employment by race: All (Percentage).....	180
Table 6.11.1:	Types of non-agricultural self employment by race: Male (Percentage).....	181
Table 6.11.2:	Types of non-agricultural self employment by race: Female (Percentage).....	182
Table 6.11.3:	Types of non-agricultural self employment by province (Percentage).....	183

## 6.12-6.14.2 Transportation

Questionnaire Section 8.4: Transport .....	186
Table 6.12: Average transportation time taken to work (one way) for those in regular/casual employment by province and race (Minutes) .....	187
Table 6.12.1: Average transportation time taken to work (one way) for those in regular/casual employment by location and race (Minutes) .....	188
Table 6.13: Average transportation cost (to and from work) for those in regular/casual employment by province and race (Rand) .....	189
Table 6.13.1: Average transportation cost (to and from work) for those in regular/casual employment by location and race (Rand) .....	190
Table 6.14: Modes of transportation (to and from work) by race (Percentage) .....	191
Table 6.14.1: Modes of transportation (to and from work) by province (Percentage) .....	192
Table 6.14.2: Modes of transportation (to and from work) by location: African and Coloured (Percentage) .....	193

## 7. REMITTANCES

Questionnaire Section 6: Remittances and Marital Maintenance .....	196
Table 7.1: Percentage of households receiving annual remittances in cash or kind from absent members and other persons by province and race .....	200
Table 7.2: Percentage of households receiving annual remittances in cash or kind from absent members and other persons by province and location: African .....	201
Table 7.3: Average annual value of remittances received in cash or kind from absent members and other persons by province and race (Rand) .....	202
Table 7.4: Average annual value of remittances received in cash or kind from absent members and other persons by province and location: African (Rand) .....	203
Table 7.5: Percentage of households sending annual remittances in cash or kind to other persons by province and race .....	204
Table 7.6: Percentage of households sending annual remittances in cash or kind to other persons by province and location: African .....	205
Table 7.7: Average annual value of remittances in cash or kind sent to other persons by province and race (Rand) .....	206
Table 7.8: Average annual value of remittances in cash or kind sent to other persons by province and location: African (Rand) .....	207

## 8. EXPENDITURE, FOOD CONSUMPTION AND DEBT STRUCTURE

Questionnaire Section 3: Food Spending and Consumption .....	210
Questionnaire Section 4: Non-Food Spending .....	213
Table 8.1: Average <i>monthly</i> household expenditure by province and race (Rand) .....	220
Table 8.1.1: Average <i>monthly</i> household per capita expenditure by province and race (Rand) .....	221
Table 8.1.2: Average <i>monthly</i> per capita expenditure by province and race (Rand) .....	222
Table 8.2: Average <i>monthly</i> household expenditure by province and race: Female headed households (Rand) .....	223
Table 8.2.1: Average <i>monthly</i> household per capita expenditure by province and race: Female headed households (Rand) .....	224
Table 8.2.2: Average <i>monthly</i> per capita expenditure by province and race: Female headed households (Rand) .....	225
Table 8.3: Average <i>monthly</i> household expenditure by location and race (Rand) .....	226
Table 8.3.1: Average <i>monthly</i> household per capita expenditure by location and race (Rand) .....	227
Table 8.3.2: Average <i>monthly</i> per capita expenditure by location and race: Female headed households (Rand) .....	228
Table 8.4: Average <i>monthly</i> household expenditure by location and race: Female headed households (Rand) .....	229
Table 8.4.1: Average <i>monthly</i> household per capita expenditure by location and race: Female headed households (Rand) .....	230
Table 8.4.2: Average <i>monthly</i> per capita expenditure by location and race: Female headed households (Rand) .....	231
Table 8.5: Average commodity household budget shares by race (Percentage) .....	232
Table 8.5.1: Average commodity household budget shares by province (Percentage) .....	233
Table 8.5.2: Average commodity household budget shares by location (Percentage) .....	234
Table 8.6: Average share of total expenditure spent on food by province and race (Percentage) .....	235
Table 8.6.1: Average share of total expenditure spent on food by location and race (Percentage) .....	236



Table 8.7:	Average food budget shares by race (Percentage)	
Table 8.7.1:	Average food budget shares by province (Percentage)	237
Table 8.7.2:	Average food budget shares by location (Percentage)	238
Table 8.8:	Percentage of households that own durables by race	239
Table 8.8.1:	Percentage of households that own durables by province	240
Table 8.9:	Incidence of debt incurred by province and race (Percentage)	241
Table 8.10:	Sources of household debt by race (Percentage)	242
Table 8.10.1:	Sources of household debt by province (Percentage)	243
Table 8.11:	Average monthly debt payment per capita by province and race (Rand)	244
		245

## 9. HEALTH INCIDENCE AND EXPENDITURE

Questionnaire Section 10: Health		248
Table 9.1:	Incidence of ill-health in the previous two weeks by province and race (Percentage)	250
Table 9.1.1:	Incidence of ill-health in the previous two weeks by province and gender (Percentage)	251
Table 9.1.2:	Incidence of ill-health in the household in the previous two weeks by location, gender and race (Percentage)	252
Table 9.2:	Incidence of ill-health by age group and race (Percentage)	253
Table 9.2.1:	Incidence of ill-health by age group and gender (Percentage)	254
Table 9.3:	Duration of ill-health of individuals reporting ill in the previous two weeks by province and race (Days)	255
Table 9.3.1:	Duration of ill-health of individuals reporting ill in the previous two weeks by individual days and race (Percentage)	256
Table 9.4:	Average number of days lost because of ill-health of individuals reporting ill in the previous two weeks by province and race: persons aged 16-64	257
Table 9.5:	Type of illness reported for individuals in the previous two weeks by race ( <i>Per Thousand</i> )	258
Table 9.5.1:	Type of illness reported for individuals in the previous two weeks by location ( <i>Per Thousand</i> )	259
Table 9.5.2:	Type of illness reported for individuals actually ill in the previous two weeks by race ( <i>Per Thousand</i> )	260
Table 9.6:	Type of illness reported for individuals in the previous two weeks by race: persons aged 0-6 ( <i>Per Thousand</i> )	261
Table 9.6.1:	Type of illness reported for individuals in the previous two weeks by location: persons aged 0-6 ( <i>Per Thousand</i> )	262
Table 9.6.2:	Type of illness reported for individuals actually ill in the previous two weeks by race: persons aged 0-6 ( <i>Per Thousand</i> )	263
Table 9.7:	Health care consultation for individuals reporting ill by race (Percentage)	264
Table 9.7.1:	Health care consultation for individuals reporting ill by location and gender: All (Percentage)	265
Table 9.7.2:	Health care consultation for individuals reporting ill by location and gender: African (Percentage)	266
Table 9.8:	Health care consultation for individuals reporting days lost by race: persons aged 16-64 (Percentage)	267
Table 9.8.1:	Health care consultation for individuals reporting ill by gender (Percentage)	268
Table 9.9:	Reasons for non-treatment/consultation for those reporting ill by race (Percentage)	269
Table 9.10:	Reasons for non-treatment/consultation for those reporting days lost by race (Percentage)	270

## 10. FERTILITY

Questionnaire Section 10.2: Pregnancy and Child Health		272
Table 10.1:	Incidence of pregnancies and number of children ever born by age group and race (Percentage)	273
Table 10.1.1:	Incidence of pregnancies and number of children ever born by age group and province (Percentage)	274
Table 10.2:	Infant and child mortality by age group and race ( <i>Per Thousand</i> )	275
Table 10.2.1:	Infant and child mortality by age group and province ( <i>Per Thousand</i> )	276

## 11. CHILDREN'S HEALTH AND NUTRITIONAL STATUS

Questionnaire Section 11: Anthropometry	
---	--

## 11. CHILDREN'S HEALTH AND NUTRITIONAL STATUS

Questionnaire Section 11: Anthropometry .....	278
Table 11.1: Z-scores for height for age by race and age group (children 7-60 months) .....	280
Table 11.1.1: Z-scores for height for age by province and age group (children 7-60 months) .....	281
Table 11.2: Vaccination status by race and age group (children 0-60 months) .....	282
Table 11.2.1: Vaccination status by province and age group (children 0-60 months) .....	283
Table 11.3: Breastfeeding practice by race and age group (children 0-60 months) .....	284
Table 11.3.1: Breastfeeding practice by province and age group (children 0-60 months) .....	285

## 12. PERCEIVED QUALITY OF LIFE

Questionnaire Section 9: Perceived Quality of Life .....	288
Table 12.1: Perceived quality of life, at the time of the interview, by race (Percentage) .....	290
Table 12.1.1: Perceived quality of life, at the time of the interview, by province (Percentage) .....	291
Table 12.1.2: Perceived quality of life, at the time of the interview, by race and location (Percentage) .....	292
Table 12.2: What could the government do to help this household most? by race (Percentage) .....	293
Table 12.2.1: What could the government do to help this household most? by province (Percentage) .....	294
Table 12.2.2: What could the government do to help this household most? by race and location (Percentage) .....	295
Table 12.3: Perceptions of safety, at the time of the interview relative to five years before, by race (Percentage) .....	296
Table 12.3.1: Perceptions of safety, at the time of the interview relative to five years before, by province (Percentage) .....	297
Table 12.3.2: Perceptions of safety, at the time of the interview relative to five years before, by race and location (Percentage) .....	298
Table 12.4: Type of crime affecting households who have been victims of any crime by race (Percentage) .....	299
Table 12.4.1: Type of crime affecting households who have been victims of any crime by province (Percentage) .....	300
Table 12.4.2: Type of crime affecting households who have been victims of any crime by race and location (Percentage) .....	301
Table 12.5: Type of crime affecting <i>all</i> households by race (Percentage) .....	302
Table 12.5.1: Type of crime affecting <i>all</i> households by province (Percentage) .....	303
Table 12.5.2: Type of crime affecting <i>all</i> households by race and location (Percentage) .....	304
Table 12.6: Respondent's perception of current situation relative to parent's situation and expectations for the future by race (Percentage) .....	305
Table 12.6.1: Respondent's perception of current situation relative to parent's situation and expectations for the future by province (Percentage) .....	306
Table 12.6.2: Respondent's perception of current situation relative to parent's situation and expectations for the future by race and location (Percentage) .....	307

## 13. WELFARE AND INCOME DISTRIBUTION

Questionnaire Section 8.7: Household Income from Non-Employment Sources .....	310
Table 13.1: Average <i>monthly</i> household income by province and race (Rand) .....	314
Table 13.1.1: Average <i>monthly</i> household per capita income by province and race (Rand) .....	315
Table 13.1.2: Average <i>monthly</i> per capita income by province and race (Rand) .....	316
Table 13.2: Average <i>monthly</i> household income by province and race: Female headed households (Rand) .....	317
Table 13.2.1: Average <i>monthly</i> household per capita income by province and race: Female headed households (Rand) .....	318
Table 13.2.2: Average <i>monthly</i> per capita income by province and race: Female headed households (Rand) .....	319
Table 13.3: Average <i>monthly</i> household income by location and race (Rand) .....	320
Table 13.3.1: Average <i>monthly</i> household per capita income by location and race (Rand) .....	321
Table 13.3.2: Average <i>monthly</i> per capita income by location and race (Rand) .....	322

Table 13.4:	Average <b>monthly</b> household income by location and race: Female headed households (Rand).....	323
Table 13.4.1:	Average <b>monthly</b> household per capita income by location and race: Female headed households (Rand) .....	324
Table 13.4.2:	Average <b>monthly</b> per capita income by location and race: Female headed households (Rand).....	325
Table 13.5:	<b>Annual</b> household income categories (all income sources) by race (Percentage).....	326
Table 13.5.1:	<b>Annual</b> household income categories (all income sources) by province (Percentage) .....	327
Table 13.5.2:	<b>Annual</b> household income categories (all income sources) by race and location (Percentage).....	328
Table 13.6:	Average <b>monthly</b> per capita, household per capita and household income by decile (Rand).....	329
Table 13.7:	Distribution of income quintile by race (Percentage).....	330
Table 13.7.1:	Distribution of income quintile by province (Percentage).....	331
Table 13.7.2:	Distribution of income quintile by race and location (Percentage).....	332
Table 13.7.3:	Distribution of income quintile by source of income (Percentage).....	333
Table 13.8:	Household income sources by race (Percentage).....	334
Table 13.8.1:	Household income sources by province (Percentage) .....	335
Table 13.8.2:	Household income sources by race and location (Percentage).....	336
Table 13.9:	Household income from non-employment sources by race (Percentage) .....	337
Table 13.10:	Main source of income by race (Percentage).....	338
Table 13.10.1:	Main source of income by province (Percentage) .....	339
Table 13.10.2:	Main source of income by race and location (Percentage).....	340
Table 13.10.3:	Main source of income by quintile (Percentage) .....	341

# **CHAPTER ONE**

## **DISTRIBUTION OF SAMPLING FRAME**

## Section 1: Household Roster

Codes for Question 3	Codes for Question 6	Codes for Question 11	Codes for Question 14
01=Resident Head	00=None	01=Employment	01=Pretoria-Witwatersrand-Vaal (PWV)
02=Absent Head	01=Sub A - Std 1 (Class 1/Grade 1 - Std 1)	02=Looking for employment	02=Durban
03=Wife or husband or partner	02=Std 2	03=Schooling	03=Cape Town
04=Son or daughter	03=Std 3	04=Student	04=Port Elizabeth
05=Father or mother	04=Std 4	05=Personal reasons	05=E. London
06=Grandchild	05=Std 5	06=Escape violence or political problems	06=Bloemfontein
07=Grandparent	06=Std 6 (Form 1)	07=Visiting spouse or family	07=Kimberley
08=Mother- or father-in-law	07=Std 7 (Form 2)	08=Visiting friends	08=Pietermaritzburg
09=Son- or daughter-in-law	08=Std 8 (Form 3/Junior Certificate)	09=Living with other partner	09=Other Urban Area in Transvaal
10=Brother- or sister-in-law	09=Std 9 (Form 4)	10=Prison	10=Other Urban Area in Cape Province
11=Aunt or uncle	10=Std 10 (Matric/Form 5/Senior Certificate)	11=Vacation	11=Other Urban Area in Natal
12=Sister or brother	11=Std 7,8,or 9 + diploma	12=In hospital or clinic	12=Other Urban Area in Orange Free State
13=Niece or nephew	12=Std 10 + teacher training	13=Away on business	13=Rural Area in Transvaal
14=Cousin	13=Std 10+ nursing	14=National service	14=Rural Area in Cape Province
15=Great-grandparent	14=Std 10 + diploma at technikon or other technical institution	15=Other (Specify)	15=Rural Area in Natal
16=Household help (or relative of)	15=Std 10 + some university courses		16=Rural Area in Orange Free State
17=Lodger or relative of lodgers	16=Completed university degree		17=Homeland - Urban
18=Other family	17= Creche/daycare		18=Homeland - Rural
19=Other non-family	18=Pre-primary		19=Another African country (Specify)
	19=Other (Specify)		20=Other (Specify)

**Interviewer:** List all individuals who meet all three of the following criteria:

- |       |   |
|-------|---|
| (i)   | They live under this "roof" or within the same compound/homestead/stand at least 15 days out of the past year and |
| (ii)  | When they are together they share food from a common source and   |
| (iii) | They contribute to or share in a common resource pool   |

- Note:**
- If answer to Q.12 is yes, go back to column 1 and circle the code number of the individual (except in the case of lodgers and household help. These individuals' codes should NOT be circled). This is the PERSON CODE to be used in Sections 2 to 11 for questions relating to the household members.
  - For sections 2 - 11, answer remaining questions only for individuals whose person codes have been circled, indicating that they are defined as members of the household.
  - Once person codes have been circled in column (1), copy name, age and code of these persons to bottom flap.
  - Mark an (\*) next to person code of the principal respondent in Column 2.

- Once person codes have been circled in column (1), copy name, age and code of these persons to bottom flap.
- Mark an (\*) next to person code of the principal respondent in Column 2.

1.  Code	2. List names of all individuals who meet the 3 criteria above.  (List household head first, use first names only)  Name	3. What is _____'s relationship to household head?  (Use code box)  Code	4. Gender  Male -M Female -F	5. Age in YEARS (at next birthday)  Years	6. What is the highest educational qualification attained by _____?  (Use code box)  Code	7. If the spouse of _____ lives here, write the spouse code.  If absent, code 99; if deceased, code 88. If no spouse, write "_____"  "_____" Code	8. If the father of _____ lives here, write the father's code  If absent, code as 99; if deceased, code 88.  Code	9. If the mother of _____ lives here, write the mother's code.  If absent, code 99; if deceased code 88.  Code	10. How many months did _____ spend away from the household in the last 12 months?  Months	11. What is the reason for his/her absence ?  (Use code box)  Code	12. Has _____ lived under this roof for more than 15 days of the last 30 days?  (If Yes circle code in col 1)  Yes No	13. Did _____ move here during the past 5 years?  If NO go to next person  Yes No	14. If Yes, where was _____'s last place of residence ?  (Use code box)  Code
01.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
02.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
03.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
04.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
05.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
06.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
07.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
08.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
09.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
10.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
11.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
12.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
13.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
14.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
15.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
16.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
17.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
18.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	

Table 1.1: Distribution of households interviewed by old boundaries and race (Percentage)

Old Boundaries	African	Coloured	Indian	White	Total	Number
Cape	28.8	46.8	0.2	24.3	100.0	1 189
Natal	32.1	9.5	38.4	20.0	100.0	560
Transvaal	62.4	2.3	1.5	33.8	100.0	2 648
Orange Free State	85.7	3.0		11.3	100.0	630
Kwazulu	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	998
Kangwane	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	161
Qwa-Qwa	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	54
Gazankulu	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	205
Lebowa	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	685
Kwandebele	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	92
Transkei	99.9	0.1	.	.	100.0	767
Bophuthatswana	99.8	.	.	0.2	100.0	552
Venda	99.1	.	0.9	.	100.0	113
Ciskei	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	194
All/S.A.	73.8	7.8	2.9	15.4	100.0	8 848

NOTE: Based on Questionnaire Section 1 (See note to interviewer).



**Table 1.2: Distribution of ALL individuals in households interviewed by old boundaries and race (Percentage)**

Old Boundaries	African	Coloured	Indian	White	Total	Number
Cape	29.3	53.0	0.1	17.6	100.0	5 255
Natal	36.4	10.1	41.1	12.4	100.0	2 378
Transvaal	64.3	2.8	1.8	31.0	100.0	9 174
Orange Free State	88.1	2.9	.	9.1	100.0	2 556
Kwazulu	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	7 690
Kangwane	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	1 019
Qwa-Qwa	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	242
Gazankulu	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	1 210
Lebowa	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	4 407
Kwandebele	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	645
Transkei	99.9	0.1	.	.	100.0	4 871
Bophuthatswana	99.9	.	.	0.1	100.0	2 818
Venda	99.3	.	0.7	.	100.0	727
Ciskei	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	982
All/S.A.	80.0	7.6	2.6	9.8	100.0	43 974

NOTE: Based on Questionnaire Section 1 (See note to interviewer).

Table 1.3: Distribution of RESIDENT individuals in households interviewed by old boundaries and race (Percentage)

Old Boundaries	African	Coloured	Indian	White	Total	Number
Cape	30.0	52.1	0.1	17.8	100.0	5 116
Natal	36.0	10.1	41.5	12.5	100.0	2 305
Transvaal	65.1	2.9	1.9	30.1	100.0	8 844
Orange Free State	87.9	3.0	.	9.1	100.0	2 439
Kwazulu	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	6 516
Kangwane	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	920
Qwa-Qwa	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	218
Gazankulu	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	1 129
Lebowa	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	3 827
Kwandebele	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	603
Transkei	99.9	0.1	.	.	100.0	4 260
Bophuthatswana	99.8	.	.	0.2	100.0	2 574
Venda	99.4	.	0.6	.	100.0	658
Ciskei	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	875
All/S.A.	79.0	8.0	2.8	10.2	100.0	40 284

NOTE: Based on Questionnaire Section 1 (See note to interviewer).

**Table 1.4: Distribution of RESIDENT individuals in households interviewed by old boundaries and race - Weighted  
by enumeration (Percentage)**

Old Boundaries	African	Coloured	Indian	White	Total	Number
Cape	29.0	46.3	0.1	24.6	100.0	5 657 100
Natal	36.2	9.5	41.4	12.9	100.0	2 020 000
Transvaal	65.6	2.4	1.7	30.3	100.0	8 989 100
Orange Free State	83.5	3.0		13.5	100.0	2 172 700
Kwazulu	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	5 812 300
Kangwane	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	819 700
Qwa-Qwa	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	288 000
Gazankulu	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	1 001 400
Lebowa	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	3 409 900
Kwandebele	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	537 300
Transkei	99.9	0.1	.	.	100.0	3 731 800
Bophuthatswana	99.8	.	.	0.2	100.0	2 298 600
Venda	99.4	.	0.6	.	100.0	596 700
Ciskei	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	784 000
All/S.A.	77.0	8.1	2.6	12.3	100.0	38 118 600

Sample number = 40 284

NOTE: Based on Questionnaire Section 1 (See note to interviewer).

**Table 1.5: Distribution of RESIDENT individuals in households interviewed by old boundaries and race - Weighted by enumeration AND census (Percentage)**

Old Boundaries	African	Coloured	Indian	White	Total	Number
Cape	32.2	45.6	0.7	21.5	100.0	6 366 000
Natal	40.5	4.3	31.4	23.8	100.0	2 526 100
Transvaal	67.0	3.2	1.8	28.0	100.0	9 929 500
Orange Free State	80.8	3.2		16.0	100.0	2 307 200
Kwazulu	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	5 870 900
Kangwane	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	828 000
Qwa-Qwa	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	364 300
Gazankulu	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	1 013 800
Lebowa	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	2 912 300
Kwandebele	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	429 300
Transkei	99.9	0.1	.	.	100.0	3 706 300
Bophuthatswana	99.9	.	.	0.1	100.0	2 393 700
Venda	99.4	.	0.6	.	100.0	597 400
Ciskei	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	903 000
All/S.A.	76.2	8.5	2.5	12.7	100.0	40 147 900

Sample number = 40 284

NOTE: Based on Questionnaire Section 1 (See note to interviewer).

Table 1.6: Distribution of RESIDENT individuals in households interviewed by old boundaries and province - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage)

Old Boundaries	Province									Total	Number
	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.		
Cape	61.7	9.1	28.1	.	.	.	.	1.1	.	100.0	5 657 100
Natal	.	.	.	100.0	.	.	.	.	.	100.0	2 020 000
Transvaal	.	.	.	.	.	15.3	2.9	10.2	71.5	100.0	8 989 100
Orange Free State	.	.	.	.	100.0	.	.	.	.	100.0	2 172 700
Kwazulu	.	.	.	100.0	.	.	.	.	.	100.0	5 812 300
Kangwane	.	.	.	.	.	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	819 700
Qwa-Qwa	.	.	.	.	100.0	.	.	.	.	100.0	288 000
Gazankulu	.	.	.	.	.	.	100.0	.	.	100.0	1 001 400
Lebowa	.	.	.	.	.	.	100.0	.	.	100.0	3 409 900
Kwandebele	.	.	.	.	.	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	537 300
Transkei	.	.	100.0	.	.	.	.	.	.	100.0	3 731 800
Bophuthatswana	.	.	.	.	7.1	.	.	92.9	.	100.0	2 298 600
Venda	.	.	.	.	.	100.0	.	.	.	100.0	596 700
Ciskei	.	.	100.0	.	.	.	.	.	.	100.0	784 000
All/S.A.	9.2	1.3	16.0	20.5	6.9	8.7	12.3	8.2	16.9	100.0	38 118 600

Sample number = 40 284

NOTE: Based on Questionnaire Section 1 (See note to interviewer).

**Table 1.7: Distribution of households by province and race - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage)**

Province	African	Coloured	Indian	White	Total	Number
W. Cape	17.1	45.2	0.2	37.5	100.0	887 500
N. Cape	22.3	77.7			100.0	120 000
E. Cape	86.3	4.4		9.3	100.0	1 180 500
Kwazulu	75.9	3.2	13.6	7.3	100.0	1 382 400
O.F.S.	83.6	2.5		13.9	100.0	671 800
E. Tvl	90.2	0.1	0.4	9.3	100.0	725 700
N. Tvl	92.2			7.8	100.0	904 600
N.W.	90.5	0.2	0.1	9.2	100.0	812 100
P.W.V.	57.4	2.7	1.9	38.0	100.0	1 846 200
All/S.A.	71.4	7.7	2.7	18.2	100.0	8 530 800

Sample number = 8 848

NOTE 1: All subsequent tables follow this breakdown.

NOTE 2: For the exact number of households interviewed see Table 1.1.

**Table 1.8: Distribution of RESIDENT individuals by province and race - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage)**

Province	African	Coloured	Indian	White	Total	Number
W. Cape	16.8	54.7	0.2	28.3	100.0	3 491 400
N. Cape	18.1	81.9			100.0	515 000
E. Cape	88.7	4.7		6.6	100.0	6 104 400
Kwazulu	83.5	2.4	10.7	3.3	100.0	7 832 300
O.F.S.	86.4	2.5		11.1	100.0	2 624 100
E. Tvl	92.7	0.0	0.2	7.1	100.0	3 333 000
N. Tvl	96.3			3.7	100.0	4 671 900
N.W.	92.4	0.1	0.0	7.5	100.0	3 115 700
P.W.V.	62.0	3.3	2.3	32.4	100.0	6 430 800
All/S.A.	77.0	8.1	2.6	12.3	100.0	38 118 600

Sample number = 42 084

NOTE 1: All subsequent tables follow this breakdown.

NOTE 2: For the exact number of households interviewed see Table 1.1.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



**Table 1.9: Distribution of households by province and location: Rural and Urban - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage)**

Province	Rural	Urban/Metro	Total	Number
W. Cape	5.6	94.4	100.0	887 500
N. Cape	6.7	93.3	100.0	120 000
E. Cape	69.9	30.1	100.0	1 180 500
Kwazulu	57.1	42.9	100.0	1 382 400
O.F.S.	39.7	60.3	100.0	671 800
E. Tvl	72.6	27.4	100.0	725 700
N. Tvl	87.7	12.3	100.0	904 600
N.W.	89.2	10.8	100.0	812 100
P.W.V.	1.3	98.7	100.0	1 846 200
All/S.A.	47.0	53.0	100.0	8 530 800

Sample number = 8 848

NOTE: Based on Questionnaire Section 1 (See note to interviewer).

**Table 1.10: Distribution of RESIDENT individuals by province and location:  
Rural and Urban - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage)**

Province	Rural	Urban/Metro	Total	Number
W. Cape	5.1	94.9	100.0	3 491 400
N. Cape	10.0	90.0	100.0	515 000
E. Cape	71.9	28.1	100.0	6 104 400
Kwazulu	65.4	34.6	100.0	7 832 300
O.F.S.	38.4	61.6	100.0	2 624 100
E. Tvl	74.3	25.7	100.0	3 333 000
N. Tvl	92.2	7.8	100.0	4 671 900
N.W.	87.8	12.2	100.0	3 115 700
P.W.V.	1.1	98.9	100.0	6 430 800
All/S.A.	53.3	46.7	100.0	38 118 600

Sample number = 40 284

NOTE: Based on Questionnaire Section 1 (See note to interviewer).

**Table 1.11: Distribution of households by location and race - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage)**

Location	African	Coloured	Indian	White	Total	Number
Rural	95.7	1.1	0.0	3.2	100.0	4 007 100
Urban	56.7	13.8	6.9	22.6	100.0	1 907 500
Metropolitan	45.0	13.5	3.6	37.9	100.0	2 616 200
All/S.A.	71.4	7.7	2.7	18.2	100.0	8 530 800

Sample number = 8 848

NOTE: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.

**Table 1.12: Distribution of RESIDENT individuals by location and race - Weighted by enumeration (Percentage)**

Location	African	Coloured	Indian	White	Total	Number
Rural	97.0	1.0	0.0	2.0	100.0	20 335 100
Urban	61.1	14.8	7.1	17.0	100.0	7 822 300
Metropolitan	48.8	17.4	4.4	29.5	100.0	9 961 300
All/S.A.	77.0	8.1	2.6	12.3	100.0	38 118 600

Sample number = 40 284

NOTE: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.

## **CHAPTER TWO**

# **HOUSEHOLD STRUCTURE AND DEMOGRAPHICS**

**Table 2.1: Distribution of individuals by race and age (Percentage)**

Race	0-5	6-13	14-17	18-64	65 +	Total	Number
African	13.8	21.8	9.7	50.2	4.6	100.0	29 117 700
Coloured	11.4	20.4	8.4	56.1	3.6	100.0	3 076 900
Indian	8.8	17.0	10.0	61.5	2.8	100.0	998 900
White	7.4	14.4	7.0	63.7	7.5	100.0	4 658 300
All	12.7	20.7	9.3	52.6	4.8	100.0	37 851 700

Sample number = 39 996

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.5.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 2.2: Distribution of individuals by household size and age (Percentage)**

Household Size	0-5	6-13	14-17	16-64	65 +	Total	% of HH's in group	Number
1 person			0.0	91.7	8.3	100.0	15.1	1 284 100
2 persons	1.8	3.3	2.6	77.4	14.9	100.0	14.1	1 200 600
3 persons	11.0	11.6	6.1	65.5	5.8	100.0	13.3	1 135 800
4 persons	12.3	19.9	8.9	55.4	3.6	100.0	15.3	1 304 100
5 persons	13.2	23.3	10.3	50.2	3.0	100.0	12.4	1 060 600
6 persons	13.2	24.9	11.8	46.2	3.9	100.0	9.4	802 700
7 persons	14.2	25.2	11.7	44.7	4.3	100.0	6.5	555 400
8 persons	14.5	24.7	10.8	45.7	4.3	100.0	4.7	402 300
9 + persons	16.5	25.1	10.3	44.3	3.8	100.0	9.2	785 300
Total	12.7	20.7	9.3	52.6	4.8	100.0	100.0	8 530 800

Sample number = 8 848

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.

NOTE 2: HH = Household.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 2.3: Average household size by province and race

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	3.9	152 100	4.8	401 200	3.0	1 800	3.0	332 400	3.9	887 500
N. Cape	3.5	26 800	4.5	93 200					4.3	120 000
E. Cape	5.3	1 018 300	5.5	51 900			3.7	110 300	5.2	1 180 500
Kwazulu	6.2	1 049 000	4.4	43 700	4.5	188 100	2.6	101 600	5.7	1 382 400
O.F.S.	4.0	561 800	3.8	16 900			3.1	93 200	3.9	671 800
E. Tvl	4.7	654 700	1.0	800	2.3	2 800	3.5	67 400	4.6	725 700
N. Tvl	5.4	834 200					2.5	70 400	5.2	904 600
N.W.	3.9	735 100	1.0	1 700	1.0	900	3.1	74 400	3.8	812 100
P.W.V.	3.8	1 060 900	4.4	49 200	4.3	34 600	3.0	701 400	3.5	1 846 200
All/S.A	4.8	6 092 700	4.7	658 700	4.4	228 200	3.0	1 551 100	4.5	8 530 800

Sample number = 8 848

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

NOTE 3: Hostels (comprised principally of single person households) captured in the following Magisterial districts would tend to lower average (African) household size in the provinces.

W. Cape: Caledon, Wynberg

N. Cape: Namaqualand, Vryburg

E. Cape: Hofmeyer, Maclear, Willowvale

Kwazulu/Natal: Lower Tugela, Mbumbulu, New Hanover

O.F.S.: Welkom

E. Tvl: Witbank

N.W.: Marico, Potchefstroom, Swartruggens, Ventersdorp

P.W.V.: Cullinan, Kempton Park, Pretoria

**Table 2.3.1: Average household size by location and race**

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Size	Number	Size	Number	Size	Number	Size	Number	Size	Number
Rural	5.1	3 834 500	4.8	43 300	2.5	1 800	3.2	127 400	5.1	4 007 100
Urban	4.4	1 081 900	4.4	262 600	4.2	131 400	3.1	431 700	4.1	1 907 500
Metropolitan	4.1	1 176 300	4.9	352 800	4.6	95 000	3.0	992 000	3.8	2 616 200
All	4.8	6 092 700	4.7	658 700	4.4	228 200	3.0	1 551 100	4.5	8 530 800

Sample number = 8 848

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.

NOTE 2: See Table 2.3. Hostels would tend to lower average (African) household size.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 2.3.2: Average household size by type of dwelling and province: African

Type of dwelling	W. Cape		N. Cape		E. Cape		Kwazulu		O.F.S.		E. Tvl		N. Tvl		N.W.		P.W.V.		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Shack	4.1	91 000			4.0	68 300	5.2	82 000	4.4	152 200	3.9	64 600	4.0	34 700	4.3	69 200	3.3	344 100	3.9	906 200
House/part of house	6.4	24 600	3.5	26 800	5.3	249 600	5.8	412 700	4.3	273 500	4.9	379 000	5.1	389 400	4.6	457 100	5.0	471 000	5.0	2 683 800
Traditional dwelling (hut)					5.3	288 900	6.7	311 700	4.9	60 000	5.7	68 700	5.0	135 600	4.6	7 400			5.8	872 400
Maisonette					7.0	900	7.0	900					5.0	800			3.6	5 100	4.9	7 800
Flat	1.3	3 200			5.0	134 800	3.3	2 700									1.6	2 000	4.9	142 800
Hostel	1.6	33 200			3.5	5 200	1.4	40 100	1.0	55 900	1.0	56 300			1.1	144 500	1.0	90 100	1.2	425 300
Outbuilding					4.8	6 000	4.8	3 600	2.0	6 900	1.8	8 100	2.2	3 600	2.1	18 800	2.0	131 100	2.2	174 000
Combination of buildings					5.8	261 000	7.8	190 800	5.6	12 500	6.3	80 000	6.2	269 100	6.2	38 000	10.4	10 200	6.5	861 700
Other					5.0	900			2.0	800							1.8	4 100	2.3	5 800
All	3.9	152 100	3.5	26 800	5.3	1 015 700	6.2	1 044 500	4.0	560 900	4.7	653 800	5.4	833 300	3.9	735 100	3.7	1 057 800	4.8	6 079 900

Sample number = 6 519

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 1 and 2.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 2.3.3: Average household size by type of dwelling and location: African**

Type of dwelling	Rural		Urban		Metropolitan		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Shack	4.8	195 500	4.0	331 400	3.4	379 300	3.9	906 200
House/part of house	4.9	1 515 800	5.0	598 400	5.4	569 700	5.0	2 683 800
Traditional dwelling (hut)	5.8	858 100	5.4	14 400			5.8	872 400
Maisonette	6.0	1 800	2.0	900	3.6	5 100	4.0	7 800
Flat	5.1	126 100	3.9	11 400	1.2	5 300	4.9	142 800
Hostel	1.1	274 900	1.2	69 500	1.2	81 000	1.2	425 300
Outbuilding	3.2	31 200	1.9	23 100	2.0	119 800	2.2	174 000
Combination of buildings	6.4	824 100	6.5	27 400	10.4	10 200	6.5	861 700
Other	5.0	900	2.0	1 900	1.7	3 100	2.3	5 800
All	5.1	3 828 300	4.4	1 078 200	4.1	1 173 400	4.8	6 079 900

Sample number = 6 519

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 1 and 2.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 2.4: Dependency ratio by province and race

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Ratio	Number	Ratio	Number	Ratio	Number	Ratio	Number	Ratio	Number
W. Cape	1.0	146 700	1.6	398 300	1.0	1 800	0.9	317 100	1.2	863 900
N. Cape	1.8	26 800	1.8	89 300					1.8	116 000
E. Cape	2.1	998 100	1.5	51 900			1.0	105 700	2.0	1 155 700
Kwazulu	2.6	1 022 300	1.5	42 000	2.0	185 500	0.6	96 100	2.3	1 345 900
O.F.S.	1.5	549 800	1.1	16 900			0.9	90 500	1.4	657 200
E. Tvl	1.8	648 700	0.0	800	0.9	2 800	1.7	65 300	1.7	717 600
N. Tvl	2.7	820 800					0.6	67 400	2.6	888 200
N.W.	1.4	717 700	0.0	1 700	0.0	900	1.2	70 300	1.4	790 600
P.W.V.	1.1	1 046 500	1.6	46 700	1.4	34 600	0.9	674 900	1.1	1 802 700
All/S.A	1.9	5 977 300	1.6	647 700	1.8	225 600	0.9	1 487 400	1.7	8 338 000

Sample number = 8 653

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 1 and 8.1.

NOTE 2: Dependants are defined as individuals supported by a single person participating in the labour force, including the unemployed and the discouraged, excluding him/herself.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

NOTE 4: Hostels (comprised principally of single person households) captured in the following Magisterial districts would tend to lower dependency ratios in the provinces.

W. Cape: Caledon, Wynberg

N. Cape: Namaqualand, Vryburg

E. Cape: Hofmeyer, Maclear, Willowvale

Kwazulu/Natal: Lower Tugela, Mbumbulu, New Hanover

O.F.S.: Welkom

E. Tvl: Witbank

N.W.: Marico, Potchefstroom, Swarttruggens, Ventersdorp

P.W.V.: Cullinan, Kempton Park, Pretoria

Table 2.5: Characteristics of household heads by race, location, age, gender and residence (Percentage)

Table 2.5: Characteristics of household heads by race, location, age, gender and residence (Percentage)

Race & Location	HH $\leq 64$			HH $\geq 65$			Total Resident	Absent HH	Total	Number
	Female	Male	All	Female	Male	All				
African										
Rural	18.6	46.7	65.3	9.4	9.8	19.2	84.5	15.5	100.0	3 675 700
Urban	23.8	59.3	83.1	5.9	5.8	11.8	94.9	5.1	100.0	1 067 100
Metropolitan	28.5	60.2	88.8	6.5	4.5	11.1	99.8	0.2	100.0	1 171 200
All	21.5	51.7	73.1	8.2	8.0	16.3	89.4	10.6	100.0	5 914 000
Coloured										
Rural	0.0	95.4	95.4	0.0	2.3	2.3	97.7	2.3	100.0	42 300
Urban	24.4	55.8	80.2	6.2	7.5	13.7	94.0	6.0	100.0	259 600
Metropolitan	16.0	76.6	92.6	3.9	2.2	6.0	98.6	1.4	100.0	352 000
All	18.3	69.6	87.9	4.6	4.3	8.8	96.7	3.3	100.0	653 900
Indian										
Rural	0.0	100.0	100.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	0.0	100.0	1 000
Urban	14.7	78.6	93.3	2.0	4.7	6.7	100.0	0.0	100.0	131 400
Metropolitan	5.5	87.9	93.4	4.6	2.0	6.6	100.0	0.0	100.0	95 000
All	10.8	82.7	93.4	3.1	3.5	6.6	100.0	0.0	100.0	228 200
White										
Rural	7.7	79.4	87.1	1.2	11.6	12.9	100.0	0.0	100.0	125 400
Urban	5.7	77.0	82.7	5.1	11.8	16.9	99.5	0.5	100.0	430 800
Metropolitan	14.7	73.9	88.6	3.0	8.1	11.0	99.6	0.4	100.0	984 000
All	11.6	75.2	86.8	3.4	9.4	12.8	99.6	0.4	100.0	1 540 200
All										
Rural	18.0	48.4	66.3	9.1	9.7	18.8	85.1	14.9	100.0	3 845 300
Urban	19.1	64.2	83.3	5.5	7.3	12.8	96.2	3.8	100.0	1 888 900
Metropolitan	20.7	68.6	89.4	4.8	5.5	10.2	99.6	0.4	100.0	2 602 200
All	19.1	58.3	77.4	6.9	7.9	14.8	92.1	7.9	100.0	8 336 300

Sample number = 8 637

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.

NOTE 2: Percentage of household heads (HH)  $\leq 64$  + HH  $\geq 65$  = Total Resident + Absent HH = Total.

NOTE 3: Apparent discrepancy in the number of female household heads in this table and Table 2.6 which follows results from non-reporting age by 38 women.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 2.6: Percentage of female headed households by race, location and household size

Race & Location	1 person	2 persons	3 persons	4 persons	5 persons	6 persons	7 persons	8 persons	9+ persons	Total	Number
African											
Rural	9.2	9.8	12.3	14.1	12.5	11.9	9.4	6.5	14.3	100.0	1 036 500
Urban	14.7	11.9	12.6	12.0	11.6	10.7	7.6	7.5	11.3	100.0	314 100
Metropolitan	22.1	11.0	12.9	13.2	7.8	7.3	7.2	5.3	13.2	100.0	412 900
All	13.2	10.4	12.5	13.5	11.3	10.6	8.6	6.4	13.5	100.0	1 763 500
Coloured											
Rural										100.0	0
Urban	3.5	11.7	21.1	18.7	20.3	7.3	6.9	4.7	5.9	100.0	80 600
Metropolitan	6.6	13.7	13.9	15.3	18.3	8.4	8.4	9.8	5.6	100.0	69 800
All	5.0	12.6	17.8	17.1	19.3	7.8	7.6	7.1	5.8	100.0	150 400
Indian											
Rural										100.0	0
Urban	19.9	16.2	31.9	16.0	16.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	21 900
Metropolitan	9.1	27.4	18.2	9.1	9.1	18.2	9.1	0.0	0.0	100.0	8 800
All	16.6	19.6	27.7	13.9	13.9	5.5	2.8	0.0	0.0	100.0	31 500
White											
Rural	50.0	13.6	22.7	13.6	0.0	0.0	0.0			100.0	11 200
Urban	69.5	15.0	10.0	3.3	2.2	0.0	0.0	0.0		100.0	46 100
Metropolitan	47.8	25.4	14.6	7.8	2.6	1.7	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	176 500
All	52.2	22.8	14.1	7.2	2.4	1.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	233 800
All											
Rural	9.6	9.8	12.4	14.1	12.4	11.8	9.3	6.4	14.2	100.0	1 047 700
Urban	18.5	12.4	14.7	12.5	12.4	8.6	6.4	5.9	8.7	100.0	462 800
Metropolitan	27.1	15.3	13.6	11.9	7.6	6.1	5.5	4.3	8.7	100.0	668 900
All	16.8	12.0	13.3	13.1	10.9	9.4	7.5	5.6	11.3	100.0	2 179 400

Sample number = 2 300

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.

NOTE 2: See note 3 to Table 2.5.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 2.7: Percentage of households headed by persons aged 65+ by race, location and household size



NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.

NOTE 2: See note 3 to Table 2.5.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 2.7: Percentage of households headed by persons aged 65+ by race, location and household size

Race & Location	1 person	2 persons	3 persons	4 persons	5 persons	6 persons	7 persons	8 persons	9 + persons	Total	Number
<b>African</b>											
Rural	5.1	9.8	11.4	11.5	10.8	12.7	10.2	8.2	20.2	100.0	693 200
Urban	6.7	10.2	11.4	7.3	10.7	13.9	7.4	11.5	20.7	100.0	125 600
Metropolitan	10.1	12.8	10.1	8.8	5.6	10.7	7.2	8.3	26.5	100.0	129 900
All	6.0	10.3	11.2	10.6	10.1	12.6	9.4	8.7	21.2	100.0	948 700
<b>Coloured</b>											
Rural	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	1 000
Urban	2.8	12.6	24.1	16.5	8.3	11.0	13.8	2.8	8.3	100.0	35 600
Metropolitan	9.3	9.3	17.3	13.9	8.6	9.3	13.9	13.9	4.6	100.0	21 200
All	5.1	11.2	21.2	15.3	8.3	10.2	15.3	6.8	6.8	100.0	57 800
<b>Indian</b>											
Rural										100.0	0
Urban	10.0	10.0	20.0	20.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	0.0	10.0	100.0	8 800
Metropolitan	0.0	14.0	43.0	0.0	0.0	29.0	14.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	6 200
All	5.8	11.7	29.6	11.7	5.8	17.9	11.7	0.0	5.8	100.0	15 000
<b>White</b>											
Rural	22.2	58.8	12.7	6.3	0.0	0.0	0.0			100.0	16 100
Urban	26.0	64.4	3.2	6.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0		100.0	72 700
Metropolitan	19.7	63.4	11.8	2.4	2.8	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	108 600
All	22.2	63.4	8.7	4.1	1.6	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	197 400
<b>All</b>											
Rural	5.5	10.9	11.4	11.4	10.5	12.4	10.1	8.0	19.8	100.0	710 300
Urban	12.1	26.8	11.1	8.8	7.1	9.2	6.2	6.4	12.3	100.0	242 700
Metropolitan	13.7	33.2	12.1	6.4	4.6	6.6	5.0	5.2	13.3	100.0	265 900
All	8.6	18.9	11.5	9.8	8.6	10.5	8.2	7.1	16.9	100.0	1 218 900

Sample number = 1 277

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

## **CHAPTER THREE**

# **EDUCATION**

## Section 5: Education

### 5.1 Enrolment

**Interviewer:** Ask these questions for each person on the household roster between the ages of 6 to 24 years.  
List all the names and codes from the flap first and then ask Questions 3 to 8.

1.	2.	3.		4.	5.	6.	7.	8.
		Is _____ enrolled in some kind of formal education?		If not, why? (Use code box)	What was the last year of enrolment?	How long does it take to go to and from school?	How much does it cost to travel to and from school each week?	What is the form of transport used by _____? (Use code box)
Name	Person Code	YES Go to 6.	NO	Code	Year	Minutes	Rand	Code
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					

Codes for Question 4	Codes for Question 8
01=School expenses too high 02=Needed to get work 03=Illness/disabled 04=Became pregnant 05=No school locally 06=Could not cope with school work 07=School boycott 08=Social unrest/violence 09=Completed education 10=Required for work at home or on the farm 11=Other (Specify)	1= Bus 2= Taxi 3= Train 4= Bicycle 5= Car/motor bike 6= Walk 7= Car "Pool"/Lift Club 8= Other (Describe)

### 5.2 Education Spending

1. In the last 12 months, how much, if anything, did your household spend on the following items:

08=Social unrest/violence  
 09=Completed education  
 10=Required for work at home or on the farm  
 11=Other (Specify)

## 5.2 Education Spending

1. In the last 12 months, how much, if anything, did your household spend on the following items:

	CODE	RAND
<b>EDUCATION SPENDING:</b>		
School fees for Pre-primary Education	-01	R
School fees for Primary Education	-02	R
School fees for Secondary Education	-03	R
Tuition fees for Tertiary Education	-04	R
<b>OTHER EXPENSES:</b>		
School Uniforms	-05	R
Transport to school	-06	R
Meals at school	-07	R
Stationery for school	-08	R
School books	-09	R
Boarding Fees	-10	R
Contributions to school buildings	-11	R
Extra Costs for Teachers	-12	R
Extramural activities	-13	R
Other (Specify)	-14	R

## 5.3 Bursaries, Scholarships and School Meals

- 1a. In the past year, did the household receive any help with education in the form of bursaries, scholarships, or donations?

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→ Go to Question 2

- 1b. If YES: What was the value of that assistance? R \_\_\_\_\_

- 2a. And did the household receive any help in the form of subsidised (cheap) or free meals at school?

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→ Go to Section 6

- 2b. If YES: How much did the household save as a result of those meals? R \_\_\_\_\_

Table 3.1: Enrolment in formal education by province and race, persons aged 6-24 (Percentage)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	69.6	207 800	70.3	745 600	0.0	1 800	84.0	306 400	73.4	1 261 500
N. Cape	73.3	32 100	74.7	158 900					74.5	191 100
E. Cape	79.6	2 438 900	61.6	143 200			84.4	147 100	78.9	2 729 200
Kwazulu	75.9	3 056 400	86.2	89 800	78.1	323 800	80.9	61 700	76.4	3 531 600
O.F.S.	80.3	930 600	69.2	23 200			74.2	86 600	79.6	1 040 400
E. Tvl	79.1	1 345 400	0.0	800			87.3	72 500	79.5	1 418 800
N. Tvl	85.4	2 145 600					51.0	52 100	84.6	2 197 600
N.W.	67.9	1 215 600	50.0	1 700			78.2	79 600	68.5	1 296 900
P.W.V.	77.7	1 373 200	83.8	89 100	69.8	49 600	78.4	613 600	78.0	2 125 600
All/S.A.	78.2	12 745 500	71.9	1 252 400	76.6	375 100	79.5	1 419 600	77.8	15 792 600

Sample number = 16 867

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 5.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 3.1.1: Enrolment in formal education by province and race, persons aged 6-13 (Percentage)**

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	92.8	73 900	94.7	333 500	.	.	100.0	124 100	95.7	531 500
N. Cape	92.3	13 900	88.0	81 400	.	.	.	.	88.6	95 300
E. Cape	89.9	1 176 900	95.0	58 900	.	.	97.2	55 200	90.5	1 290 900
Kwazulu	90.4	1 420 300	100.0	33 800	100.0	134 800	87.5	36 300	91.3	1 625 100
O.F.S.	92.8	406 500	91.7	10 700	.	.	86.7	39 400	92.2	456 600
E. Tvl	93.4	562 000	.	.	.	.	95.2	42 900	93.5	604 800
N. Tvl	94.8	1 006 000	.	.	.	.	100.0	13 300	94.8	1 019 300
N.W.	81.6	505 700	.	.	.	.	96.6	29 600	82.4	535 300
P.W.V.	95.6	531 500	94.1	43 300	100.0	15 000	93.9	249 100	95.1	838 900
All/S.A.	91.3	5 696 600	94.0	561 600	100.0	149 700	95.0	589 800	92.0	6 997 700

Sample number = 7 515

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 5.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.1.2: Enrolment in formal education by province and race, persons aged 14-17 (Percentage)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	87.5	42 800	93.4	134 400	.	.	100.0	72 000	94.3	249 200
N. Cape	100.0	10 700	92.1	37 300	.	.	.	.	93.9	48 000
E. Cape	91.8	545 000	85.7	27 500	.	.	93.5	47 500	91.7	619 900
Kwazulu	88.1	690 700	97.4	31 300	96.0	86 600	100.0	11 800	89.5	820 400
O.F.S.	91.8	216 400	100.0	6 200	.	.	93.3	19 700	92.1	242 300
E. Tvl	90.2	295 000	.	.	.	.	100.0	18 400	90.8	313 400
N. Tvl	93.5	465 300	.	.	.	.	100.0	10 200	93.7	475 500
N.W.	85.7	245 600	.	.	.	.	100.0	20 400	86.8	266 100
P.W.V.	95.5	292 900	100.0	21 200	100.0	13 100	100.0	121 500	97.0	448 700
All/S.A.	90.8	2 804 400	93.6	257 900	96.5	99 700	98.6	321 500	91.9	3 483 600

Sample number = 3 722

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 5.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.1.3: Enrolment in formal education by province and race, persons aged 18-24 (Percentage)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	42.4	91 000	29.7	277 600	0.0	1 800	55.6	110 300	37.9	480 700
N. Cape	0.0	7 500	31.7	40 200	.	.	.	.	26.7	47 700
E. Cape	53.5	717 000	15.5	56 900	.	.	58.6	44 400	51.1	818 300
Kwazulu	45.1	945 400	53.3	24 700	34.2	102 400	46.7	13 600	44.2	1 086 100
O.F.S.	55.8	307 700	0.0	8 200	.	.	42.9	27 600	53.8	341 500
E. Tvl	56.1	488 500	0.0	800	.	.	36.4	11 200	55.6	500 500
N. Tvl	65.9	674 300	.	.	.	.	10.7	28 600	63.6	702 800
N.W.	43.4	464 300	50.0	1 700	.	.	44.8	29 600	43.5	495 600
P.W.V.	50.9	548 900	51.7	24 600	30.4	21 500	51.7	243 000	50.6	838 000
All/S.A.	52.3	4 244 500	30.2	432 900	33.1	125 700	49.5	508 300	49.8	5 311 300

Sample number = 5 630

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 5.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 3.1.4: Enrolment in formal education by gender and location, persons aged 6-24 (Percentage)

Age & Gender	Rural		Urban		Metropolitan		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
6-13								
Female	91.7	2 145 600	95.3	645 700	96.7	653 600	93.3	3 444 900
Male	88.6	2 127 400	92.8	704 600	94.9	719 800	90.7	3 551 900
All	90.1	4 273 000	94.0	1 350 400	95.8	1 373 400	92.0	6 996 800
14-17								
Female	89.4	1 073 800	95.2	328 400	94.8	388 600	91.6	1 790 800
Male	90.5	986 800	93.2	330 000	95.9	375 900	92.2	1 692 700
All	89.9	2 060 600	94.2	658 400	95.3	764 600	91.9	3 483 500
18-24								
Female	47.7	1 580 600	46.6	497 700	45.5	726 600	46.9	2 805 000
Male	56.5	1 364 200	51.2	476 700	46.9	665 500	53.0	2 506 400
All	51.8	2 944 800	48.8	974 400	46.2	1 392 100	49.8	5 311 400

Sample number = 16 866

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 5.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.2: Average household expenditure on TUITION fees per child enrolled per annum by province and race: All (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	116.00	144 600	130.00	522 900	.	.	1 021.00	257 400	376.00	924 800
N. Cape	11.00	23 600	11.00	118 700	.	.	.	.	11.00	142 300
E. Cape	37.00	1 940 400	14.00	88 300	.	.	1 773.00	124 100	136.00	2 152 800
Kwazulu	48.00	2 318 900	62.00	77 500	222.00	252 900	1 070.00	49 900	84.00	2 699 100
O.F.S.	50.00	747 500	9.00	16 000	.	.	1 537.00	64 300	165.00	827 800
E. Tvl	113.00	1 064 800	.	.	.	.	848.00	63 300	154.00	1 128 100
N. Tvl	60.00	1 831 900	.	.	.	.	1 312.00	26 500	77.00	1 858 400
N.W.	123.00	825 000	0.00	800	.	.	720.00	62 300	165.00	888 100
P.W.V.	161.00	1 067 000	140.00	74 700	774.00	34 600	1 846.00	477 800	659.00	1 654 200
All/S.A.	74.00	9 963 700	96.00	898 900	289.00	287 500	1 466.00	1 125 600	208.00	12 275 700

Sample number = 13 130

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 5.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.2.1: Average household expenditure on TUITION fees per child enrolled per annum by province and race: Primary (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	21.00	78 200	55.00	335 500	.	.	695.00	145 500	217.00	559 200
N. Cape	12.00	18 200	10.00	84 400	.	.	.	.	10.00	102 600
E. Cape	14.00	1 311 600	6.00	64 700	.	.	507.00	65 900	36.00	1 442 200
Kwazulu	28.00	1 529 200	25.00	35 400	16.00	131 300	763.00	29 900	39.00	1 725 800
O.F.S.	18.00	507 300	14.00	10 700	.	.	644.00	34 100	56.00	552 100
E. Tvl	31.00	620 900	.	.	.	.	899.00	40 800	85.00	661 700
N. Tvl	24.00	1 052 100	.	.	.	.	872.00	11 200	33.00	1 063 300
N.W.	61.00	519 000	.	.	.	.	743.00	28 600	96.00	547 600
P.W.V.	94.00	557 100	123.00	40 800	481.00	15 000	1 619.00	234 800	525.00	847 600
All/S.A.	32.00	6 193 600	45.00	571 500	64.00	146 200	1 062.00	- 590 900	115.00	7 502 300

Sample number = 8 059

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 5.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.2.2: Average household expenditure on TUITION fees per child enrolled per annum by province and race: Secondary (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	32.00	51 400	51.00	165 800	.	.	1 016.00	79 700	306.00	296 900
N. Cape	7.00	5 400	14.00	32 400	.	.	.	.	13.00	37 700
E. Cape	31.00	578 100	16.00	22 600	.	.	1 048.00	44 400	100.00	645 100
Kwazulu	56.00	754 900	18.00	34 600	22.00	104 100	1 089.00	16 300	69.00	910 000
O.F.S.	45.00	235 100	0.00	6 300	.	.	410.00	26 200	80.00	266 700
E. Tvl	41.00	390 300	.	.	.	.	829.00	20 400	80.00	410 700
N. Tvl	41.00	723 700	.	.	.	.	537.00	14 300	50.00	738 000
N.W.	71.00	293 500	.	.	.	.	624.00	27 600	118.00	321 000
P.W.V.	120.00	425 000	32.00	30 600	52.00	15 900	1 063.00	160 300	353.00	631 700
All/S.A.	55.00	3 457 300	37.00	291 200	26.00	120 000	946.00	389 200	134.00	4 257 800

Sample number = 4 547

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 5.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.2.3: Average household expenditure on TUITION fees per child enrolled per annum by province and race: Tertiary (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	900.00	16 000	1 905.00	21 600	.	.	2 693.00	32 200	2 055.00	68 700
N. Cape	.	.	0.00	2 000	.	.	.	.	0.00	2 000
E. Cape	705.00	50 700	520.00	1 000	.	.	10 978.00	13 800	2 866.00	65 500
Kwazulu	791.00	34 800	444.00	7 400	2 959.00	17 500	3 523.00	3 600	1 506.00	63 300
O.F.S.	3 510.00	5 100	.	.	.	.	16 800.00	3 900	9 310.00	9 000
E. Tvl	1 575.00	53 700	.	.	.	.	0.00	2 000	1 517.00	55 700
N. Tvl	983.00	56 100	.	.	.	.	17 000.00	1 000	1 270.00	57 100
N.W.	4 019.00	12 500	0.00	800	.	.	1 042.00	6 100	2 907.00	19 500
P.W.V.	806.00	85 000	1 320.00	3 400	5 018.00	3 700	4 042.00	82 700	2 437.00	174 800
All/S.A.	1 129.00	312 800	1 365.00	36 200	3 322.00	21 200	4 641.00	145 400	2 226.00	515 600

Sample number = 524

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 5.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.3: Average household expenditure on NON-TUITION fees per child enrolled per annum by province and race (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	357.00	144 600	193.00	522 900	.	.	875.00	257 400	408.00	924 800
N. Cape	338.00	23 600	43.00	118 700	.	.	.	.	92.00	142 300
E. Cape	73.00	1 940 400	90.00	88 300	.	.	351.00	124 100	89.00	2 152 800
Kwazulu	112.00	2 318 900	181.00	77 500	299.00	252 900	769.00	49 900	143.00	2 699 100
O.F.S.	66.00	747 500	95.00	18 000	.	.	1 628.00	64 300	188.00	827 800
E. Tvl	165.00	1 064 800	.	.	.	.	705.00	63 300	195.00	1 128 100
N. Tvl	119.00	1 831 900	.	.	.	.	1 058.00	26 500	132.00	1 858 400
N.W.	139.00	825 000	0.00	800	.	.	511.00	62 300	165.00	888 100
P.W.V.	447.00	1 067 000	175.00	74 700	865.00	34 600	992.00	477 800	601.00	1 654 200
All/S.A.	150.00	9 963 700	159.00	898 900	367.00	287 500	880.00	1 125 600	222.00	12 275 700

Sample number = 13 130

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 5.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.4: Individual school attainment by age group and gender: All (Percentage)

Age & Gender	None	Std 1	Std 2	Std 3	Std 4	Std 5	Std 6	Std 7	Std 8	Std 9	Std 10	Diploma	Tertiary	University	Total	Number
0-5																
Female	98.9	1.1													100.0	2 375 200
Male	99.3	0.7													100.0	2 416 200
6-13																
Female	18.8	47.8	12.6	9.4	6.1	3.6	1.4	0.3							100.0	3 819 300
Male	21.3	49.9	12.7	8.2	4.8	2.4	0.4	0.2							100.0	3 980 400
14-17																
Female	2.1	3.3	5.4	8.8	14.1	17.6	20.8	14.5	9.1	3.7	0.4		0.0		100.0	1 798 000
Male	2.0	7.2	7.9	10.9	16.9	18.4	15.0	13.1	5.4	2.6	0.4	0.1			100.0	1 701 100
18-24																
Female	4.5	1.5	2.0	3.5	4.2	8.1	10.2	11.9	15.5	15.5	19.4	0.1	3.2	0.3	100.0	2 924 100
Male	4.6	2.6	3.2	4.4	4.9	8.4	12.0	11.4	13.7	13.0	17.5	0.3	3.7	0.4	100.0	2 583 900
25-29																
Female	7.3	3.5	3.5	3.5	5.6	9.6	7.3	9.3	12.8	9.8	19.0	0.1	7.3	1.5	100.0	1 595 500
Male	6.3	3.8	4.0	5.8	6.6	9.7	7.9	7.1	10.1	7.6	20.7	0.6	7.6	2.1	100.0	1 351 300
30-39																
Female	12.7	4.4	5.5	5.6	6.9	10.3	11.1	6.9	11.8	5.1	10.9	0.5	6.0	2.3	100.0	2 623 700
Male	8.2	5.6	4.3	5.2	6.1	9.5	10.4	6.7	12.4	5.2	14.0	1.0	7.8	3.5	100.0	2 268 500
40-49																
Female	19.2	5.4	4.8	6.5	7.5	8.9	13.8	4.9	11.3	3.4	8.0	0.4	3.8	1.9	100.0	1 889 600
Male	14.5	4.9	5.3	5.1	6.6	8.5	12.9	4.0	11.3	4.8	10.0	1.6	6.5	4.0	100.0	1 483 300
50-59																
Female	30.8	6.3	5.8	6.0	7.8	8.4	11.5	2.6	8.9	1.6	4.7	0.4	4.3	0.9	100.0	1 160 500
Male	22.0	5.9	5.1	5.0	7.0	7.1	13.2	3.1	9.1	2.4	9.2	1.4	5.3	4.1	100.0	995 000
60-64																
Female	40.7	9.5	5.9	5.0	7.0	6.2	8.9	2.3	5.3	0.3	4.1	0.5	3.2	1.0	100.0	590 200
Male	33.3	4.7	6.1	4.1	5.9	6.4	11.4	3.5	6.6	1.7	6.1	2.0	4.8	3.3	100.0	329 100
65+																
Female	51.6	7.2	3.9	4.0	5.4	4.1	8.3	1.3	5.9	1.1	5.1	0.3	0.9	0.9	100.0	1 081 400
Male	47.2	5.0	5.4	5.4	4.0	3.4	8.4	1.4	4.6	0.8	5.7	0.7	3.8	4.0	100.0	711 800
All																
Female	26.2	12.3	5.4	5.5	6.1	7.3	8.4	5.5	7.8	4.6	7.3	0.2	2.6	0.8	100.0	19 857 600
Male	25.5	14.3	6.0	5.6	5.9	6.8	7.5	5.0	6.6	4.0	7.6	0.5	3.2	1.4	100.0	17 820 700

Sample number = 39 820

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Std 1 = Sub A - Std 1.

Diploma = Std 7 - 9 + diploma.

Tertiary = Std 10 + teaching.

= Std 10 + nursing.

= Std 10 + technikon.

= Std 10 + some university courses.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.4.1: Individual school attainment by age group and gender: African (Percentage)

Age & Gender	None	Std 1	Std 2	Std 3	Std 4	Std 5	Std 6	Std 7	Std 8	Std 9	Std 10	Diploma	Tertiary	University	Total	Number
--------------	------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	--------	---------	----------	------------	-------	--------

= Std 10 + some university courses.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.4.1: Individual school attainment by age group and gender: African (Percentage)

Age & Gender	None	Std 1	Std 2	Std 3	Std 4	Std 5	Std 6	Std 7	Std 8	Std 9	Std 10	Diploma	Tertiary	University	Total	Number
0-5															100.0	1 979 300
Female	98.9	1.1													100.0	2 029 300
Male	99.2	0.8														
6-13															100.0	3 115 800
Female	18.8	49.4	12.1	9.0	5.4	3.4	1.6	0.3							100.0	3 224 900
Male	21.5	51.3	12.1	7.8	4.3	2.4	0.5	0.1								
14-17														0.0	100.0	1 453 300
Female	2.4	3.9	6.3	10.5	15.4	17.3	20.4	12.8	7.3	3.1	0.5				100.0	1 362 900
Male	2.3	8.6	9.8	12.6	17.2	19.1	13.8	10.8	3.8	1.6	0.4					
18-24															100.0	2 355 400
Female	4.7	1.8	2.5	4.1	4.7	9.1	11.3	13.3	16.2	16.0	14.3	0.1	1.8	0.1	100.0	2 033 200
Male	4.8	3.1	3.9	5.2	6.0	10.0	13.7	12.5	13.8	13.0	12.0	0.0	1.8	0.1		
25-29															100.0	1 240 400
Female	7.6	4.0	4.1	4.0	6.2	11.2	7.7	10.3	12.5	10.9	16.3		4.8	0.3	100.0	1 039 500
Male	7.5	4.5	5.0	7.3	7.8	11.5	8.2	7.8	10.1	8.3	18.0	0.3	3.4	0.3		
30-39															100.0	1 891 900
Female	15.4	5.7	6.9	6.9	8.0	12.6	11.7	6.7	10.0	5.3	7.0	0.1	3.7	0.2	100.0	1 557 100
Male	10.5	7.9	6.0	6.6	8.4	12.3	11.5	7.6	11.2	5.5	9.2	0.3	2.5	0.5		
40-49															100.0	1 286 300
Female	24.5	7.4	6.6	8.0	8.0	10.1	14.9	4.8	7.7	2.6	2.4	0.2	2.3	0.3	100.0	971 900
Male	20.9	7.0	7.4	7.1	8.5	11.3	15.0	2.8	8.5	3.6	4.2	0.8	2.4	0.6		
50-59															100.0	829 800
Female	38.2	8.1	7.3	6.6	8.8	9.4	12.6	2.3	3.7	0.8	0.5	0.2	1.4	0.1	100.0	646 800
Male	31.2	8.7	7.0	6.5	9.2	9.2	12.5	3.0	6.6	2.3	3.3		0.7			
60-64															100.0	467 100
Female	49.0	11.3	7.1	4.9	7.1	5.6	8.6	2.2	2.4		0.2	0.4	1.2		100.0	222 700
Male	43.9	5.6	9.0	6.1	7.0	8.3	11.7	2.5	2.6	1.7	0.8		0.4	0.4		
65+															100.0	807 800
Female	65.0	9.0	4.1	4.3	6.1	4.4	5.6	0.7	0.2	0.2	0.2		0.2		100.0	509 500
Male	62.7	6.4	6.0	6.1	4.5	3.8	6.0	0.9	1.6		0.6	0.3	1.0			
All															100.0	15 427 100
Female	28.9	13.6	6.0	6.0	6.4	7.9	8.5	5.6	6.3	4.5	4.6	0.0	1.4	0.0	100.0	13 597 800
Male	28.7	16.1	6.7	6.3	6.5	7.8	7.6	4.9	5.5	3.8	4.8	0.1	1.1	0.2		

Sample number = 31 472

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Std 1 = Sub A - Std 1.

Diploma = Std 7 - 9 + diploma.

Tertiary = Std 10 + teaching.

= Std 10 + nursing.

= Std 10 + technikon.

= Std 10 + some university courses.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 3.4.2: Individual school attainment by age group and gender: Coloured (Percentage)

Age & Gender	None	Std 1	Std 2	Std 3	Std 4	Std 5	Std 6	Std 7	Std 8	Std 9	Std 10	Diploma	Tertiary	University	Total	Number
0-5																
Female	100.0														100.0	171 100
Male	100.0														100.0	178 200
6-13																
Female	17.8	46.0	13.9	10.1	7.9	3.4	1.0								100.0	300 100
Male	17.8	46.3	17.8	8.8	6.3	2.4		0.6							100.0	326 500
14-17																
Female	0.7	1.5	3.7	4.5	11.2	20.0	24.7	19.0	11.7	3.0					100.0	131 900
Male		2.3	1.6	8.3	21.1	16.7	21.0	17.8	6.8	4.4					100.0	125 900
18-24																
Female	3.3	1.2		2.1	2.5	8.1	11.8	13.5	16.0	14.2	24.6		2.6		100.0	228 300
Male	3.1	0.9	0.9	3.2	2.7	4.5	11.5	16.9	13.5	13.2	27.8		1.7		100.0	214 600
25-29																
Female	6.1	2.7	3.4	4.0	6.1	8.8	10.2	11.4	13.5	8.0	18.4		6.6	0.7	100.0	143 000
Male	1.6	3.4	0.8	1.7	6.7	8.4	14.3	10.9	14.4	7.3	25.7		4.9		100.0	117 000
30-39																
Female	4.3	2.4	4.4	5.6	7.1	10.5	18.4	13.4	18.2	5.7	6.0		3.9		100.0	242 600
Male	3.7	1.9	2.2	7.3	2.2	9.3	19.9	9.4	22.1	6.5	9.7	0.8	4.4	0.5	100.0	212 100
40-49																
Female	4.8	3.2	2.1	7.5	12.2	16.8	19.2	10.4	17.2	3.5	0.5	0.5	1.1	1.1	100.0	183 500
Male	2.7	3.3	3.4	4.8	8.8	9.4	19.6	13.2	16.7	8.4	3.8		3.4	2.4	100.0	143 400
50-59																
Female	16.6	4.5	4.4	11.2	13.4	14.7	15.5	6.8	7.8	1.0	1.0	1.0	2.1		100.0	86 600
Male	4.1	1.4	5.4	10.7	6.8	13.4	29.5	7.9	13.2	4.0	3.6				100.0	72 200
60-64																
Female	12.8	7.7		12.8	22.4	19.9	7.3	9.4	5.1		2.6				100.0	38 300
Male	28.6	7.1			14.3	7.1	14.3	10.7	10.7		7.1				100.0	27 500
65 +																
Female	32.2	6.0	8.8	8.7	10.5	9.0	14.7	1.5	4.3	3.0			1.3		100.0	65 500
Male	30.8	4.5	16.2	11.8	11.6	4.7	15.9	2.0	2.4						100.0	41 500
All																
Female	18.9	10.6	4.8	5.9	7.5	9.4	11.5	8.5	10.0	4.5	6.3	0.1	1.9	0.2	100.0	1 590 700
Male	19.2	11.9	5.7	5.7	6.3	6.5	11.7	8.3	9.5	4.9	8.3	0.1	1.6	0.3	100.0	1 458 800

Sample number = 3 187

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Std 1 = Sub A - Std 1.

Diploma = Std 7 - 9 + diploma.

Tertiary = Std 10 + teaching.

= Std 10 + nursing.

= Std 10 + technikon.

= Std 10 + some university courses.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.4.3: Individual school attainment by age group and gender: Indian (Percentage)

Age & Gender	None	Std 1	Std 2	Std 3	Std 4	Std 5	Std 6	Std 7	Std 8	Std 9	Std 10	Diploma	Tertiary	University	Total	Number
--------------	------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	--------	---------	----------	------------	-------	--------

= Std 10 + nursing.  
 = Std 10 + technikon.  
 = Std 10 + some university courses.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.4.3: Individual school attainment by age group and gender: Indian (Percentage)

Age & Gender	None	Std 1	Std 2	Std 3	Std 4	Std 5	Std 6	Std 7	Std 8	Std 9	Std 10	Diploma	Tertiary	University	Total	Number
0-5															100.0	47 600
Female	98.2	1.8													100.0	39 900
Male	100.0															
6-13															100.0	76 600
Female	11.4	47.1	6.9	13.7	16.3	4.6									100.0	92 500
Male	18.2	40.7	12.3	11.4	9.7	7.6										
14-17															100.0	50 200
Female			1.7		7.0	14.1	21.0	21.1	22.8	12.3					100.0	49 500
Male				1.8	1.8	14.3	23.5	35.5	10.7	10.7	1.8					
18-24															100.0	78 500
Female	2.4					1.2	2.2	1.1	7.9	18.1	59.4		7.8		100.0	63 000
Male	4.3	1.5					4.4		8.4	18.3	50.4	1.4	9.9	1.5	100.0	
25-29															100.0	37 100
Female	7.2				2.4			9.6	18.9	14.5	35.6		9.4	2.4	100.0	33 000
Male				2.8			5.3	5.3	10.8	10.6	43.3		8.2	13.7	100.0	
30-39															100.0	83 100
Female	2.1	2.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	2.1	16.8	11.8	22.4	7.4	23.4	1.1	4.3	3.2	100.0	80 600
Male	3.4		1.1			2.2	4.3	5.5	16.3	12.2	38.5		7.8	8.8	100.0	
40-49															100.0	74 100
Female	8.3		1.2	5.9	9.4	8.4	23.7	5.9	11.9	9.7	7.2		4.8	3.6	100.0	67 300
Male	4.2				1.3	3.9	6.5	7.8	25.0	10.5	27.5	1.3	8.2	3.9	100.0	
50-59															100.0	34 700
Female	23.1	2.5		12.6	13.0	10.3	20.4	2.7	5.0		5.2		5.2		100.0	37 100
Male	2.4	2.4	4.7		4.9	4.7	37.8	7.1	9.6	2.4	7.2		5.1	11.8	100.0	
60-64															100.0	13 300
Female	23.1		13.2	6.6		20.2	19.9		6.6				20.3		100.0	8 900
Male	9.8	9.8				9.8	19.6	9.8		10.0	10.5				100.0	
65+															100.0	16 800
Female	26.8	10.4	6.2	5.9	15.6	10.4	9.6		5.5				9.2		100.0	10 700
Male	25.1	9.8	6.2	6.2		17.0	24.8							8.2	100.0	
All															100.0	512 100
Female	16.9	8.1	2.1	4.3	6.2	5.4	10.6	5.9	10.9	7.6	16.9	0.2	3.8	1.2	100.0	482 300
Male	14.4	8.6	3.1	2.7	2.6	4.7	8.8	6.7	9.9	8.1	20.7	0.4	5.1	4.2	100.0	

Sample number = 1 125

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Std 1 = Sub A - Std 1.

Diploma = Std 7 - 9 + diploma.

Tertiary = Std 10 + teaching.

= Std 10 + nursing.

= Std 10 + technikon.

= Std 10 + some university courses.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.4.4: Individual school attainment by age group and gender: White (Percentage)

Age & Gender	None	Std 1	Std 2	Std 3	Std 4	Std 5	Std 6	Std 7	Std 8	Std 9	Std 10	Diploma	Tertiary	University	Total	Number
0-5																
Female	99.1	0.9													100.0	177 100
Male	99.4	0.6													100.0	168 700
6-13																
Female	22.1	34.6	16.7	11.8	9.1	4.7	0.3	0.6							100.0	326 900
Male	23.6	42.1	14.0	11.2	6.5	1.8	0.5	0.3							100.0	336 500
14-17																
Female	1.6				7.2	19.7	20.8	24.4	19.4	7.0					100.0	162 600
Male	0.9	0.9		1.9	16.0	15.1	18.0	21.8	16.9	6.6	0.6	1.3			100.0	162 900
18-24																
Female	4.9		0.4	0.6	2.5	1.0	1.6	1.4	11.7	11.3	48.0	0.4	14.1	2.1	100.0	261 900
Male	4.4	0.6	0.4			1.2	1.1	1.5	14.2	11.7	42.1	2.4	18.1	2.3	100.0	273 200
25-29																
Female	6.1	0.9			1.5	1.2	3.6	0.6	12.3	2.5	35.4	0.9	25.1	10.1	100.0	175 100
Male	3.6		0.9		0.6	0.6	1.9	0.6	6.6	2.5	29.9	3.5	36.7	12.4	100.0	161 800
30-39																
Female	7.5	0.3	0.2	0.6	2.8	1.3	2.9	3.3	14.2	3.6	29.6	2.1	18.2	13.4	100.0	406 100
Male	2.6	0.4			1.0	0.7	2.5	2.0	11.3	1.8	29.6	3.7	29.4	15.2	100.0	418 900
40-49																
Female	9.5	0.3	0.6	0.6	2.4	0.4	4.4	2.2	21.7	5.0	33.1	1.3	10.7	7.8	100.0	345 700
Male	1.9		0.5		0.7		4.2	2.7	14.9	5.6	27.8	4.9	21.0	15.7	100.0	300 700
50-59																
Female	8.5	0.5	1.7	0.5	0.9	1.2	4.0	2.0	30.8	5.1	22.9	0.9	16.3	4.7	100.0	209 400
Male	5.8	0.4			1.5		6.3	1.5	14.8	2.4	27.1	5.8	19.2	15.2	100.0	239 000
60-64																
Female	2.9			1.4			9.7		24.4	2.1	31.2	1.4	18.7	8.3	100.0	71 500
Male	4.4						8.3	3.3	18.6	1.5	21.8	9.2	18.7	14.3	100.0	70 000
65+																
Female	3.2		1.0	1.1		0.5	17.8	3.9	30.5	4.1	27.9	1.8	3.1	5.1	100.0	191 400
Male	1.0			1.0	0.7	1.0	13.5	3.1	15.8	3.6	25.1	2.4	14.6	18.3	100.0	150 100
All																
Female	15.6	5.1	2.8	2.1	3.1	2.7	5.2	3.4	15.3	4.2	23.5	1.0	10.5	5.6	100.0	2 327 700
Male	13.2	6.5	2.2	1.9	2.6	1.7	4.5	3.0	10.6	3.6	21.5	3.0	16.5	9.2	100.0	2 281 800

Sample number = 4 036

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Std 1 = Sub A - Std 1.

Diploma = Std 7 - 9 + diploma.

Tertiary = Std 10 + teaching.

= Std 10 + nursing.

= Std 10 + technikon.

= Std 10 + some university courses.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

= Std 10 + nursing.  
 = Std 10 + technikon.  
 = Std 10 + some university courses.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.5: Percentage of individuals aged 14+ that have completed at least standard 6 by language and race: All

Language	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
English	67.0	36 700	81.7	492 500	82.2	713 600	88.8	1 406 100	85.4	2 648 900
Afrikaans	66.9	44 200	58.5	1 578 100	.	.	90.3	2 146 800	76.7	3 769 100
Xhosa	42.6	4 068 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	42.6	4 068 900
Zulu	45.3	5 372 600	.	.	.	.	.	.	45.3	5 372 600
Tswana	50.9	2 283 100	.	.	.	.	.	.	50.9	2 283 100
N. Sotho	49.8	2 587 500	66.7	2 900	.	.	.	.	49.8	2 590 500
S. Sotho	41.5	1 910 100	.	.	.	.	.	.	41.5	1 910 100
Venda	53.1	420 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	53.1	420 900
Shangaan	41.8	952 200	.	.	.	.	.	.	41.8	952 200
Swazi	41.2	629 300	.	.	.	.	.	.	41.2	629 300
Ndebele	46.1	343 600	.	.	.	.	.	.	46.1	343 600
Other	38.1	26 200	.	.	57.5	24 200	91.9	47 400	68.9	97 900
All/S.A.	45.6	18 675 500	64.0	2 073 600	81.4	737 800	89.7	3 600 200	54.5	25 087 100

Sample number = 26 299

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Other languages include Portuguese, Tshwa, N'dau, Ganda, Bemba, Shona, Gujarati, Tamil, Urdu, German and Italian.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.5.1: Percentage of individuals aged 14 + that have completed at least standard 6 by language and race: Rural

Language	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
English	8.9	9 800	40.0	8 200	100.0	900	96.7	100 400	85.6	119 400
Afrikaans	62.5	8 600	29.0	128 100	.	.	89.5	209 400	66.4	346 000
Xhosa	35.1	2 436 100	.	.	.	.	.	.	35.1	2 436 100
Zulu	37.0	3 325 500	.	.	.	.	.	.	37.0	3 325 500
Tswana	43.3	1 508 400	.	.	.	.	.	.	43.3	1 508 400
N. Sotho	45.4	1 981 000	.	.	.	.	.	.	45.4	1 981 000
S. Sotho	28.3	717 800	.	.	.	.	.	.	28.3	717 800
Venda	53.7	393 600	.	.	.	.	.	.	53.7	393 600
Shangaan	40.5	844 000	.	.	.	.	.	.	40.5	844 000
Swazi	35.3	475 300	.	.	.	.	.	.	35.3	475 300
Ndebele	40.8	229 400	.	.	.	.	.	.	40.8	229 400
Other	16.5	10 900	.	.	100.0	2 700	.	.	33.0	13 600
All/S.A.	39.1	11 940 500	29.7	136 300	100.0	3 600	91.8	309 800	40.3	12 390 200

Sample number = 13 626

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Other languages include Portuguese, Tshwa, N'dau, Ganda, Bemba, Shona, Gujarati, Tamil, Urdu, German and Italian.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.5.2: Percentage of individuals aged 14+ that have completed at least standard 6 by language and race: Urban

Language	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
English	100.0	7 800	76.0	95 500	84.1	391 300	84.7	368 900	83.6	863 500
Afrikaans	65.7	21 100	52.4	664 100	.	.	86.9	645 800	69.4	1 330 900
Xhosa	51.9	613 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	51.9	613 900
Zulu	55.3	893 500	.	.	.	.	.	.	55.3	893 500
Tswana	61.0	437 800	.	.	.	.	.	.	61.0	437 800
N. Sotho	59.2	255 100	66.7	2 900	.	.	.	.	59.3	258 000
S. Sotho	40.3	708 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	40.3	708 900
Venda	48.2	3 700	.	.	.	.	.	.	48.2	3 700
Shangaan	54.2	56 000	.	.	.	.	.	.	54.2	56 000
Swazi	59.7	120 200	.	.	.	.	.	.	59.7	120 200
Ndebele	55.9	70 200	.	.	.	.	.	.	55.9	70 200
Other	57.1	7 200	.	.	.	.	100.0	2 000	66.6	9 200
All/S.A.	52.8	3 195 400	55.4	762 500	84.1	391 300	86.1	1 016 700	61.7	5 365 900

Sample number = 5 540

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Other languages include Portuguese, Tshwa, N'dau, Ganda, Bemba, Shona, Gujarati, Tamil, Urdu, German and Italian.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.5.3: Percentage of individuals aged 14+ that have completed at least standard 6 by language and race: Metropolitan

Language	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
English	83.4	19 100	84.0	388 800	79.8	321 300	89.6	936 800	86.3	1 666 000
Afrikaans	71.3	14 600	68.5	786 000	.	.	92.1	1 291 500	83.1	2 092 200
Xhosa	54.8	1 018 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	54.8	1 018 900
Zulu	61.6	1 153 600	.	.	.	.	.	.	61.6	1 153 600
Tswana	71.4	336 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	71.4	336 900
N. Sotho	67.9	351 400	.	.	.	.	.	.	67.9	351 400
S. Sotho	62.7	483 400	.	.	.	.	.	.	62.7	483 400
Venda	43.5	23 600	.	.	.	.	.	.	43.5	23 600
Shangaan	49.0	52 200	.	.	.	.	.	.	49.0	52 200
Swazi	57.6	33 800	.	.	.	.	.	.	57.6	33 800
Ndebele	58.1	44 000	.	.	.	.	.	.	58.1	44 000
Other	50.0	8 200	.	.	52.2	21 500	91.5	45 400	75.7	75 100
All/S.A.	61.1	3 539 700	73.6	1 174 800	78.0	342 800	91.1	2 273 700	73.2	7 331 000

Sample number = 7 133

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Other languages include Portuguese, Tshwa, N'dau, Ganda, Bemba, Shona, Gujarati, Tamil, Urdu, German and Italian.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 3.6: Percentage of individuals aged 16+ that have completed at least standard 8 by language and race: All**

Language	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
English	54.1	34 800	58.6	454 000	64.2	667 800	84.8	1 350 600	74.1	2 507 200
Afrikaans	36.4	42 100	30.6	1 480 200	.	.	82.6	2 034 600	60.4	3 557 000
Xhosa	22.6	3 731 500	.	.	.	.	.	.	22.6	3 731 500
Zulu	28.0	4 918 100	.	.	.	.	.	.	28.0	4 918 100
Tswana	30.7	2 138 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	30.7	2 138 900
N. Sotho	33.0	2 373 900	100.0	2 000	.	.	.	.	33.1	2 375 800
S. Sotho	22.4	1 765 400	.	.	.	.	.	.	22.4	1 765 400
Venda	36.7	389 800	.	.	.	.	.	.	36.7	389 800
Shangaan	25.2	878 600	.	.	.	.	.	.	25.2	878 600
Swazi	24.6	572 500	.	.	.	.	.	.	24.6	572 500
Ndebele	29.6	318 500	.	.	.	.	.	.	29.6	318 500
Other	26.4	26 200	.	.	53.9	22 300	81.1	47 400	59.8	96 000
All/S.A.	27.3	17 190 300	37.2	1 936 200	63.9	690 100	83.4	3 432 700	37.5	23 249 300

Sample number = 24 334

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Other languages include Portuguese, Tshwa, N'dau, Ganda, Bemba, Shona, Gujarati, Tamil, Urdu, German and Italian.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 3.6.1: Percentage of individuals aged 16 + that have completed at least standard 8 by language and race: Rural

Language	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
English	0.0	9 000	37.5	6 600	100.0	900	92.4	95 600	81.9	112 000
Afrikaans	12.5	8 600	16.9	121 200	.	.	81.0	199 900	55.7	329 700
Xhosa	18.2	2 183 800	.	.	.	.	.	.	18.2	2 183 800
Zulu	21.4	3 006 400	.	.	.	.	.	.	21.4	3 006 400
Tswana	25.0	1 398 400	.	.	.	.	.	.	25.0	1 398 400
N. Sotho	29.1	1 800 000	.	.	.	.	.	.	29.1	1 800 000
S. Sotho	14.0	657 300	.	.	.	.	.	.	14.0	657 300
Venda	37.1	364 600	.	.	.	.	.	.	37.1	364 600
Shangaan	24.2	775 400	.	.	.	.	.	.	24.2	775 400
Swazi	21.7	425 100	.	.	.	.	.	.	21.7	425 100
Ndebele	26.2	209 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	26.2	209 900
Other	16.5	10 900	.	.	100.0	2 700	.	.	33.0	13 600
All/S.A.	22.9	10 849 400	18.0	127 800	100.0	3 600	84.7	295 500	24.4	11 276 300

Sample number = 12 390

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Other languages include Portuguese, Tshwa, N'dau, Ganda, Bemba, Shona, Gujarati, Tamil, Urdu, German and Italian.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.6.2: Percentage of individuals aged 16+ that have completed at least standard 8 by language and race: Urban

Language	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
English	75.0	7 800	40.0	82 800	63.9	365 900	81.7	354 000	69.3	810 600
Afrikaans	31.4	18 900	26.9	627 200			79.1	605 000	52.2	1 251 100
Xhosa	27.9	578 700							27.9	578 700
Zulu	36.0	832 900							36.0	832 900
Tswana	35.9	418 900							35.9	418 900
N. Sotho	41.4	239 900	100.0	2 000					41.9	241 900
S. Sotho	21.5	654 400							21.5	654 400
Venda	24.1	3 700							24.1	3 700
Shangaan	34.5	54 100							34.5	54 100
Swazi	30.1	113 600							30.1	113 600
Ndebele	37.7	66 700							37.7	66 700
Other	28.6	7 200					100.0	2 000	44.4	9 200
All/S.A.	31.5	2 996 800	28.7	712 000	63.9	365 900	80.1	961 100	42.7	5 035 800

Sample number = 5 195

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Other languages include Portuguese, Tshwa, N'dau, Ganda, Bemba, Shona, Gujarati, Tamil, Urdu, German and Italian.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.6.3: Percentage of individuals aged 16+ that have completed at least standard 8 by language and race: Metropolitan

Language	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
English	71.8	18 000	63.2	364 600	64.5	300 900	85.2	901 000	76.0	1 584 600
Afrikaans	57.0	14 600	35.9	731 800	.	.	84.6	1 229 700	66.4	1 976 100
Xhosa	29.4	968 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	29.4	968 900
Zulu	39.9	1 078 700	.	.	.	.	.	.	39.9	1 078 700
Tswana	49.0	321 500	.	.	.	.	.	.	49.0	321 500
N. Sotho	48.4	334 000	.	.	.	.	.	.	48.4	334 000
S. Sotho	35.9	453 700	.	.	.	.	.	.	35.9	453 700
Venda	33.3	21 500	.	.	.	.	.	.	33.3	21 500
Shangaan	31.3	49 200	.	.	.	.	.	.	31.3	49 200
Swazi	42.4	33 800	.	.	.	.	.	.	42.4	33 800
Ndebele	34.1	42 000	.	.	.	.	.	.	34.1	42 000
Other	37.5	8 200	.	.	47.6	19 700	80.3	45 400	66.7	73 200
All/S.A.	38.1	3 344 100	45.0	1 096 400	63.5	320 600	84.7	2 176 100	55.0	6 937 300

Sample number = 6 749

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Other languages include Portuguese, Tshwa, N'dau, Ganda, Bemba, Shona, Gujarati, Tamil, Urdu, German and Italian.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 3.7: Percentage of individuals aged 18+ that have completed at least standard 10 by language and race: All**

Language	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
English	43.8	32 000	26.8	423 900	40.4	617 600	66.4	1 290 400	52.2	2 363 800
Afrikaans	17.4	42 100	12.0	1 390 000	.	.	57.3	1 940 100	38.1	3 372 200
Xhosa	9.0	3 444 700	.	.	.	.	.	.	9.0	3 444 700
Zulu	10.8	4 515 800	.	.	.	.	.	.	10.8	4 515 800
Tswana	12.4	2 006 500	.	.	.	.	.	.	12.4	2 006 500
N. Sotho	13.4	2 169 500	50.0	2 000	.	.	.	.	13.4	2 171 400
S. Sotho	7.7	1 640 000	.	.	.	.	.	.	7.7	1 640 000
Venda	21.3	367 200	.	.	.	.	.	.	21.3	367 200
Shangaan	12.5	793 600	.	.	.	.	.	.	12.5	793 600
Swazi	10.4	530 400	.	.	.	.	.	.	10.4	530 400
Ndebele	10.5	292 400	.	.	.	.	.	.	10.5	292 400
Other	19.3	25 200	.	.	31.6	20 500	66.0	44 400	45.1	90 000
All/S.A.	11.0	15 859 300	15.5	1 815 800	40.1	638 000	61.0	3 274 800	19.9	21 587 900

Sample number = 22 561

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Other languages include Portuguese, Tshwa, N'dau, Ganda, Bemba, Shona, Gujarati, Tamil, Urdu, German and Italian.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.7.1: Percentage of individuals aged 18+ that have completed at least standard 10 by language and race: Rural

Language	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
English	0.0	7 200	33.3	4 900	100.0	900	75.7	88 300	68.5	101 400
Afrikaans	12.5	8 600	8.5	114 300	.	.	59.6	190 400	39.6	313 300
Xhosa	7.6	2 003 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	7.6	2 003 900
Zulu	7.4	2 720 700	.	.	.	.	.	.	7.4	2 720 700
Tswana	10.3	1 307 200	.	.	.	.	.	.	10.3	1 307 200
N. Sotho	10.8	1 632 500	.	.	.	.	.	.	10.8	1 632 500
S. Sotho	4.3	608 400	.	.	.	.	.	.	4.3	608 400
Venda	21.7	342 000	.	.	.	.	.	.	21.7	342 000
Shangaan	11.9	694 300	.	.	.	.	.	.	11.9	694 300
Swazi	9.1	390 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	9.1	390 900
Ndebele	10.6	194 400	.	.	.	.	.	.	10.6	194 400
Other	16.5	10 900	.	.	66.7	2 700	.	.	28.4	13 600
All/S.A.	9.1	9 920 900	9.5	119 300	75.3	3 600	64.7	278 800	10.7	10 322 500

Sample number = 11 334

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Other languages include Portuguese, Tshwa, N'dau, Ganda, Bemba, Shona, Gujarati, Tamil, Urdu, German and Italian.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 3.7.2: Percentage of individuals aged 18+ that have completed at least standard 10 by language and race: Urban**

Language	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
English	64.2	7 800	17.1	76 000	40.8	338 800	60.2	333 700	47.2	756 400
Afrikaans	0.0	18 900	9.5	593 100	.	.	52.3	576 500	30.1	1 188 500
Xhosa	11.8	527 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	11.8	527 900
Zulu	15.2	783 300	.	.	.	.	.	.	15.2	783 300
Tswana	13.4	388 000	.	.	.	.	.	.	13.4	388 000
N. Sotho	22.5	223 600	50.0	2 000	.	.	.	.	22.7	225 500
S. Sotho	7.1	600 500	.	.	.	.	.	.	7.1	600 500
Venda	0.0	3 700	.	.	.	.	.	.	0.0	3 700
Shangaan	16.1	52 200	.	.	.	.	.	.	16.1	52 200
Swazi	12.8	106 800	.	.	.	.	.	.	12.8	106 800
Ndebele	10.0	60 000	.	.	.	.	.	.	10.0	60 000
Other	18.7	6 100	.	.	.	.	100.0	2 000	37.5	8 200
All/S.A.	13.0	2 778 800	10.5	671 100	40.8	338 800	55.3	912 300	22.8	4 700 900

Sample number = 4 846

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Other languages include Portuguese, Tshwa, N'dau, Ganda, Bemba, Shona, Gujarati, Tamil, Urdu, German and Italian.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 3.7.3: Percentage of individuals aged 18+ that have completed at least standard 10 by language and race: Metropolitan

Language	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
English	53.0	16 900	28.8	342 900	39.7	277 800	67.8	868 300	53.6	1 506 000
Afrikaans	42.7	14 600	14.6	682 600	.	.	59.3	1 173 100	42.9	1 870 300
Xhosa	10.4	912 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	10.4	912 900
Zulu	16.6	1 011 800	.	.	.	.	.	.	16.6	1 011 800
Tswana	20.1	311 300	.	.	.	.	.	.	20.1	311 300
N. Sotho	20.3	313 400	.	.	.	.	.	.	20.3	313 400
S. Sotho	13.1	431 200	.	.	.	.	.	.	13.1	431 200
Venda	19.0	21 500	.	.	.	.	.	.	19.0	21 500
Shangaan	17.4	47 100	.	.	.	.	.	.	17.4	47 100
Swazi	18.8	32 800	.	.	.	.	.	.	18.8	32 800
Ndebele	10.8	37 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	10.8	37 900
Other	25.0	8 200	.	.	26.3	17 800	64.3	42 300	49.7	68 300
All/S.A.	15.3	3 159 700	19.4	1 025 500	38.9	295 600	63.0	2 083 800	32.1	6 564 500

Sample number = 6 381

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 1.6.

NOTE 2: Other languages include Portuguese, Tshwa, N'dau, Ganda, Bemba, Shona, Gujarati, Tamil, Urdu, German and Italian.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

## **CHAPTER FOUR**

# **HOUSING CHARACTERISTICS AND LIVING CONDITIONS**



## Section 2: Household Services

### 2.1 Housing

#### 1. Type of dwelling?

- Shack ..... -01  
 House/Part of a house ..... -02  
 Traditional dwelling (hut) ..... -03  
 Maisonette ..... -04  
 Flat ..... -05  
 Hostel ..... -06  
 Outbuilding ..... -07  
 Combination of buildings ..... -08  
 Other (Specify) ..... -09  
 .....

#### 2. What are the main materials used for the roof, wall and floor? Circle the appropriate codes. (Not more than 3)

	2a. Roof	2b. Walls	2c. Floor Covering/Floor
Bricks	-01	-01	-01
Cement block	-02	-02	-02
Pre-fab	-03	-03	-03
Corrugated iron	-04	-04	-04
Wood	-05	-05	-05
Plastic	-06	-06	-06
Cardboard	-07	-07	-07
Mixture of mud and cement	-08	-08	-08
Wattle and daub	-09	-09	-09
Tile	-10	-10	-10
Carpet			-11
Linoleum			-12
Mud	-13	-13	-13
Thatching	-14	-14	-14
Asbestos	-15	-15	-15
Other (Specify)	-16	-16	-16

### 2.2 Water

In this section we are going to talk about the water used by this household for drinking, cooking, bathing, or washing clothes, and other household purposes like these.

#### 3. How many rooms does the dwelling have? (Exclude bathrooms, toilets & passages but include kitchens, lounges & dining rooms)

#### 4. How many rooms does the household occupy in this dwelling?

#### 5. Does the household own this dwelling?

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→ Go to Question 9

#### 6. If owned: Does the household have a bond or loan on this dwelling?

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→ Go to Question 8

#### 7. If YES: How much is still owed on the bond or loan?

R .....

#### 8. If you sold this dwelling today, about how much do you think you could get for it? (i.e. how much would it cost to rebuild it today?)

R .....

→ Go to Section 2.2

#### 9a. Does the household have to pay rent to live here?

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→ Go to Question 9c

#### 9b. If YES: How much rent is the household supposed to pay in a month?

R .....

#### 9c. If NO: Suppose you did have to pay rent to live here, how much do you think you would have to pay in a month?

R .....

#### 5. About how far away is the water that has to be fetched?

Less than 100m ..... -1

100m - less than 500m ..... -2

500m - less than 1km ..... -3

Mud	-13	-13	-13
Thatching	-14	-14	-14
Asbestos	-15	-15	-15
Other (Specify)	-16	-16	-16

## 2.2 Water

In this section we are going to talk about the water used by this household for drinking, cooking, bathing, or washing clothes, and other household purposes like these.

1. Does the water used for drinking come from the same source as the water used for other purposes like bathing or washing clothes?

Mostly yes ..... -1  
 Sometimes ..... -2  
 Mostly no ..... -3

2. What is the source of water used most often in this household for things like drinking or bathing and washing clothes? (SINGLE MENTION ONLY)

Piped - internal ..... -01 → Go to Section 2.3  
 Piped - yard tap ..... -02 → Go to Section 2.3  
 Water carrier/tanker ..... -03 → Go to Section 2.3  
 Piped - public tap/kiosk (free) ..... -04  
 Piped - public tap/kiosk (paid for) ..... -05  
 Borehole ..... -06  
 Rainwater tank ..... -07  
 Flowing river/stream ..... -08  
 Dam/stagnant water ..... -09  
 Well (non-borehole) ..... -10  
 Protected spring ..... -11  
 Other (specify) ..... -12  
 .....

3. Is the household able to get all the water it needs for normal household purposes?

Mostly yes ..... -1  
 Sometimes ..... -2  
 Mostly no ..... -3

4. Does the household have to fetch and carry water to the house each day?

Yes ..... -1  
 No ..... -2 → Go to Section 2.3

you think you would have to pay in a month?

R .....

5. About how far away is the water that has to be fetched?

Less than 100m ..... -1  
 100m - less than 500m ..... -2  
 500m - less than 1km ..... -3  
 1km - less than 5km ..... -4  
 5km or more ..... -5

6. Who in the household usually fetches water?

**Interviewer:** Prompt for up to 3 people by asking: Anybody else?  
 First, record person codes and names in the grid below.  
 Then Ask questions 6c to 6e

	6a. Person fetching water  Name	6b.  Person Code	6c. Average number of trips per day  Number	6d. How long does each round trip take on average ? (include time spent waiting in queue) Minutes	6e. How much is carried to the house each day?  Litres
First Mention					
Second Mention					
Third Mention					

**Note for interviewer:**

1 plastic drum = 25 litres  
 1 paraffin "gogogo" = 20 litres

## 2.3 Sanitation

1. What kind of toilet does the household use?

- Flush toilet..... -1  
 Improved pit latrine - with ventilation (VIP) ..... -2  
 Other pit latrine ..... -3  
 Bucket toilet ..... -4  
 Chemical toilet ..... -5  
 None ..... -6 → Go to Section 2.4

2. Where is the toilet?

- Inside dwelling ..... -1  
 Outside dwelling - on stand ..... -2  
 Outside dwelling - off stand ..... -3

## 2.4 Energy

In this section, we are going to talk about the different kinds of energy that this household uses for different purposes.

1. Is the house connected to an electricity supply?

- Yes.....-1  
 No.....-2

3. If wood is mentioned as a source of energy for any of the above activities: ASK:

2. I'm going to read a list of different household activities. For each one, I'd like you to tell me what the main source of energy is.

**Interviewer :** Ask for each activity in turn and then circle the correct answer (Record answers on the grid below)

	2a. Cooking		2b. Lighting		2c. Heating- Water		2d. Heating- Home	
	Main Source	Second Source	Main Source	Second Source	Main Source	Second Source	Main Source	Second Source
Wood	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1
Paraffin	-2	-2	-2	-2	-2	-2	-2	-2
Charcoal/ Coal	-3	-3	-3	-3	-3	-3	-3	-3
Electricity from grid	-4	-4	-4	-4	-4	-4	-4	-4
Electricity from generator	-5	-5	-5	-5	-5	-5	-5	-5
Candles	-6	-6	-6	-6	-6	-6	-6	-6
Gas from bottle (LPG)	-7	-7	-7	-7	-7	-7	-7	-7
Town gas (Piped)	-8	-8	-8	-8	-8	-8	-8	-8
Car battery	-9	-9	-9	-9	-9	-9	-9	-9
Dry battery (eg Torch)	-10	-10	-10	-10	-10	-10	-10	-10
Dung	-11	-11	-11	-11	-11	-11	-11	-11
Other (Describe)	-12	-12	-12	-12	-12	-12	-12	-12
.....								

## 2.5 EXPENDITURE - ENERGY, WATER, RATES

ASK ALL: About how much did the household spend last month on \_\_\_\_ ?

(Describe)	-12	-12	-12	-12	-12	-12	-12	-12
.....								

3. If wood is mentioned as a source of energy for any of the above activities: ASK:

Who in the household usually collects the wood?

**Interviewer:** Prompt for up to 3 people by asking: Anybody else?  
First, record person codes and names in the grid below.  
Then Ask Questions 3c and 3d

If wood is not mentioned or not collected, go to Section 2.5.

	3a. Person collecting wood  Name	3b.  Person Code	3c. Average number of trips per week  Number	3d. How long does each round trip take on average ? (Include time spent collecting wood) Minutes
First Mention				
Second Mention				
Third Mention				

## 2.5 EXPENDITURE - ENERGY, WATER, RATES

**ASK ALL:** About how much did the household spend last month on \_\_\_\_ ?

Repeat this question for each type of energy mentioned in the following list.

1a. Item Name	1b. Item Code	1c. Amount spent Rand
Wood	-01	
Paraffin	-02	
Charcoal/Coal	-03	
Electricity	-04	
Candles	-05	
Gas	-06	
Purchasing/ Charging batteries	-07	
Diesel oil for generators	-08	
Other Energy (Describe)	-09	
.....		
Water	-10	
Municipal rates	-11	
Water, electricity and Municipal rates if paid together	-12	

**Note:** If nothing is spent on an energy item, write "0" (zero).

Table 4.1: Type of dwelling by province (Percentage)

Type of Dwelling	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Natal	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Shack	12.2		6.4	6.0	22.7	8.9	3.8	8.5	18.9	11.0
House/part of house	69.3	93.5	33.9	47.8	55.5	62.1	48.3	65.3	58.9	54.7
Traditional dwelling (hut)	0.1		24.5	22.6	9.0	9.5	15.0	0.9		10.3
Maisonette	4.4		0.3	0.6	0.8		0.1		3.5	1.4
Flat	7.4		11.5	4.9	0.2		2.6		5.8	4.7
Hostel	3.7	6.5	0.4	2.9	8.3	7.8		18.3	4.9	5.1
Outbuilding	1.2		0.6	0.9	1.0	0.7	0.4	2.3	7.2	2.3
Combination of buildings	1.1		22.2	13.9	2.4	11.0	29.8	4.7	0.6	10.3
Other	0.4		0.0	0.3	0.1				0.2	0.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	887 500	120 000	1 177 900	1 377 900	670 100	724 800	903 700	811 100	1 839 000	8 512 000

Sample number = 8 828

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.1.1.

NOTE 2: 'Other' = Caravans and Wendy houses.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 4.2: Type of dwelling by race: All (Percentage)**

Type of Dwelling	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Shack	14.9	3.7	0.8	0.2	11.0
House/part of house	44.1	82.6	71.5	81.8	54.7
Traditional dwelling (hut)	14.3	0.1	.	.	10.3
Maisonette	0.1	4.3	2.7	5.2	1.4
Flat	2.3	3.0	18.8	12.7	4.7
Hostel	7.0	1.3	0.4	0.1	5.1
Outbuilding	2.9	2.3	3.1	.	2.3
Combination of buildings	14.2	2.0	0.8	.	10.3
Other	0.1	0.6	1.9	.	0.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	6 079 900	657 800	228 200	1 546 000	8 512 000

Sample number = 8 828

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.1.1.

NOTE 2: 'Other' = Caravans and Wendy houses.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 4.2.1: Type of dwelling by location and race: Rural (Percentage)

Type of Dwelling	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Shack	5.1	.	.	.	4.9
House/part of house	39.6	93.7	48.8	98.4	42.0
Traditional dwelling (hut)	22.4	2.3	.	.	21.5
Maisonette	0.0	.	.	.	0.0
Flat	3.3	2.1	.	.	3.2
Hostel	7.2	2.0	51.2	1.6	7.0
Outbuilding	0.8	.	.	.	0.8
Combination of buildings	21.5	.	.	.	20.6
Other	0.0	.	.	.	0.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	3 828 300	43 300	1 800	126 400	3 999 900

Sample number = 4 363

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.1.1.

NOTE 2: 'Other' = Caravans and Wendy houses.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 4.2.2: Type of dwelling by location and race: Urban (Percentage)**

Type of Dwelling	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Shack	30.7	6.7	0.7	0.4	18.5
House/part of house	55.5	87.8	56.7	90.8	68.0
Traditional dwelling (hut)	1.3	.	.	.	0.8
Maisonette	0.0	.	4.7	1.6	0.7
Flat	1.1	.	30.0	7.2	4.3
Hostel	6.4	3.0	.	.	4.1
Outbuilding	2.1	0.7	4.0	.	1.6
Combination of buildings	2.5	1.4	0.7	.	1.7
Other	0.2	0.4	3.3	.	0.4
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	1 078 200	261 700	131 400	430 700	1 901 900

Sample number = 1 947

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.2.1.

NOTE 2: 'Other' = Caravans and Wendy houses.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 4.2.3: Type of dwelling by location and race: Metropolitan (Percentage)

Type of dwelling	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Shack	32.3	1.9	1.0	0.2	14.9
House/part of house	48.6	77.4	92.5	75.7	64.3
Maisonette	0.4	8.1		7.4	4.1
Flat	0.4	5.3	3.7	16.7	7.4
Hostel	6.9				3.1
Outbuilding	10.2	3.8	1.8		5.2
Combination of buildings	0.9	2.8	1.0		0.8
Other	0.3	0.8			0.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	1 173 400	352 800	95 000	988 900	2 610 200

Sample number = 2 518

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.1.1.

NOTE 2: 'Other' = Caravans and Wendy houses.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 4.3: Type of dwelling by race: Female headed households (Percentage)**

Dwelling	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Shack	14.0	5.2	.	0.4	11.7
House/part of house	45.6	80.7	63.9	52.6	49.0
Traditional dwelling (hut)	16.0	.	.	.	13.0
Maisonette	0.1	4.6	.	13.8	1.9
Flat	3.2	2.4	33.3	33.1	6.8
Hostel	0.4	.	.	.	0.3
Outbuilding	4.2	3.3	2.8	.	3.7
Combination of buildings	16.4	2.5	.	.	13.4
Other	0.1	1.3	.	.	0.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	1 759 600	150 400	31 600	232 900	2 174 500

Sample number = 2 295

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.1.1.

NOTE 2: 'Other' = Caravans and Wendy houses.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 4.4: House ownership by province and race (Percentage)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	58.5	152 100	57.2	401 200	50.0	1 800	76.0	332 400	64.5	887 500
N. Cape	72.0	26 800	48.4	93 200					53.7	120 000
E. Cape	82.1	1 014 000	58.6	51 900			86.1	110 300	81.4	1 176 200
Kwazulu	84.0	1 044 500	69.8	43 700	51.2	188 100	75.9	101 600	78.5	1 377 900
O.F.S.	56.4	559 200	21.1	18 900			74.6	93 200	58.0	669 300
E. Tvl	55.6	653 800	0.0	800	33.9	2 800	39.4	67 400	54.0	724 800
N. Tvl	80.8	831 500					43.3	68 400	77.9	899 900
N.W.	50.2	735 100	0.0	1 700	0.0	900	25.0	73 400	47.7	811 100
P.W.V.	36.1	1 056 800	72.4	49 200	94.6	34 600	75.0	699 400	53.0	1 840 000
All/S.A.	64.5	6 073 700	56.9	658 700	57.3	228 200	70.7	1 546 000	64.9	8 506 700

Sample number = 8 820

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.1.5.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 4.4.1: House ownership by location and race (Percentage)**

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
Rural	73.7	3 822 200	12.9	43 300	0.0	1 800	53.8	126 400	72.4	3 993 800
Urban	51.9	1 077 100	49.7	262 600	48.0	131 400	63.7	429 700	54.0	1 900 700
Metropolitan	46.3	1 174 300	67.7	352 800	71.3	95 000	76.0	990 000	61.3	2 612 100
All/S.A.	64.5	6 073 700	56.9	658 700	57.3	228 200	70.7	1 546 000	64.9	8 506 700

Sample number = 8 820

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.1.5.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 4.5: Number of rooms per capita by province and race

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Rooms	Number	Rooms	Number	Rooms	Number	Rooms	Number	Rooms	Number
W. Cape	0.9	152 100	1.0	401 200	1.3	1 800	2.5	332 400	1.4	887 500
N. Cape	2.1	26 800	0.9	93 200	.	.	.	.	1.1	120 000
E. Cape	0.7	1 014 000	0.7	51 900	.	.	2.2	110 300	0.8	1 176 200
Kwazulu	0.8	1 046 300	1.3	43 700	1.2	188 100	2.9	101 600	1.1	1 379 700
O.F.S.	0.9	560 100	0.8	16 900	.	.	2.9	93 200	1.1	670 100
E. Tvl	1.0	654 700	2.0	800	1.8	2 800	2.1	67 400	1.1	725 700
N. Tvl	0.9	833 300	.	.	.	.	2.6	70 400	1.1	903 700
N.W.	1.0	734 000	1.0	1 700	1.0	900	2.4	73 400	1.2	810 100
P.W.V.	0.9	1 057 800	1.6	49 200	1.5	34 600	2.4	699 400	1.5	1 841 100
All/S.A.	0.9	6 079 000	1.0	658 700	1.2	228 200	2.5	1 548 100	1.2	8 514 000

Sample number = 8 830

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.1.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 4.5.1: Number of rooms per capita by location and race**

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Rooms	Number	Rooms	Number	Rooms	Number	Rooms	Number	Rooms	Number
Rural	0.9	3 824 700	1.0	43 300	1.3	1 800	2.7	126 400	0.9	3 996 300
Urban	0.9	1 080 000	0.9	262 600	1.2	131 400	2.5	430 700	1.2	1 904 600
Metropolitan	0.9	1 174 300	1.1	352 800	1.3	95 000	2.5	991 000	1.5	2 613 200
All/S.A.	0.9	6 079 000	1.0	658 700	1.2	228 200	2.5	1 548 100	1.2	8 514 000

Sample number = 8 830

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.1.3.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 4.6: Access to all sources of water by province: All (Percentage)

Sources of water	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Piped water - internal	81.4	72.9	18.8	37.6	29.9	28.2	9.2	22.4	61.5	39.4
Piped water - yard tap	11.9	15.6	12.2	8.1	20.0	28.2	12.0	30.5	33.0	19.7
Piped water - public kiosk	6.3	6.5	20.0	16.7	44.4	21.6	30.6	14.1	5.2	17.3
Other	0.5	5.0	49.1	37.6	5.7	22.0	48.3	33.0	0.4	23.6
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	886 000	120 000	1 177 000	1 382 400	671 800	724 800	904 600	811 100	1 846 200	8 523 800

Sample number = 8 841

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 4.6.1: Access to all sources of water by province and race: African (Percentage)**

Sources of water	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Piped water - internal	37.3	92.0	7.5	18.2	19.0	20.6	1.5	14.6	33.5	17.5
Piped water - yard tap	31.7	4.0	12.6	10.5	21.1	31.2	13.0	33.6	56.9	25.8
Piped water - public kiosk	29.6		23.1	22.1	53.1	23.9	33.1	15.6	9.0	23.8
Other	1.4	4.0	56.8	49.3	6.8	24.3	52.3	36.2	0.6	32.9
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	152 100	26 800	1 014 800	1 049 000	561 800	653 800	834 200	735 100	1 060 900	6 088 300

Sample number = 6 528

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 4.6.2: Access to all sources of water by province and race: Coloured (Percentage)

Sources of water	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Piped water - internal	82.6	67.4	69.9	94.3	5.3		50.0	93.1	78.9
Piped water - yard tap	14.2	18.9	26.5		94.7	100.0		6.9	16.5
Piped water - public kiosk	2.7	8.4	1.7						3.0
Other	0.5	5.3	1.9	5.7			50.0		1.7
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	401 200	93 200	51 900	43 700	16 900	800	1 700	49 200	658 700

Sample number = 690

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.2.2.

NOTE 2: Survey captured NO Coloureds in the N. Tvl.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 4.6.3: Access to all sources of water by province and race: Indian (Percentage)**

Sources of water	W. Cape	Kwazulu	E. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Piped water - internal	100.0	99.1	100.0	100.0	100.0	99.2
Piped water - yard tap		0.9				0.8
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	1 800	188 100	2 800	900	34 600	228 200

Sample number = 258

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.2.2.

NOTE 2: Survey captured NO Indians in the N. Cape, E. Cape, O.F.S. and N. Tvl.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 4.6.4: Access to all sources of water by province and race: White (Percentage)

Sources of water	W. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Piped water - internal	100.0	98.6	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	98.6	99.7	99.7
Piped water - yard tap	.	1.4	.	.	.	.	.	0.1	0.2
Other	.	.	.	.	.	.	1.4	0.1	0.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	330 900	110 300	101 600	93 200	67 400	70 400	73 400	701 400	1 548 600

Sample number = 1 365

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.2.2.

NOTE 2: Survey captured NO Whites in the N. Cape.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 4.6.5: Access to all sources of water by race and location: African and Coloured (Percentage)**

Sources of water	African				Coloured			
	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	All	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	All
Piped - internal	7.7	27.5	40.0	17.5	60.8	60.7	94.6	78.9
Piped - yard tap	13.9	42.8	48.9	25.8	9.1	33.7	4.6	16.5
Water carrier/tanker	3.6	0.2		2.3	6.5		0.3	0.6
Piped - free public tap	23.6	26.1	10.4	21.5	6.6	3.7		1.9
Piped - paid public tap	3.2	1.7	0.5	2.4		1.9	0.6	1.0
Borehole	20.1	0.6	0.2	12.8	9.1			0.6
Rainwater tank	1.0	0.2		0.7	1.9			0.1
Flowing river/stream	14.3			9.0	3.8			0.3
Dam/stagnant water	2.1	0.5		1.4	2.3			0.1
Well (non-borehole)	5.1			3.2				
Protected spring	4.0			2.5				
Other	1.4	0.4	0.0	1.0				
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	3 831 800	1 080 100	1 176 300	6 088 300	43 300	262 600	352 800	658 700

Sample number = 6 528

Sample number = 690

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 4.7: Distance to water source for water that has to be fetched by location and province: African (Percentage)

Location & Distance	W. Cape		E. Cape		Kwazulu/Natal		O.F.S.		E. Tvl		N. Tvl		N.W.		P.W.V.		All/S.A.	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
Rural																		
<100m			31.6	236 100	29.0	194 000	61.3	102 000	46.7	85 900	50.2	341 800	54.7	182 300	100.0	1 000	41.1	1 143 100
100m-500m			33.3	249 100	34.4	229 900	32.8	54 600	41.0	75 400	38.9	265 100	40.5	135 200			36.3	1 009 400
500m-1km			20.7	154 300	23.1	154 300	6.1	8 400	9.7	17 600	9.0	61 400	4.8	15 100			14.8	412 400
1km-5km			13.7	102 600	11.9	79 400	0.8	1 300	2.3	4 600	1.7	11 800					7.2	199 500
>5km			0.7	5 300	1.7	11 600					0.1	300					0.6	17 700
Urban																		
<100m	75.0	3 200	42.3	1 200	100.0	6 700	81.2	131 300	77.9	47 000					66.7	45 100	75.2	236 000
100m-500m	29.0	1 100	42.3	1 200			14.7	23 700	20.4	12 200			100.0	5 100	27.3	18 400	20.4	63 800
500m-1km							3.7	5 900	1.7	1 000	100.0	300			8.1	4 100	30.8	11 900
>1km			14.3	1 100			0.5	800									0.6	1 300
Metropolitan																		
<100m	72.5	31 100	38.3	9 600	40.7	11 800									96.4	27 600	64.1	79 900
100m-500m	28.0	10 700	43.5	10 700	27.0	10 700									3.6	1 000	26.6	33 100
500m-1km			8.7	2 100	18.0	6 300											6.0	7 600
>1km	2.5	1 100	8.7	2 100	3.3	300											3.3	4 100
All																		
<100m	72.7	34 300	31.9	248 900	30.1	211 800	71.1	233 300	54.4	132 900	50.1	341 800	53.8	182 300	75.8	73 700	45.3	1 459 000
100m-500m	28.0	11 800	33.7	263 100	34.2	240 600	23.9	78 400	35.9	87 700	38.9	265 100	41.4	140 300	20.0	19 500	34.4	1 106 300
500m-1km			20.1	156 500	22.7	159 600	4.4	14 400	7.7	18 600	9.1	62 300	4.2	18 100	4.2	4 100	13.4	431 800
1km-5km	3.3	1 100	13.6	105 800	11.4	80 300	0.7	2 200	1.3	4 600	1.7	11 800					6.4	205 500
>5km			0.7	5 300	1.6	11 600					0.1	300					0.6	17 700
All	100.0	47 100	100.0	779 500	100.0	703 900	100.0	328 200	100.0	244 000	100.0	681 600	100.0	338 700	100.0	97 300	100.0	3 220 300

Sample number = 3 555

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.2.5.

NOTE 2: Survey captured NO data in the N. Cape.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 4.8: Percentage of households with flush toilets by province and race**

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	67.6	152 100	89.0	401 200	100.0	1 800	100.0	332 400	89.5	887 500
N. Cape	92.0	26 800	81.1	93 200	.	.	.	.	83.5	120 000
E. Cape	14.5	1 016 600	73.7	51 900	.	.	98.6	110 300	25.0	1 178 800
Kwazulu	23.9	1 045 400	98.1	43 700	99.5	188 100	100.0	101 600	42.2	1 378 800
O.F.S.	32.6	560 900	100.0	16 900	.	.	100.0	93 200	43.7	671 000
E. Tvl	27.8	654 700	100.0	800	100.0	2 800	100.0	67 400	34.8	725 700
N. Tvl	7.5	834 200	.	.	.	.	100.0	70 400	14.7	904 600
N.W.	37.1	735 100	50.0	1 700	100.0	900	98.8	73 400	42.8	811 100
P.W.V.	80.9	1 059 800	96.6	49 200	100.0	34 600	100.0	701 400	88.9	1 845 100
All/S.A	34.2	6 085 500	88.0	658 700	99.6	228 200	99.8	1 550 100	52.1	8 522 600

Sample number = 8 839

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.3.1

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 4.8.1: Distribution of households by type of toilet by province and location, African: All (Percentage)

Type of toilet	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Flush toilet	67.6	92.0	14.5	23.9	32.6	27.8	7.5	37.1	80.9	34.2
Improved pit latrine	.	.	1.6	1.1	0.9	4.2	0.6	1.8	1.6	1.6
Other pit latrine	.	.	39.2	58.9	34.6	45.5	62.3	52.3	9.0	41.2
Bucket toilet	26.1	.	6.9	0.3	17.8	13.7	1.8	3.7	4.9	6.5
Chemical toilet	.	.	0.0	.	.	0.1	0.4	.	2.2	0.5
None	6.3	8.0	37.7	15.8	14.0	8.7	27.3	5.1	1.4	16.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	152 100	26 800	1 016 600	1 045 400	560 900	654 700	834 200	735 100	1 059 800	6 085 500

Sample number = 6 525

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.3.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 4.8.2: Distribution of households by type of toilet by province and location, African: Rural (Percentage)**

Type of toilet	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Flush toilet	100.0		0.5	4.4	23.0	25.6	1.5	36.6	25.0	13.1
Improved pit latrine			1.8	1.2	1.4	5.2	0.7	1.2		1.8
Other pit latrine			49.8	72.9	51.9	54.9	66.6	55.9	75.0	59.7
Bucket toilet			0.7	0.3	0.4	3.9	1.9	1.0		1.4
Chemical toilet			0.1			0.2	0.5			0.1
None		100.0	47.0	21.1	23.3	10.2	28.8	5.4		23.9
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	12 900	2 100	798 600	785 600	250 100	517 000	779 900	680 800	4 100	3 831 000

Sample number = 4 208

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.3.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 4.8.3: Distribution of households by type of toilet by province and location, African: Urban (Percentage)

Type of toilet	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Flush toilet	63.6	100.0	57.1	90.8	40.3	36.0	93.5	43.4	51.8	55.9
Improved pit latrine	.	.	1.5	1.1	0.5	0.6	.	9.4	5.1	2.0
Other pit latrine	.	.	0.9	8.1	20.7	10.0	1.6	7.5	22.8	13.3
Bucket toilet	9.1	.	34.3	.	31.9	50.4	.	37.7	16.8	24.5
Chemical toilet	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	3.0	0.6
None	27.3	.	6.3	.	6.5	3.0	4.9	1.9	0.5	3.7
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	11 800	24 600	119 500	164 500	310 800	137 700	54 300	54 300	201 700	1 079 200

Sample number = 1 165

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.3.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 4.8.4: Distribution of households by type of toilet by province and location,  
African: Metropolitan (Percentage)**

Type of toilet	W. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Flush toilet	64.7	76.1	69.2	88.0	83.0
Improved pit latrine	.	.	.	0.8	0.6
Other pit latrine	.	.	30.8	5.4	6.4
Bucket toilet	30.3	23.9	.	2.2	6.9
Chemical toilet	.	.	.	2.0	1.5
None	5.0	.	.	1.6	1.7
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	127 400	98 500	95 300	854 000	1 175 300

Sample number = 1 152

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.3.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 4.9: Access to electricity (from grid) by province and race (Percentage)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	42.6	151 000	88.3	401 200	100.0	1 800	100.0	332 400	84.9	886 500
N. Cape	92.0	26 800	75.8	93 200					79.4	120 000
E. Cape	9.1	1 013 800	73.7	51 900			98.6	110 300	20.4	1 176 000
Kwazulu	30.9	1 043 700	98.1	43 700	100.0	188 100	100.0	101 600	47.6	1 377 000
O.F.S.	29.5	560 900	84.2	16 900			100.0	93 200	40.6	671 000
E. Tvl	47.6	651 600	0.0	800	100.0	2 800	98.5	67 400	52.5	722 600
N. Tvl	21.5	833 300					100.0	70 400	27.7	903 700
N.W.	42.2	735 100	50.0	1 700	100.0	900	98.8	73 400	47.4	811 100
P.W.V.	70.6	1 057 800	94.8	49 200	100.0	34 600	100.0	701 400	83.0	1 843 100
All/S.A.	36.5	6 073 900	86.2	658 700	100.0	228 200	99.8	1 550 100	53.6	8 511 000

Sample number = 8 827

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.4.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 4.9.1: Availability of electricity (from grid) by location and race (Percentage)**

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
Rural	25.6	3 828 200	71.4	43 300	100.0	1 800	98.5	127 400	28.4	4 000 800
Urban	42.3	1 073 500	75.9	262 600	100.0	131 400	99.6	430 700	64.0	1 898 100
Metropolitan	66.7	1 172 200	95.7	352 800	100.0	95 000	100.0	992 000	84.5	2 612 000
All/S.A.	36.5	6 073 900	86.2	658 700	100.0	228 200	99.8	1 550 100	53.6	8 511 000

Sample number = 8 827

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.4.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 4.9.2: Main source of energy for COOKING by race (Percentage)

Energy source	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Wood	35.0	4.0		0.3	25.3
Paraffin	28.9	7.6	0.4	0.1	21.3
Charcoal	6.5	0.8		0.2	4.7
Electricity from grid	25.6	79.3	98.1	96.9	44.6
Electricity from generator	0.4	0.3	0.8	1.1	0.5
Gas from bottle	2.7	8.1	0.4	1.2	2.7
Town gas	0.0			0.3	0.0
Dung	0.8				0.6
Other	0.1		0.4		0.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	6 073 300	657 700	228 200	1 547 100	8 506 400

Sample number = 8 824

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.4.2a.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 4.9.3: Main source of energy for LIGHTING by race (Percentage)**

Energy source	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Wood	0.6	.	.	0.0	0.5
Paraffin	24.5	6.5	.	0.1	18.0
Charcoal	0.0	.	.	.	0.0
Electricity from grid	33.3	83.2	99.2	98.7	50.9
Electricity from generator	1.0	0.4	0.8	1.1	1.0
Candles	40.2	9.0	.	0.0	29.4
Gas from bottle	0.2	0.7	.	.	0.2
Car battery	0.0	0.1	.	.	0.0
Dung	0.0	.	.	.	0.0
Other	0.0	.	.	.	0.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	6 071 200	656 800	228 200	1 550 100	8 506 400

Sample number = 8 821

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.4.2b.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 4.9.4 Main source of energy for HEATING WATER by race (Percentage)

Energy source	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Wood	32.5	4.3		0.2	23.6
Paraffin	32.1	8.5		0.0	23.6
Charcoal	5.2	0.1		0.3	3.7
Electricity from grid	26.8	79.7	99.2	97.6	45.7
Electricity from generator	0.4	0.3	0.8	1.2	0.5
Gas from bottle	2.2	7.2		0.4	2.2
Town gas	0.0			0.0	0.0
Dung	0.8				0.6
Other	0.0			0.2	0.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	6 057 400	657 700	225 600	1 543 000	8 483 700

Sample number = 8 801

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.4.2c.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 4.9.5: Main source of energy for HEATING HOME by race (Percentage)**

Energy source	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Wood	37.7	5.6		0.5	26.9
Paraffin	22.7	7.1		0.5	16.5
Charcoal	9.2	2.4	0.9	0.7	6.8
Electricity from grid	27.7	82.2	97.9	96.0	47.3
Electricity from generator	0.4	0.3	0.8	1.0	0.5
Gas from bottle	0.8	2.2	0.4	1.0	0.9
Town gas	0.0			0.0	0.0
Dung	1.1				0.8
Other	0.4	0.2		0.2	0.4
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	5 243 700	578 300	213 200	1 472 100	7 507 400

Sample number = 7 763

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.4.2d.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



**Table 4.10: Time taken to collect wood in minutes by province, African: Rural (Percentage)**

Time	E. Cape	Kwazulu	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	All/S.A.
<30 minutes	11.7	17.6	16.6	11.0	22.6	14.0
30-120 minutes	43.6	39.9	39.5	25.1	54.8	37.2
120-240 minutes	26.3	26.8	32.6	45.8	18.6	32.8
240+ minutes	18.4	15.8	11.3	18.1	4.0	16.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	572 200	399 700	199 800	623 900	140 800	1 936 400

Sample number 2 151

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.4.3.

NOTE 2: Survey captured NO data for W. Cape, N. Cape, O.F.S. and P.W.V.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 4.11: Average monthly household expenditure on energy, water and rates by province (Rand)

Province	Paraffin	Coal	Candle	Gas	Other	Electricity	Water	Rates	EWR	Total
W. Cape	10.70	0.20	1.50	4.60	3.00	57.80	15.30	24.50	65.00	182.70
N. Cape	16.00	1.80	2.90	4.80	4.60	13.60	6.20	1.80	82.50	134.10
E. Cape	21.60	0.20	4.00	3.90	22.90	4.80	2.00	0.60	20.70	80.90
Kwazulu	12.20	3.10	7.40	4.30	30.90	23.70	5.70	10.10	34.00	131.40
O.F.S.	16.20	3.30	4.70	2.20	4.10	18.70	2.20	5.80	42.40	99.60
E. Tvl	10.30	8.60	4.30	3.60	16.00	25.00	2.50	2.30	19.40	92.00
N. Tvl	12.40	2.20	5.60	2.50	31.20	14.30	2.50	1.40	6.30	78.40
N.W.	14.90	3.40	5.10	3.40	11.70	20.20	5.90	1.40	12.50	78.40
P.W.V.	6.80	5.30	2.00	2.10	1.50	27.60	5.30	3.70	128.90	183.30
All/S.A.	12.80	3.30	4.30	3.30	15.70	23.00	5.00	5.70	49.20	122.30

Sample number = 8 848

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.5.

NOTE 2: 'Other' = Wood, Batteries, Diesel and Other.

NOTE 3: 'EWR' = Electricity, Water and Rates, if paid together.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 4.11.1: Average monthly household expenditure on energy, water and rates by race and location (Rand)

Race & Location	Paraffin	Coal	Candle	Gas	Other	Electricity	Water	Rates	EWR	Total
African										
Rural	15.90	3.10	6.40	3.40	29.90	6.20	2.00	0.30	1.00	68.20
Urban	18.70	6.80	5.40	4.20	5.00	12.70	2.20	3.90	19.10	78.00
Metropolitan	15.70	5.90	2.80	2.20	1.60	19.20	0.60	0.70	9.60	58.30
Coloured										
Rural	1.30	0.40	1.80	3.60	13.00	20.70	0.00	2.70	0.40	43.90
Urban	14.00	1.20	3.10	7.10	4.00	18.30	9.80	12.40	74.90	144.90
Metropolitan	2.10	0.10	1.20	4.50	1.50	72.00	19.30	29.90	66.90	197.50
Indian										
Rural	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	100.00	37.50	2.50	0.00	140.00
Urban	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	1.60	85.80	20.50	32.00	84.70	224.70
Metropolitan	0.00	2.20	0.00	2.20	1.00	75.00	22.80	78.90	190.20	372.20
White										
Rural	1.50	1.60	0.50	12.50	4.00	227.90	3.90	0.40	86.10	338.60
Urban	1.50	0.20	0.60	2.50	3.50	53.80	14.80	12.20	219.20	308.20
Metropolitan	1.20	0.60	0.00	1.30	0.80	46.20	13.20	13.20	258.20	334.80
All										
Rural	15.30	3.00	6.20	3.70	29.10	12.10	2.00	0.30	3.20	74.90
Urban	13.40	4.30	3.80	4.00	4.30	26.70	7.00	8.80	69.00	141.20
Metropolitan	7.90	3.00	1.50	2.20	1.30	38.90	8.70	12.70	113.70	189.90

Sample number = 8 848

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.5.

NOTE 2: 'Other' = Wood, Batteries, Diesel and Other.

NOTE 3: 'EWR' = Electricity, Water and Rates; if paid together.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

NOTE 2: 'Other' = Wood, Batteries, Diesel and Other.

NOTE 3: 'EWR' = Electricity, Water and Rates; if paid together.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

# **CHAPTER FIVE**

## **RURAL LAND: ACCESS AND USE**

### **Section 5.1-5.7**

### **Land: Access and Use**

## Section 7: Land Access and Use

### 7.1 Land for Farming: Plot or Field

- 1a. Does any person in this household have the right to use (have access to) any land for arable farming, that is, to grow and cultivate crops on?  
(Interviewer: Do not include small gardens attached to the dwelling.)

Yes ..... -1

No..... -2

→ Go to Question 2

- 1b. IF YES: Is this land

Communal..... -1

Private (Own Farm)..... 2

Private (Rented) ..... 3

Other (Specify)..... 4

.....

- 2a. Does any person in this household have the right to use (have access to) any land for stock farming, that is, to for animals to graze on?

Yes ..... -1

No..... -2

→ Go to Question 3

- 2b. IF YES: Is this land

Communal..... -1

Private (Own Farm)..... 2

Private (Rented) ..... 3

Other (Specify)..... 4

.....

**IF NO TO BOTH QUESTION 1a AND QUESTION 2a, GO TO SECTION 7.2**

- 6a. What are the sources of water, if any, used on the land used for growing crops?  
(Allow for multiple responses, up to three)

- 6b. And which is the main source? (Single mention)

3. How much of the land does the household use for growing crops and how much does the household use for grazing of animals?

All for crops ..... -1

Most for crops ..... -2

Half for crops and half for grazing..... -3

Most for grazing ..... -4

All for grazing ..... -5

4. What is the total size of all land that is available to household members for growing crops? Record in hectares for those who can give this information.

..... hectares

If information cannot be given in hectares, think of a soccer field - is the total area smaller, about the same or bigger than a soccer field?

**If bigger:** Determine about how many soccer fields the land the household could use for growing crops would cover?

Interviewer: Remember: (i) A soccer field is about ½ hectare.  
(ii) One hectare equals approx. 2 acres

	5a Thinking about last year: Of the land that the household could have used for growing crops, about how much did it actually use?	5b And, what proportion of the land has the household already used or does it plan to till in 1993?
Less than half	-1	-1
About half	-2	-2
More than half	-3	-3
All	-4	-4
None	-5	-5

- 9a. Of the land that is available to the household for growing crops, was any of it rented out to other people in the past 12 months?

Yes..... -1

No..... -2

→ Go to Question 10

**IF NO TO BOTH QUESTION 1a AND QUESTION 2a, GO TO SECTION 7.2**

6a. What are the sources of water, if any, used on the land used for growing crops?  
(Allow for multiple responses, up to three)

6b. And which is the main source? (Single mention)

	6a. Sources of water used	6b. Main Source
River/Stream	-1	-1
Dam	-2	-2
Borehole	-3	-3
Tank	-4	-4
Municipality	-5	-5
Rain	-6	-6
Neighbour	-7	-7
Other (Specify)	-8	-8
.....		

6c. About how much of the land used for growing crops is the household able to water from these sources (and not counting rain)?

Less than half ..... -1  
 About half ..... -2  
 More than half ..... -3  
 All ..... -4  
 None ..... -5

7. Does the household have the right to sell any part of the land it uses for growing crops?

Yes ..... -1  
 No ..... -2 → Go to Question 9

8a. If Yes: About how much of it can be sold? \_\_\_\_\_ hectares

8b. How much do you think the household would be able to get for the land if it sold the land it uses for growing crops?

R \_\_\_\_\_

All	-4	-4
None	-5	-5

9a. Of the land that is available to the household for growing crops, was any of it rented out to other people in the past 12 months?

Yes ..... -1  
 No ..... -2 → Go to Question 10

9b. If YES: How much was paid to the household as rental for land used for crops? (Rand)

R \_\_\_\_\_

10a. Did the household have to pay rent for any of the land used for growing crops in the past 12 months?

Yes ..... -1  
 No ..... -2 → Go to Question 11

10b. If YES: How much was paid in rent? R \_\_\_\_\_

11a. What are the sources of water, if any, used on the land used for grazing of animals? (Allow for multiple responses, up to 3)

11b. And which is the main source? (Single mention)

	11a. Sources of water used	11b. Main Source
River/Stream	-1	-1
Dam	-2	-2
Borehole	-3	-3
Tank	-4	-4
Municipality	-5	-5
Rain	-6	-6
Neighbour	-7	-7
Other (Specify)	-8	-8
.....		

- 12a. Does the household have the right to sell any part of the land it uses for the grazing of animals?

Yes ..... -1

No.....-2

→ Go to Question 13

- 12b. If Yes: About how much of it can be sold? \_\_\_\_\_ hectares

- 12c. If Yes: How much do you think the household would be able to get if it sold the land it uses for the grazing of animals?

R \_\_\_\_\_

- 13a. Of the land that is available to the household for grazing of animals, was any of it rented out to other people in the past 12 months?

Yes ..... -1

No.....-2

→ Go to Question 14

- 13b. If Yes: How much was paid to the household as rental for land used for grazing?

R \_\_\_\_\_

- 14a. Did the household have to pay rent for any of the land used for the grazing of animals in the past 12 months?

Yes ..... -1

No.....-2

→ Go to Section 7.2

- 14b. If YES: How much was paid in rent?

R \_\_\_\_\_

## 7.2 Non-Farming Land and Other Property (Immovable Property)

1. Does any member of this household own other property or a share of other property (such as a second or holiday home, a business or commercial property) (NOT counting the property on which the household lives presently) ?

Yes..... 1

Go to Question 2

No..... 2

Go to Section 8

2. Interviewer: First list each property in Question 2a

Then for each of them ask questions 2b to 2d.

2a.	2b.	2c.		2d.
List of properties	How much do you think it is worth?	Is any rent being received?		Amount Received as Rental for this property in the past 12 months
YES	NO			
01.	R	-1	-2	R
02.	R	-1	-2	R
03.	R	-1	-2	R
04.	R	-1	-2	R
05.	R	-1	-2	R
06.	R	-1	-2	R
07.	R	-1	-2	R
08.	R	-1	-2	R
09.	R	-1	-2	R
10.	R	-1	-2	R
11.	R	-1	-2	R
12.	R	-1	-2	R

14b. If YES: How much was paid in rent?

R \_\_\_\_\_

09.	R	-1	-2	R
10.	R	-1	-2	R
11.	R	-1	-2	R
12.	R	-1	-2	R

## CHAPTER 5: RURAL LAND: ACCESS AND USE

It must be noted that this survey was *not* designed with the intention of drawing an accurate picture of land access and use. Because agriculture is confined to certain areas, it would have been necessary to use stratified sampling if we were to ensure that agriculture was accurately represented, but cluster sampling was preferable for other reasons.

In all, only 35 large scale/commercial farms were selected. Although these farmers disclosed fairly complete information, the sample was too small to draw any conclusions about large-scale agriculture. This data obtained for commercial agriculture was not strictly comparable with that of subsistence/small-scale farming. As a result, the two sets of data could not always be pooled. The outcome of this is that the tables in the agricultural production section (tables 5.8 - 5.13) are for ***small scale agriculture only***.

Small scale agriculture, although a larger sample, also suffered the consequences of cluster sampling. For example, the survey captured no rural Coloureds with access to cropland. Consequently, it must be borne in mind that these tables are simply a portrayal of the patterns in the survey data, they do not accurately reflect agriculture in South Africa.



Table 5.1: Percentage of rural households that have access to cropland for farming by province and race

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	18.7	12 900	0.0	32 400	.	.	66.7	4 600	10.4	49 900
N. Cape	0.0	2 100	0.0	5 900	.	.	.	.	0.0	8 000
E. Cape	35.0	799 400	0.0	900	.	.	0.0	24 500	33.9	824 800
Kwazulu	52.6	787 400	0.0	2 500	.	.	.	.	52.4	789 900
O.F.S.	0.0	250 900	.	.	.	.	91.7	15 700	5.4	266 600
E. Tvl	6.7	517 000	.	.	0.0	900	88.9	9 200	8.1	527 100
N. Tvl	31.1	779 900	.	.	.	.	38.6	13 300	31.2	793 200
N.W.	4.0	680 800	0.0	1 700	0.0	900	17.6	40 700	4.7	724 100
P.W.V.	0.0	4 100	.	.	.	.	73.7	19 400	60.8	23 500
All/S.A.	26.1	3 834 500	0.0	43 400	0.0	1 800	41.0	127 400	26.3	4 007 000

Sample number = 4 371

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 7.1.1a.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 5.2: Type of ownership of cropland for farming by race (Percentage)**

Type of land	African	Indian	White	All
Communal	73.4		10.1	69.0
Private (own farm)	23.3	100.0	76.4	27.1
Private (rented)	2.4		10.1	3.0
Other	0.8		3.5	0.9
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	983 200	900	73 900	1 058 000

Sample number = 1 172

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 7.1.1b.

NOTE 2: Number includes farmers NOT living on their farms.

NOTE 3: Survey captured NO Coloured farmers with access to land for farming.

NOTE 4: 'Other' is recorded as 'allocated' and therefore probably either labour tenancy or communal for Africans and 'company owned' for Whites.

NOTE 5: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 5.2.1: Type of ownership of cropland for farming by province (Percentage)

Type of Land	W. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Communal		97.3	55.9	9.1	49.8	78.0	44.8	4.3	69.0
Private (own farm)	82.5	1.4	43.0	81.8	35.3	14.0	40.8	95.7	27.1
Private (rented)		0.6	0.2	9.1	10.4	7.9	11.4		3.0
Other	17.5	0.7	0.9		4.4		2.9		0.9
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	8 700	279 300	414 800	14 400	43 900	238 600	34 800	23 500	1 058 000

Sample number = 1 172

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 7.1.1b.

NOTE 2: Number includes farmers NOT living on their farms.

NOTE 3: Survey captured NO access to cropland in the N. Cape.

NOTE 4: 'Other' is recorded as 'allocated' and therefore probably either labour tenancy or communal for Africans and 'company owned' for Whites.

NOTE 5: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 5.3: Average size per farmer of cropland used in the past year by province and race (Hectares)**

Province	African		Indian		White		All	
	Hectare	Number	Hectare	Number	Hectare	Number	Hectare	Number
W. Cape	5.0	1 100	.	.	1 501.1	4 600	1 218.4	5 700
E. Cape	0.5	188 000	.	.	.	.	0.5	188 000
Kwazulu	0.5	296 100	0.0	900	520.0	900	2.0	297 900
O.F.S.	.	.	.	.	107.0	13 100	107.0	13 100
E. Tvl	0.7	25 600	.	.	91.5	6 100	18.3	31 700
N. Tvl	0.5	154 100	.	.	11.1	4 100	0.8	158 200
N.W.	4.8	17 300	.	.	57.8	7 100	20.3	24 400
P.W.V.	0.5	1 000	.	.	0.9	8 200	0.9	9 200
All/S.A.	0.6	683 100	0.0	900	222.0	44 100	14.0	728 100

Sample number = 807

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 7.1.3 and 7.1.5a.

NOTE 2: Survey captured NO Coloured farmers.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 5.4: Main water source for croplands by province (Percentage)

Sources of water	W. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
River/stream	13.0	0.3	3.2		13.7	1.1			2.3
Dam	18.5	2.9	0.2		4.9	0.7	5.7		1.5
Borehole	18.5		0.2	36.4	8.9	2.0	5.3	75.0	3.2
Tank					2.4			5.0	0.2
Municipality	37.0	0.3	1.7					10.0	1.3
Rain	13.0	96.4	94.0	63.6	63.6	93.7	80.6	10.0	90.1
Neighbour			0.6			0.7			0.4
Other					6.5	1.7	8.5		1.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	8 300	258 200	416 600	14 400	42 000	241 300	36 200	20 400	1 037 400

Sample number = 1 150

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 7.1.6b.

NOTE 2: Survey captured NO crop farmers in the N. Cape.

NOTE 3: 'Other' is mostly furrow irrigation.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 5.5: Percentage of rural households that have access to land for stock farming by province and race

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	8.3	12 900	0.0	32 400			66.7	4 600	8.3	49 900
N. Cape	0.0	2 100	33.3	5 900					24.4	8 000
E. Cape	41.3	799 400	0.0	900			0.0	24 500	40.0	824 800
Kwazulu	41.5	787 400	0.0	2 500					41.3	789 900
O.F.S.	0.0	250 900					83.3	15 700	4.9	266 600
E. Tvl	4.0	517 000			0.0	900	100.0	9 200	5.6	527 100
N. Tvl	10.3	779 900					30.8	13 300	10.6	793 200
N.W.	2.8	680 800	0.0	1 700	0.0	900	15.0	40 700	3.5	724 100
P.W.V.	0.0	4 100					73.7	19 400	60.8	23 500
All/S.A.	20.3	3 834 500	4.5	43 400	0.0	1 800	39.1	127 400	20.7	4 007 000

Sample number = 4 371

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 7.1.2a.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 5.6: Type of ownership of land for stock farming by race (Percentage)

Type of land	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Communal	91.1	.	.	10.7	84.4
Private (own farm)	6.9	50.0	100.0	83.6	13.1
Private (rented)	1.2	50.0	.	2.0	1.3
Other	0.9	.	.	3.8	1.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	774 100	2 000	900	67 000	843 900

Sample number = 935

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 7.1.2b.

NOTE 2: 'Other' is recorded as 'allocated' and therefore probably communal for Africans and  
'company owned' for Whites.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 5.6.1: Type of ownership of land for stock farming by province (Percentage)

Type of land	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Communal	.	.	98.5	88.0	.	42.7	82.7	49.1	9.5	84.4
Private (own farm)	63.8	50.0	0.6	11.7	90.0	40.5	10.0	47.3	90.5	13.1
Private (rented)	14.9	50.0	.	0.3	10.0	3.1	7.3	.	.	1.3
Other	21.3	.	0.9	.	.	13.8	.	3.6	.	1.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	7 200	2 000	329 000	328 300	13 100	29 700	85 100	28 100	21 400	843 900

Sample number = 935

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 7.1.2b.

NOTE 2: 'Other' is recorded as 'allocated' and therefore probably communal for Africans and 'company owned' for Whites.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 5.7: Main water source for stock farming by province (Percentage)

Sources of water	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
River/stream	20.6		0.6	23.8		41.8	6.0	11.3	11.8	12.8
Dam	29.4		2.8	2.8		16.9	14.6		11.8	4.7
Borehole	29.4	100.0	0.3	0.3	75.0	7.3	22.9	22.1	52.9	6.1
Tank				0.3		3.2	4.8		5.9	0.8
Municipality				0.3						0.1
Rain			96.0	72.3	25.0	30.8	48.0	62.7	17.6	74.7
Neighbour			0.3							0.1
Other	20.6			0.3			3.8	3.8		0.7
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	5 200	2 000	296 500	318 500	10 500	27 900	74 300	27 100	17 400	779 400

Sample number = 865

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 7.1.11b.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**CHAPTER FIVE**

**RURAL LAND: ACCESS AND USE**

**Section 5.8-5.13**

**Agricultural Production**

## Section 8.5: Agricultural Production

### 8.5 Agricultural Production

1a. In the past 12 months, did this household grow crops or keep livestock for sale, exchange or home consumption?

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2 →Go to Section 8.6

1b. If YES: Was the household able to sell what was farmed over the year for more than R20,000?

Yes ..... -1

→Go to Section 8.5.2

No ..... -2

→Go to Section 8.5.1

### 8.5.1 Agriculture - Subsistence/Small-Scale

#### 8.5.1.1. Crop Production Including Home Consumption

**Interviewer Ask:** What crops, if any, did the household harvest in the past year? (Write down the relevant name and record the code from the box for each crop harvested.)

**Next:** Ask Questions 1c to 1g.

- Note:**
- For Question 1c: SAY: Let us begin with \_\_\_\_ (Read from Q1a). What unit would you use to measure your crop of \_\_\_\_? (Repeat for each crop).
  - For Questions 1c to 1g always refer to the units mentioned under Question 1c and the name of the crop in Question 1a.
  - For Question 1e: include units exchanged or bartered.
  - For Question 1f: include units given to any workers who were not members of the household, but who helped with the crop.
  - For Question 1g: include units given to people who were not members of the household in return for the right to use the land.

1a.	1b.	1c. In what unit does the household usually	1d. How many (units) of	1e. How many ____ (units) of (crop) did the	1f. How many ____ (units) of	1g. How many ____ (units) of
-----	-----	---	-------------------------------	---	------------------------------------	------------------------------------

- For Question 1g: include units given to people who were not members of the household in return for the right to use the land.

1a.	1b.	1c. In what unit does the household usually measure the crop of _____?		1d. How many _____ (units) of _____ (crop) were harvested in the past 12 months?	1e. How many _____ (units) of _____ (crop) did the household sell in the past 12 months		1f. How many _____ (units) of _____ (crop) were given to pay for labour?	1g. How many _____ (units) of _____ (crop) were given to pay for the use of the land?
Crop Name	Crop Code	Name	Code	Number	Number	Average price per unit	Number	Number

Codes for Questions 1b Types of Crops		Codes for Question 1c Units of Measure
01= Maize Grain	12=Millet	01= Kilos
02= Maize Fresh	13=Madumbe./Other Tubers (Specify)	02= 10 kilo bags
03= Sorghum	14=Peanuts/Nuts	03= 25 kilo bags
04= Wheat	15=Tomato	04= 50 kilo bags
05= Potato	16=Onion	05= 80 kilo bags
06= Orchard Fruit	17=Sugar/Cane	06= Tons
07= Bananas	18=Other Vegetables	07= Boxes
08= Grapes	19=Pasture Crops (e.g. lucerne)	08= 25 litre drum
09= Dry Beans	20=Commercial Flowers	09= Piece/"Ear"
10= Pumpkin/Squash	21="Imifino", "Morogo" berries, mushrooms	10= Basin (Specify size)
11= Green Vegetables	22=Other (Specify)	11= Bunches
		12= Other (Specify)

### 8.5.1.2 Livestock: Cattle, Pigs, etc.

- 1 Does the household own or farm with any animals or poultry of any kind?

Yes.....-1 → **Note: Ask every question from 2 to 7**

No.....-2 → **Go to Section 8.5.1.3**

	Cattle	Sheep	Goats	Pigs	Poultry
2a. How many _____ (Name of animal) does the household <u>own</u> at the moment?					
2b. In the past year, how many, if any, _____ were born?					
2c. In the past year, how many, if any _____ did the household sell?					
2d. (Ask for each kind of animal sold): In the past year, how much money did the household get from the sale of _____ ? (Rand)					
2e. In the past year, how many _____, if any, did the household buy?					
2f. In the past year, how many _____, if any, did the household slaughter?					
2g. In the past year, how many _____, if any, did the household lose because they were stolen or died or were run over, or something like that (e.g. fined, impounded)?					
2h. At present, how many _____, if any, has the household loaned to someone else?					
2i. And, at present, how many _____, if any, has the household borrowed from someone else?					

- 3 **Ask all who have cattle or goats:**

- 3a. About how many litres of milk were obtained from your herd during the past week (last 7 days)? \_\_\_\_\_ litres

- 3b. And, how much of this was for **this household's own use**? \_\_\_\_\_ litres

- 3c. And, how much of it was for **sale or exchange**? \_\_\_\_\_ litres

- 3d. What was the value of milk sold or exchanged?

R \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 **Ask all who have hens or ducks or other poultry:**

- 4a. About how many eggs were obtained from your poultry during the past week (last 7 days)? \_\_\_\_\_

- 4b. And, how many of these did the household **use**? \_\_\_\_\_

- 4c. And, how many did the household **sell or exchange**? \_\_\_\_\_

- 4d. What was the value of eggs sold or exchanged?

R \_\_\_\_\_

5.

**Ask all who have sheep:** In the past 12 months, how much did the household make, if anything, from the **sale of wool and mohair**?

3.

In the last 12 months, did the household receive anything in any other way not already mentioned from farming? (Describe)

any, has the household loaned to someone else?						
2i. And, at present, how many _____, if any, has the household borrowed from someone else?						

4d. What was the value of eggs sold or exchanged?

R \_\_\_\_\_

5. **Ask all who have sheep:** In the past 12 months, how much did the household make, if anything, from the **sale of wool and mohair**?

R \_\_\_\_\_

6. **Ask all who own animals:** In the past 12 months, how much, if anything, did the household make from the sale of animal skins and hides?

R \_\_\_\_\_

7. What was the cost of veterinary services including medicines and dip (in cash and credit)?

R \_\_\_\_\_

### 8.5.1.3 Other Farming Income

- 1a. Did the household receive anything in the form of subsidies or drought relief in the past 12 months?

Yes.....-1

No.....-2 → Go to Question 2

- 1b. **If YES:** How much was it worth in rand? R \_\_\_\_\_

- 2a. In the last 12 months, did the household receive anything by providing a service to other farmers, for example, ploughing or planting?

Yes.....-1

No.....-2 → Go to Question 3

- 2b. **If YES:** How much was it worth in rand? R \_\_\_\_\_

3. In the last 12 months, did the household receive anything in any other way not already mentioned from farming? (Describe)

Yes.....-1 → Describe

No.....-2

### 8.5.1.4 Farming Assets

- 1a. Does this household own any tractors or other farming vehicles?

Yes.....-1

No.....-2 → Go to Question 2

- 1b. **If YES:** Approximately how much could you sell them for? R \_\_\_\_\_

- 2a. Does this household own mechanised farm equipment/pumps?

Yes.....-1

No.....-2 → Go to Question 3

- 2b. **If YES:** Approximately how much could you sell them for? R \_\_\_\_\_

- 3a. Does this household own other non-mechanical farm tools (Spades, hoes, etc.) ?

Yes.....-1

No.....-2 → Go to Section 8.5.1.5

- 3b. **If YES:** Approximately how much could you sell them for? R \_\_\_\_\_

### 8.5.1.5 Other Farming Costs

In the last 12 months, how much, if anything, did the household pay in cash and credit for:

	Code	Rand
Wages for workers who helped with farming	-01	R
Farming materials, like seed, fertilizer, pesticides	-02	R
Petrol, diesel and oil for machines	-03	R
Food for the poultry or farm animals	-04	R
Farm land that was rented from someone else	-05	R
Other payments made in the last 12 months to gain access to land	-06	R
Land taxes	-07	R
Various services, for example tractors, oxen which were used for ploughing	-08	R
Interest on loans	-09	R
Any other costs (Describe)	-10	R

### 8.5.2 Agriculture - Large-Scale, Commercial

Ask these questions only for farmers whose annual turnover exceeds R20 000.

- Now, I'd like us to look at the expenses incurred from farming in the past 12 months. Let us begin with capital expenses.

### 8.5.2 Agriculture - Large-Scale, Commercial

Ask these questions only for farmers whose annual turnover exceeds R20 000.

1a. Is/are this/these farm/s owned in partnership?

Yes.....-1

No.....-2 → Go to Question 2

1b. If YES: What percentage of the farm/s does this household own?

\_\_\_\_\_ %

2. In this section, I'd like you to indicate what amount you received in total in the past 12 months from your farming activities.

Let's begin with \_\_\_\_\_: How much did you receive from the sale of \_\_\_\_\_  
(Repeat for each category)

	Code	Rand
Field Crop Products (for example vegetables, wheat, etc)	-01	R
Horticultural Products (for example, Proteas, other flowers, etc)	-02	R
Animal Products (including game or cattle/sheep etc)	-03	R
Forestry Products	-04	R
Other Farm Income e.g. drought relief, subsidies (Specify) .....	-05	R

3. Now, I'd like us to look at the expenses incurred from farming in the past 12 months. Let us begin with capital expenses.

	Code	Rand
Capital Expenses	-01	R
New equipment	-02	R
New buildings	-03	R
Other development work on the farm	-04	R
And what were your approximate running costs through the year, including wages and interest payments?	-05	R
Any other Expenses (Specify) .....	-06	R

4a. How many workers do you employ on the farm for most of the year (that is, permanent workers)?

4b. What is the total number of workers employed temporarily or seasonally on the farm during the past year (Add the number of workers employed each month)?

5. Here is a list of assets that you may or may not own.  
Please tell me approximately how much it would cost to replace them?

	Code	Rand
Tractors and other farm vehicles	-1	R
Mechanised farm equipment (for example, pumps)	-2	R
Other farm tools	-3	R



Table 5.8: Percentage of rural households engaged in crop and/or livestock production by province and race

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	25.0	12 900	0.0	32 400	.	.	0.0	4 600	6.4	49 900
N. Cape	50.0	2 100	50.0	5 900	.	.	.	.	50.0	8 000
E. Cape	55.8	799 400	0.0	900	.	.	0.0	24 500	54.0	824 800
Kwazulu	48.0	787 400	0.0	2 500	.	.	.	.	47.9	789 900
O.F.S.	12.5	250 900	.	.	.	.	41.7	15 700	14.2	266 600
E. Tvl	24.4	517 000	.	.	100.0	900	33.3	9 200	24.7	527 100
N. Tvl	43.9	779 900	.	.	.	.	15.4	13 300	43.4	793 200
N.W.	17.2	680 800	0.0	1 700	0.0	900	22.6	40 700	17.5	724 100
P.W.V.	0.0	4 100	.	.	.	.	21.1	19 400	17.4	23 500
All/S.A.	37.7	3 834 500	6.8	43 400	48.8	1 800	19.6	127 400	36.8	4 007 000

Sample number = 4 371

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.5.1 and 8.5.1.2.

NOTE 2: Large farms with reported earnings of over R20 000 are excluded.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 5.9: Pattern of crop production by race (Percentage)

Table 5.9: Pattern of crop production by race (Percentage)

Type of Crops	African	Indian	White	All
Maize grain	29.8		11.7	28.5
Maize fresh	15.1		1.1	14.2
Sorghum	4.9			4.6
Wheat	1.0		1.5	1.0
Potatoes	4.6		6.3	4.7
Orchard fruits	3.8	100.0	2.9	3.8
Bananas	1.7		1.0	1.7
Grapes	0.2			0.2
Dry beans	10.4		3.4	9.9
Pumpkin/squash	7.2		11.8	7.5
Green vegetables	4.3		27.2	5.8
Millet	0.0			0.0
Madumbes	3.1		1.1	3.0
Peanuts	3.3		1.5	3.2
Tomatoes	3.1		12.3	3.7
Onions	2.0		7.5	2.3
Sugar	1.2			1.1
Other vegetables	1.5		8.4	1.9
Commercial flowers	0.0		1.1	0.1
Imifino/Mushrooms	2.6			2.4
Other	0.0		1.1	0.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.5.1.

NOTE 2: Survey captured NO Coloureds who harvested in the last year.

NOTE 3: Large farms with reported earnings of over R20 000 are excluded, which accounts for NO Whites producing grapes, sugar and commercial flowers.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 5.9.1: Pattern of crop production by province (Percentage)

Type of Crop	W. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Maize grain	9.1	56.8	22.5	40.0	18.3	31.1	48.1		28.5
Maize fresh		3.0	23.8		4.8	13.4	5.8	5.0	14.2
Sorghum	4.6	2.8	1.3		1.4	15.7		2.5	4.6
Wheat				10.0	0.5	3.3	6.3		1.0
Potatoes	20.3	6.8	6.1		2.5	0.7	3.4	7.5	4.7
Orchard fruits	6.5	1.4	0.2		20.6	1.6		2.5	3.8
Bananas		0.6	0.7		8.6	0.3			1.7
Grapes					1.0	0.3			0.2
Dry beans		8.0	14.3		2.9	9.5	6.7	7.5	9.9
Pumpkin/squash	17.7	8.0	9.0	10.0	5.4	4.6	3.4	10.0	7.5
Green vegetables	24.2	3.4	3.8	10.0	9.8	2.7	20.1	25.0	5.8
Millet						0.3			0.0
Madumbes		0.5	5.9		2.9				3.0
Peanuts			2.3	10.0	3.8	7.5			3.2
Tomatoes	6.5	2.0	3.1	10.0	5.7	2.3	3.4	15.0	3.7
Onions	6.5	2.6	2.0		4.4	0.7		7.5	2.3
Sugar			1.5		1.0	1.6			1.1
Other vegetables	4.6	2.0	1.6	10.0	1.5	0.7		12.5	1.9
Commercial flowers							2.9	2.5	0.1
Imifino/Mushrooms		2.1	1.6		4.8	3.6			2.4
Other			0.2					2.5	0.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.5.1.

NOTE 2: Survey captured NO crop production in the N. Cape.

NOTE 3: Large farms with reported earnings of over R20 000 are excluded, which accounts for NO wheat for W. Cape and NO sugar for Kwazulu/Natal.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

NOTE 3: Large farms with reported earnings of over R20 000 are excluded, which accounts for NO wheat for W. Cape and NO sugar for Kwazulu/Natal.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 5.10: Average quantity harvested last year by race (Households that produce crops) (Kilograms)**

Type of Crop	African		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Maize	810.0	487 800	97 839.9	8 000	2 379.4	495 800
Sorghum	1 698.8	50 200			1 698.8	50 200
Potatoes	180.1	50 000	37.1	3 600	170.6	53 600
Pumpkin/Squash/Green Vegetables	200.4	107 300	43.9	20 300	175.5	127 600
Sugar	10 282.7	8 000			10 282.7	8 000

Sample number = 814

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.5.1.1.1d.

NOTE 2: Survey captured NO Coloureds and Indians who harvested in the last year.

NOTE 3: Large farms with reported earnings of over R20 000 were excluded.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 5.10.1: Average quantity harvested by province (Households that produced crops) (Kilograms)

Province	Maize		Sorghum		Potatoes		Pumpkin		Sugar	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	125.0	1 100	50.0	1 100	114.6	2 600	84.6	8 300	.	.
E. Cape	638.7	109 100	97.5	5 300	170.7	12 900	105.0	18 000	.	.
Kwazulu	1 211.3	223 000	2 176.7	2 700	211.1	29 400	190.4	58 000	11 462.5	7 100
O.F.S.	152 666.7	3 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
E. Tvl	370.2	40 900	36.7	2 700	65.6	4 600	243.3	17 600	1 000.0	900
N. Tvl	315.5	101 400	2 073.5	37 400	40.7	1 900	259.9	14 500	.	.
N.W.	12 411.3	15 500	.	.	25.0	1 000	66.3	7 200	.	.
P.W.V.	25.0	1 000	1 120.0	1 000	10.0	1 000	56.8	4 100	.	.
All/S.A.	2 379.4	495 800	1 698.8	50 200	170.6	53 600	175.5	127 600	10 282.7	8 000

Sample number = 814

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.5.1.1.1d.

NOTE 2: Survey captured NO crop production in the N. Cape.

NOTE 3: Large farms with reported earnings of over R20 000 were excluded.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 5.11: Pattern of livestock production by race (Households that own livestock) (Percentage)**

Type of Livestock	African	Coloured	White	All
Cattle	21.9	33.3	35.3	22.3
Sheep	5.6	22.2	32.2	6.2
Goats	19.9	11.1	1.7	19.5
Pigs	11.6		11.3	11.6
Poultry	40.9	33.3	19.5	40.4
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.5.1.2.2.

NOTE 2: Survey captured NO Indians who own livestock.

NOTE 3: Large farms with reported earnings of R20 000 are excluded.

Table 5.11.1: Pattern of livestock production by province (Households that own livestock) (Percentage)

Type of livestock	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Cattle	23.0	22.0	18.9	29.0	28.5	27.2	18.6	22.2	30.8	22.3
Sheep	41.1	22.0	8.9	2.9	9.0	3.2	2.4	10.3	7.7	6.2
Goats		11.0	16.5	21.1		21.4	28.3	17.1	7.7	19.5
Pigs	24.0		22.5	2.8	8.8	3.1	3.7	2.1	7.7	11.6
Poultry	12.0	45.0	33.3	44.1	53.7	45.2	47.0	48.2	46.2	40.4
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.5.1.2.2.

NOTE 2: Large farms with reported earnings of over R20 000 are excluded.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 5.12: Average number of livestock owned by race (Households that own livestock)**

Type of Livestock	African		Coloured		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Cattle	6	568 100	10	2 900	51	19 800	7	590 900
Sheep	21	143 200	275	2 000	60	18 000	28	163 100
Goats	8	517 400	28	1 000	5	1 000	8	519 400
Pigs	2	302 900			3	5 700	2	308 600
Poultry	11	1 075 200	13	2 900	40	10 500	11	1 088 600

Sample number = 2 983

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.5.1.2.2.

NOTE 2: Survey captured NO Indians who own livestock.

NOTE 3: Large farms with reported earnings of over R20 000 are excluded.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 5.12.1: Average number of livestock owned by province (Households that own livestock)

Province	Cattle		Sheep		Goats		Pigs		Poultry	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	19	2 100	12	3 700			2	2 100	12	1 100
N. Cape	14	2 000	275	2 000	28	1 000			11	4 000
E. Cape	6	218 400	26	102 600	10	188 100	2	258 900	8	383 000
Kwazulu	6	184 600	8	17 800	8	135 600	3	17 800	13	295 200
O.F.S.	44	19 400	107	6 100			3	6 000	17	36 500
E. Tvl	7	34 100	25	3 100	7	26 800	8	3 900	18	56 700
N. Tvl	6	89 400	17	10 800	7	137 100	3	16 100	9	225 000
N.W.	8	37 800	17	17 100	7	29 700	7	3 700	13	82 000
P.W.V.	14	3 100			2	1 000			19	5 100
All/S.A.	7	590 900	28	163 100	8	519 400	2	308 600	11	1 088 600

Sample number = 2 983

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.5.1.2.2.

NOTE 2: Large farms with reported earnings of over R20 000 are excluded.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 5.13: Percentage of households owning mechanized farming equipment by province and race**

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	0.0	3 200	.	.	.	.	0.0	4 600	0.0	7 800
N. Cape	.	.	100.0	2 000	.	.	.	.	100.0	2 000
E. Cape	2.7	294 900	.	.	.	.	.	.	2.7	294 900
Kwazulu	5.0	355 000	.	.	.	.	50.0	1 800	5.3	356 800
O.F.S.	0.0	15 800	.	.	.	.	66.7	7 900	22.2	23 700
E. Tvl	3.6	99 700	.	.	0.0	900	66.7	3 100	5.5	103 700
N. Tvl	2.8	188 100	.	.	.	.	50.0	2 000	3.3	190 100
N.W.	4.2	46 000	.	.	.	.	75.0	8 200	14.8	54 200
P.W.V.	16.7	6 100	.	.	.	.	80.0	10 200	56.2	16 400
All/S.A.	3.7	1 008 800	100.0	2 000	0.0	900	62.3	37 800	6.0	1 049 500

Sample number = 1 165

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.5.1.4.

NOTE 2: Large farms with reported earnings of over R20 000 are excluded.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**CHAPTER SIX**

**EMPLOYMENT AND INCOME EARNING ACTIVITIES**

**Section 6.1-6.10.3**

**Employment Status and Earnings from Wage Activities**

## Section 8.1: Employment Status

**Interviewer:** This section is to be completed for all persons aged **16 years or more**. In this section, it is particularly important to check through the answers to the questions regarding hours of work, to confirm replies.

**First:** List all persons aged 16 and older and report their codes. Then ask Questions 3 to 8.

- Note:**
- In **Question 5** "0" (zero) is a valid answer.
  - In **Question 8** fill in the details if the response does not fall within the main codes.

1.	2.	3. Is ____ currently employed?  If NO go to Q5		4. What type of work does ____ do?	5. How many hours did ____ work last week?	6. Would ____ have preferred more work?		7. Did ____ look for more work or for a job in the last week? If YES, go to next person		8. If NO, why did ____ not look for work?
Name	Code	YES	NO	Code	Hours	YES	NO	YES	NO	Code
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	

### Codes for Question 4

- 1=Regular wage employment including self-employed professionals
- 2=Casual wage employment
- 3=Self-employment in agriculture
- 4=Other self-employment
- 5=Other (Specify)

### Codes for Question 8

- 1=Already employed
- 2=No jobs or work available
- 3=Illness
- 4=Physically disabled
- 5=Mentally disabled
- 6=Housewife/Child rearing
- 7=Formal education
- 8=Retired/Pensioner
- 9=Other (Specify)

**Interviewer:** For each respondent answering **YES to Question 7** above, please continue with Questions 9 to 15. Begin by filling in the names and codes of the household members concerned in the grid below.

**Note:** • For **Question 10**: if the answer is "Other" please ask the individual to describe the method he/she used and record it in the grid below.

		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	

6=Housewife/Child rearing
7=Formal education
8=Retired/Pensioner
9=Other (Specify)

**Interviewer:** For each respondent answering **YES to Question 7** above, please continue with Questions 9 to 15  
Begin by filling in the names and codes of the household members concerned in the grid below.

- Note:**
- For **Question 10:** if the answer is "Other", please ask the individual to describe the method he/she used and record it in the grid below.
  - For **Question 15b:** We want to know if it is a private or a public company or a factory or a private individual in the case of household and so on.

Codes for Question 10
1= Newspaper
2= Employment agencies
3= Factory gate / Knocking at the door
4= Through friends/family
5= Other (Specify)

Codes for Question 15a	Codes for Question 15b	Codes for Question 15c	
01=Professional, semi-professional and technical occupations	1= Central Government	01= Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	09= Finance
02=Managerial, executive and administrative occupations	2= Provincial Administration	02= Mining	10= Educational Services
03=Clerical and sales occupations	3= Local Authority or Regional Authority	03= Manufacturing	11= Medical Services
04=Transport, delivery and communications occupations	4= Public Corporation	04= Electricity & Water	12= Legal Services
05=Service occupations	5= Private Sector Employer	05= Construction	13= Domestic Services
06=Farming and related occupations	6= Non-Profit Institution	06= Wholesale & Retail	14= Armed Forces
07=Artisan, apprentice and related occupations	7= Self-Employment	07= Restaurant & Hotels/Entertainment/ Sport	15= Other Services
08=Production foremen and supervisors and mining and quarrying occupations	8= Householder	08= Transport & Communication	16= Other (Specify)
09=Operators, production workers and related semi-skilled occupations	9= Other (Specify)		.....
10=Labourers			
11=Other occupations (Specify)			

9a.  Person Name	9b.  Per- son Code	10. What was the most important method by which ____ looked for work?  Code	11. About how many hours did ____ devote to looking for work last week?  Hours	12. What is the lowest wage in rand per day that ____ would accept for a casual or day job ?  Rand	13. What is the lowest wage in rand per month that ____ would accept for a permanent job ?  Rand	14. Has ____ ever had a paid job for more than a month ? IF NO Go to Sec.8.2  YES NO		15a. Describe the work that ____ did in the most recent job.  Description Code		15b. Who was ____ working for in the most recent job?  Employer Code		15c. In which economic sector was ____ employed in the most recent job?  Name Code	
						-1	-2						
						-1	-2						
						-1	-2						
						-1	-2						
						-1	-2						
						-1	-2						
						-1	-2						
						-1	-2						

## Section 8.2: Regular Employment

### 8.2.1 Regular Employment

## Section 8.2: Regular Employment

### 8.2.1 Regular Employment

**Interviewer:** Ask questions 1a and 1b in turn for each member of the household aged 16 years or more. Use the household roster on the flap.  
Refer to answers in Section 8.1 to see if everybody has been included.

1a. Does \_\_\_\_\_ (Read each name in turn) have a regular job for which he/she earned a salary in the past week?

Yes..... → Write the person's name and code down from the flap in the grid below.

No..... → Ask Question 1b

1b. Does \_\_\_\_\_ (Repeat the name) earn his/her living as a doctor or a lawyer or through some other special training he/she has?

Yes..... → Write the person's name and code down in the grid below in Question 2

No..... → Ask Question 1a to next person aged 16 years or more

- Note:**
- **EXCLUDE:** Farm owners, shopkeepers/owners
  - **INCLUDE:** Farm managers, shop workers, lawyers, doctors, architects, management consultants and other self-employed professionals
  - **INCLUDE:** Those workers on paid vacation

Codes for Question 3a	Codes for Question 3b	Codes for Question 3c	
01=Professional, semi-professional and technical occupations	1= Central Government	01= Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	09= Finance
02=Managerial, executive and administrative occupations	2= Provincial Administration	02= Mining	10= Educational Services
03=Clerical and sales occupations	3= Local Authority or Regional Authority	03= Manufacturing	11= Medical Services
04=Transport, delivery and communications occupations	4= Public Corporation	04= Electricity & Water	12= Legal Services
05=Service occupations	5= Private Sector Employer	05= Construction	13= Domestic Services
06=Farming and related occupations	6= Non-Profit Institution	06= Wholesale & Retail	14= Armed Forces
07=Artisan, apprentice and related occupations	7= Self-Employment	07= Restaurant & Hotels/Entertainment/ Sport	15= Other Services
08=Production foremen and supervisors and mining and quarrying occupations	8= Householder	08= Transport & Communication	16= Other (Specify)
09=Operators, production workers and related semi-skilled occupations	9= Other (Specify)		
10=Labourers			
11=Other occupations (Specify)			

**Interviewer:** Ask the next series of questions for EACH person on the list.

- For Question 3a : We must be able to tell what they actually do.

- For **Question 3b** : We want to know if it is a private or a public company or a factory or a private individual in the case of households, and so on.

- For Question 3c : We need to get the "business" (sector) they are in.

[illegible]

**Interviewer:** Write down person names and codes in Questions 4a and 4b in the grid below of all those who have REGULAR EMPLOYMENT.

**Next:** Ask Questions 4c to 4i.

5.  $C = A - \text{DEDUCTIONS}$  (i.e., 4th- $\frac{1}{2}$ -like various payments, unemployment insurance, medical insurance, and so on (but not tax))



### 8.2.3. Payment

**Interviewer:** Write down person names and codes in Questions 4a and 4b in the grid below of all those who have REGULAR EMPLOYMENT.

**Next:** Ask Questions 4c to 4i.

**Note:** • For Question 4e DEDUCTION includes things like pension payments, unemployment insurance, medical insurance, and so on (but not tax).

4a.  Name	4b.  Person Code	4c. On what basis is ____ paid?  Wk//fortnight/mo	4d. What was ____'s actual take-home pay AFTER DEDUCTIONS in his/her pay packet?  Rand	4e. How much was deducted?  (Do not include Taxes)  Rand	4f. When you add all the amounts together, including tax and all other amounts, how much would ____ get? (Gross Pay) Rand	4g. How much, if anything, was paid to ____ in the form of a bonus in the last year?  Rand	4h. And, how much, if anything, was paid to ____ as a share of profits in the past year?  Rand	4i Does ____'s employer contribute to a pension fund on his/her behalf?  YES      NO
		-1   -2   -3						-1      -2
		-1   -2   -3						-1      -2
		-1   -2   -3						-1      -2
		-1   -2   -3						-1      -2
		-1   -2   -3						-1      -2
		-1   -2   -3						-1      -2
		-1   -2   -3						-1      -2
		-1   -2   -3						-1      -2
		-1   -2   -3						-1      -2
		-1   -2   -3						-1      -2

### 8.2.4. Subsidies and Benefits/Equipment

**Interviewer:** Write down the same person names and codes as in the previous section in the grid below for all those who have regular employment.

**SAY:** Sometimes the people or company that people work for provide other benefits, not just pay. This is what I want to ask you about in this section.

**Note:** • Refer to same pay period specified above.

- For **Questions 5c to 5e**, the value of a subsidy is equal to the amount that \_\_\_\_\_ would have to pay each \_\_\_\_\_ pay period for that particular item. If he/she did not get the benefit "0" (zero) is a valid answer.

- Ask **Question 5g ONLY if self-employed**: Think about what it would cost to replace that equipment if it was stolen.

5a.  Name	5b.  Person Code	5c. How much does _____ get in the form of free or subsidised transport each _____ (pay period)  Rand	5d. How much does _____ get in the form of free or subsidised (cheap) food each _____ (pay period)  Rand	5e. How much does _____ get in the form of free or subsidised (cheap) housing each _____ (pay period)  Rand	5f. Is _____ a paid-up member of a Trade Union?  YES      NO		5g If self-employed: What is total value of all equipment that _____ uses to do his/her job?  Rand
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	

## Section 8.3: Wage Work: Casual or Temporary

### 8.3.1 Main Casual or Temporary Job

					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	

### Section 8.3: Wage Work: Casual or Temporary

#### 8.3.1 Main Casual or Temporary Job

**Interviewer:** Ask this question for all members of the household, including children. Use the Flap.

- 1 Did \_\_\_\_\_ (Read each name in turn) do any casual or temporary work in the past month for which he/she was paid in some way, for example, by being given money or food?

Yes..... → Write the person's name and code in Questions 2a and 2b down from the flap and continue.  
 No..... → Go to Section 8.4

- Note:**
- Examples of the kind of work I mean include: gardening or cleaning, typing, temporary work in a factory, looking after someone's children, and so on.
  - Ask people about any paid work done at all, no matter how unimportant it seems, for how short a time it lasted, or how little was earned.
  - Record the MAIN casual or temporary job first and then the second job. If only one job, record as main job.

Codes for Question 3a	Codes for Question 3b	Codes for Question 3c	
01=Professional, semi-professional and technical occupations	1= Central Government	01= Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	09= Finance
02=Managerial, executive and administrative occupations	2= Provincial Administration	02= Mining	10= Educational Services
03=Clerical and sales occupations	3= Local Authority or Regional Authority	03= Manufacturing	11= Medical Services
04=Transport, delivery and communications occupations	4= Public Corporation	04= Electricity & Water	12= Legal Services
05=Service occupations	5= Private Sector Employer	05= Construction	13= Domestic Services
06=Farming and related occupations	6= Non-Profit Institution	06= Wholesale & Retail	14= Armed Forces
07=Artisan, apprentice and related occupations	7= Self-Employment	07 = Restaurant & Hotels/Entertainment/ Sport	15= Other Services
08=Production foremen and supervisors and mining and quarrying occupations	8= Householder	08= Transport & Communication	16= Other (Specify)
09=Operators, production workers and related semi-skilled occupations	9= Other (Specify)		
10=Labourers			
11=Other occupations (Specify)			

## Main Casual or Temporary Job (Continued/....)

## 8.3.2. The Kind of Work (Questions 3a - 3c)

**Interviewer:** Ask the next series of questions for EACH person on the list.

- Note**
- For Question 3a : We must be able to tell what they actually do.
  - For Question 3b : We want to know if it is a private or a public company or a factory or a private individual in the case of households, and so on.
  - For Question 3c : We need to get the "business" (sector) they are in.

2a.	2b.	3a. What does ____ do?		3b. Who does ____ work for?		3c. In which economic sector is ____ employed?		3d. About how many hours, not counting travel time, does ____ work on an average day?	3e. How many hours of paid overtime, if any, did ____ work in the past week?
Name	Person Code	Describe Job	Code	Type of Employer	Code	Sector Name	Code	Hours	Overtime Hours

Main Casual or Temporary Job (Continued/. . .)

## 8.3.3. Payment



### 8.3.4 Second Casual or Temporary Job

**Interviewer:** Ask this question for all members of the household, including children who have a second casual or temporary job.

- 1 Apart from the work we have just talked about, did \_\_\_\_\_ (Read each name mentioned in the previous section in turn) do any other casual or temporary work in the past month for which he/she was paid in some way, for example, by being given money or food?

Yes..... → Write the person's name and code in Questions 2a and 2b down from the flap and continue.

No..... → Go to Section 8.4

- Note:**
- Examples of the kind of work I mean include: gardening or cleaning, typing, temporary work in a factory, looking after someone's children, and so on.
  - Ask people about any paid work done at all, no matter how unimportant it seems, for how short a time it lasted, or how little was earned.

Codes for Question 3a	Codes for Question 3b	Codes for Question 3c	
01=Professional, semi-professional and technical occupations	1= Central Government	01= Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	09= Finance
02=Managerial, executive and administrative occupations	2= Provincial Administration	02= Mining	10= Educational Services
03=Clerical and sales occupations	3= Local Authority or Regional Authority	03= Manufacturing	11= Medical Services
04=Transport, delivery and communications occupations	4= Public Corporation	04= Electricity & Water	12= Legal Services
05=Service occupations	5= Private Sector Employer	05= Construction	13= Domestic Services
06=Farming and related occupations	6= Non-Profit Institution	06= Wholesale & Retail	14= Armed Forces
07=Artisan, apprentice and related occupations	7= Self-Employment	07 = Restaurant & Hotels/Entertainment/ Sport	15= Other Services
08=Production foremen and supervisors and mining and quarrying occupations	8= Householder	08= Transport & Communication	16= Other (Specify)
09=Operators, production workers and related semi-skilled occupations	9= Other (Specify)		
10=Labourers			
11=Other occupations (Specify)			

Second Casual or Temporary Job (Continued/....)

### 8.3.5. The Kind of Work (Questions 3a - 3c)

**Second Casual or Temporary Job (Continued/....)**

**8.3.5. The Kind of Work (Questions 3a - 3c)**

**Interviewer:** Ask the next series of questions for EACH person on the list.

- Note**
- For Question 3a : We must be able to tell what they actually do.
  - For Question 3b : We want to know if it is a private or a public company or a factory or a private individual in the case of households, and so on.
  - For Question 3c : We need to get the "business" (sector) they are in.

2a.	2b.	3a. What does ____ do?		3b. Who does ____ work for?		3c. In which economic sector is ____ employed?		3d. About how many hours, not counting travel time, does ____ work on an average day?	3e. How many hours of paid overtime, if any, did ____ work in the past week?
Name	Person Code	Describe Job	Code	Type of Employer	Code	Sector Name	Code	Hours	Overtime Hours

### 8.3.6. Payment

**Next:** Ask Questions 4c to 4f.

- For Question 4f, Ask **ONLY** if self-employed: Think about what it would cost to replace that equipment if it was stolen.

[illegible]




Table 6.1: Employment status by race and gender, persons aged 16-64 (Percentage)

Race & Gender	(1) % of population working	(2) Of working % preferring more work	(3) % searching for a job	(4) % not searching for a job	(5) = (1 + 3) Participation rate	(6) = (1 + 3 + 4) Participation rate including discouraged	(7) = 100 X (3/5) Unemployment rate	(8) = 100 X (3 + 4)/6 Unemployment rate including discouraged	(9) % not searching for jobs including discouraged	(10) = (9-4) % not searching for jobs excluding discouraged	(11) = (1 + 3 + 9) Total	Number
African												
Female	27.0	16.9	5.9	15.5	32.9	48.4	17.9	44.2	67.1	51.6	100.0	8 623 200
Male	45.8	17.4	7.8	15.4	53.6	69.1	14.5	33.6	46.4	30.9	100.0	6 987 300
All	35.4	17.2	6.7	15.5	42.2	57.6	16.0	38.5	57.8	42.4	100.0	15 610 500
Coloured												
Female	46.0	11.0	10.4	4.7	56.5	61.1	18.5	24.7	43.5	38.9	100.0	975 400
Male	64.6	10.4	9.1	4.6	73.6	78.2	12.3	17.4	26.4	21.8	100.0	845 100
All	54.6	10.7	9.8	4.6	64.4	69.1	15.2	20.9	35.6	30.9	100.0	1 820 500
Indian												
Female	36.1	8.5	3.6	3.6	39.7	43.3	9.0	16.6	60.3	56.7	100.0	345 400
Male	74.1	12.8	5.7	0.9	79.8	80.6	7.1	8.1	20.2	19.4	100.0	310 100
All	54.1	11.3	4.6	2.3	58.7	61.0	7.8	11.3	41.3	39.0	100.0	655 500
White												
Female	59.9	10.0	2.4	1.1	62.3	63.4	3.8	5.5	37.7	36.6	100.0	1 512 600
Male	82.4	11.7	2.4	0.8	84.8	85.5	2.8	3.7	15.2	14.5	100.0	1 496 000
All	71.1	11.0	2.4	0.9	73.5	74.4	3.3	4.5	26.5	25.6	100.0	3 008 600
All												
Female	33.2	14.3	5.7	12.3	39.0	51.3	14.7	35.2	61.0	48.7	100.0	11 456 600
Male	54.1	15.1	7.0	11.7	61.1	72.8	11.5	25.7	38.9	27.2	100.0	9 638 500
All	42.7	14.8	6.3	12.1	49.1	61.1	12.9	30.1	50.9	38.9	100.0	21 095 100

Sample number = 22 085

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.

NOTE 2: (1) = Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.4. Includes ALL employment: regular, casual and self-employment.

(2) = Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.6 and would include casual and part-time workers.

(3) = Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.3 and 8.1.7 and reflects those ACTIVELY seeking work.

(4) = Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.3 and 8.1.8. (See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3).

(9) = See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3.

(10) = See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.1.1: Employment status by race and location, persons aged 16-64 (Percentage)

Race & Location	(1) % of population working	(2) Of working % preferring more work	(3) % searching for a job	(4) % not searching because discouraged	(5) = (1 + 3) Participation rate	(6) = (1 + 3 + 4) Participation rate including discouraged	(7) = 100 X (3/5) Unemployment rate	(8) = 100 X (3 + 4)/6 Unemployment rate including discouraged	(9) % not searching jobs including discouraged	(10) = (9-4) % not searching jobs excluding discouraged	(11) = (1 + 3 + 9) Total	Num
African												
Rural	30.1	17.3	5.2	16.5	35.2	51.7	14.6	41.8	64.8	48.3	100.0	9
Urban	41.5	16.1	6.3	15.7	47.7	63.4	13.1	34.6	52.3	36.6	100.0	2
Metropolitan	46.5	17.8	12.0	12.3	58.5	70.8	20.5	34.3	41.5	29.2	100.0	3
All	35.4	17.2	6.7	15.5	42.2	57.6	16.0	38.5	57.8	42.4	100.0	15
Coloured												
Rural	69.6	3.3	1.6	6.4	71.3	77.7	2.3	10.3	28.7	22.3	100.0	
Urban	50.6	9.6	12.1	6.3	62.7	68.9	19.2	26.6	37.3	31.1	100.0	
Metropolitan	55.4	12.4	9.3	3.4	64.8	68.2	14.4	18.7	35.2	31.8	100.0	1
All	54.6	10.7	9.8	4.6	64.4	69.1	15.2	20.9	35.6	30.9	100.0	1
Indian												
Rural	100.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	100.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	
Urban	52.2	9.4	4.1	1.8	56.3	58.1	7.3	10.1	43.7	41.9	100.0	
Metropolitan	55.7	13.5	5.2	2.9	60.8	63.7	8.5	12.7	39.2	36.3	100.0	
All	54.1	11.3	4.6	2.3	58.7	61.0	7.8	11.3	41.3	39.0	100.0	
White												
Rural	65.0	4.4	0.8	1.6	65.8	67.4	1.2	3.5	34.2	32.6	100.0	
Urban	70.1	11.5	2.1	1.2	72.2	73.4	2.9	4.4	27.8	26.6	100.0	
Metropolitan	72.3	11.6	2.7	0.8	75.1	75.8	3.7	4.6	24.9	24.2	100.0	1
All	71.1	11.0	2.4	0.9	73.5	74.4	3.3	4.5	26.5	25.6	100.0	3
All												
Rural	31.5	16.3	5.0	16.0	36.5	52.4	13.7	40.0	63.5	47.6	100.0	10
Urban	48.7	13.4	6.2	10.7	54.9	65.6	11.3	25.7	45.1	34.4	100.0	4
Metropolitan	56.2	14.3	8.5	6.9	64.6	71.6	13.1	21.5	35.4	28.4	100.0	6
All	42.7	14.8	6.3	12.1	49.1	61.1	12.9	30.1	50.9	38.9	100.0	21

Sample number =

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.

NOTE 2: (1) = Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.4. Includes ALL employment: regular, casual and self-employment.

(2) = Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.6 and would include casual and part-time workers.

(3) = Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.3 and 8.1.7 and reflects those ACTIVELY seeking work.

(4) = Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.3 and 8.1.8. (See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3).

(9) = See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3.

(10) = See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.2: Employment status by race and age, persons aged 16-64: All (Percentage)

Race &	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5) = (1 + 3)	(6) = (1 + 3 + 4)	(7) = 100 X (3/5)	(8) = 100 X (3 + 4)/6	(9)	(10) = (9-4)	(11) = (1 + 3 + 9)	Num
--------	-----	-----	-----	-----	---------------	-------------------	-------------------	-----------------------	-----	--------------	--------------------	-----

Table 6.2: Employment status by race and age, persons aged 16-64: All (Percentage)

Race & Age	(1) % of population working	(2) Of working % preferring more work	(3) % searching for a job	(4) % not searching because discouraged	(5) = (1 + 3) Participation rate	(6) = (1 + 3 + 4) Participation rate including discouraged	(7) = 100 X (3/5) Unemployment rate	(8) = 100 X (3 + 4)/6 Unemployment rate including discouraged	(9) % not searching jobs including discouraged	(10) = (9-4) % not searching jobs excluding discouraged	(11) = (1 + 3 + 9) Total	Number
<b>African</b>												
16-24	10.9	20.8	5.4	14.7	16.3	30.9	33.1	64.8	83.7	69.1	100.0	5 512 900
25-34	45.4	17.0	10.5	21.3	55.9	77.2	18.8	41.2	44.1	22.8	100.0	4 127 400
35-44	56.3	17.5	7.4	15.0	63.7	78.7	11.6	28.4	36.3	21.3	100.0	2 829 800
45-54	54.9	17.0	4.7	11.8	59.6	71.4	7.9	23.2	40.4	28.6	100.0	1 836 900
55-64	34.9	13.1	1.8	6.9	36.7	43.6	4.9	19.9	63.3	56.4	100.0	1 303 600
All	35.4	17.2	6.7	15.5	42.2	57.6	16.0	38.5	57.8	42.4	100.0	15 610 500
<b>Coloured</b>												
16-24	31.4	14.0	13.3	8.1	44.8	52.9	29.8	40.6	55.2	47.1	100.0	548 400
25-34	68.0	8.6	12.9	3.5	80.9	84.4	16.0	19.5	19.1	15.6	100.0	482 700
35-44	70.8	11.3	6.9	2.7	77.6	80.3	8.8	11.9	22.4	19.7	100.0	416 300
45-54	64.5	10.8	4.5	4.4	69.0	73.4	6.6	12.2	31.0	26.6	100.0	234 900
55-64	34.9	8.1	2.8	0.7	37.7	38.4	7.5	9.2	62.3	61.6	100.0	138 200
All	54.6	10.7	9.8	4.6	64.4	69.1	15.2	20.9	35.6	30.9	100.0	1 820 400
<b>Indian</b>												
16-24	37.8	19.3	8.2	3.4	46.0	49.5	17.8	23.6	54.0	50.5	100.0	182 900
25-34	64.3	7.3	4.6	2.9	69.0	71.9	6.7	10.5	31.0	28.1	100.0	153 000
35-44	68.1	11.6	3.3	2.8	71.4	74.2	4.7	8.2	28.6	25.8	100.0	157 500
45-54	54.5	8.2	1.5	0.0	56.0	56.0	2.7	2.7	44.0	44.0	100.0	118 700
55-64	34.7	11.6	2.0	0.0	36.7	36.7	5.5	5.5	63.3	63.3	100.0	43 400
All	54.1	11.3	4.6	2.3	58.7	61.0	7.8	11.3	41.3	39.0	100.0	655 500
<b>White</b>												
16-24	48.2	14.6	4.1	2.0	52.3	54.3	7.8	11.2	47.7	45.7	100.0	607 800
25-34	85.9	14.4	2.5	0.5	88.3	88.8	2.8	3.3	11.7	11.2	100.0	749 000
35-44	82.7	8.6	1.6	0.4	84.2	84.6	1.8	2.3	15.8	15.4	100.0	720 900
45-54	74.4	7.9	2.3	1.6	76.6	78.2	3.0	5.0	23.4	21.8	100.0	597 100
55-64	48.7	7.9	1.2	0.0	50.0	50.0	2.4	2.4	50.0	50.0	100.0	333 900
All	71.1	11.0	2.4	0.9	73.5	74.4	3.3	4.5	26.5	25.6	100.0	3 008 600
<b>All</b>												
16-24	16.6	18.1	6.0	12.7	22.6	35.3	26.5	53.0	77.4	64.7	100.0	6 851 900
25-34	53.4	15.2	9.5	16.4	62.9	79.3	15.1	32.6	37.1	20.7	100.0	5 512 000
35-44	62.8	14.5	6.2	10.7	69.0	79.7	8.9	21.2	31.0	20.3	100.0	4 124 500
45-54	59.8	13.7	4.0	8.5	63.9	72.4	6.3	17.3	36.1	27.6	100.0	2 787 700
55-64	37.4	11.5	1.8	5.0	39.2	44.2	4.6	15.3	60.8	55.8	100.0	1 819 000
All	42.7	14.8	6.3	12.1	49.1	61.1	12.9	30.1	50.9	38.9	100.0	21 095 100

Sample number = 22 085

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.

NOTE 2: (1) = Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.4. Includes ALL employment: regular, casual and self-employment.

(2) = Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.6 and would include casual and part-time workers.

(3) = Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.3 and 8.1.7 and reflects those ACTIVELY seeking work.

(4) = Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.3 and 8.1.7. ( See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3).

(9) = See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3.

(10) = See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.2.1: Employment status by race and age, persons aged 16-64: Male (Percentage)

Race & Age	(1) % of population working	(2) Of working % preferring more work	(3) % searching for a job	(4) % not searching because discouraged	(5) = (1 + 3) Participation rate	(6) = (1 + 3 + 4) Participation rate including discouraged	(7) = 100 X (3/5) Unemployment rate	(8) = 100 X (3 + 4)/6 Unemployment rate including discouraged	(9) % not searching jobs including discouraged	(10) = (9-4) % not searching jobs excluding discouraged	(11) = (1 + 3 + 9) Total	Number
African												
16-24	14.5	23.7	6.0	14.9	20.5	35.4	29.3	59.1	79.5	64.6	100.0	2 553 000
25-34	58.9	16.7	12.1	19.5	70.9	90.4	17.0	34.9	29.1	9.6	100.0	1 879 800
35-44	71.3	17.8	7.9	14.7	79.2	93.9	10.0	24.1	20.8	6.1	100.0	1 241 800
45-54	71.5	16.3	6.1	12.1	77.6	89.7	7.9	20.3	22.4	10.3	100.0	816 100
55-64	52.0	13.1	3.2	9.8	55.3	65.1	5.9	20.1	44.7	34.9	100.0	496 600
All	45.8	17.4	7.8	15.4	53.6	69.1	14.5	33.6	46.4	30.9	100.0	6 987 300
Coloured												
16-24	35.1	10.1	11.8	8.1	46.9	55.0	25.1	36.2	53.1	45.0	100.0	264 300
25-34	80.7	8.7	10.0	2.7	90.6	93.3	11.0	13.5	9.4	6.7	100.0	215 100
35-44	84.2	11.8	7.1	2.5	91.3	93.8	7.8	10.2	8.7	6.2	100.0	191 400
45-54	77.8	12.0	6.9	4.9	84.7	89.6	8.1	13.2	15.3	10.4	100.0	112 100
55-64	49.5	9.6	4.7	1.6	54.2	55.8	8.7	11.3	45.8	44.2	100.0	62 200
All	64.6	10.4	9.1	4.6	73.6	78.2	12.3	17.4	26.4	21.8	100.0	845 100
Indian												
16-24	45.9	21.7	8.7	2.2	54.5	56.8	15.9	19.2	45.5	43.2	100.0	81 500
25-34	90.8	10.4	6.6	0.0	97.4	97.4	6.8	6.8	2.6	2.6	100.0	66 500
35-44	87.2	14.8	5.3	1.1	92.5	93.5	5.7	6.8	7.5	6.5	100.0	82 300
45-54	83.4	7.2	3.0	0.0	86.5	86.5	3.5	3.5	13.5	13.5	100.0	59 500
55-64	52.3	8.2	0.0	0.0	52.3	52.3	0.0	0.0	47.7	47.7	100.0	20 300
All	74.1	12.8	5.7	0.9	79.8	80.6	7.1	8.1	20.2	19.4	100.0	310 100
White												
16-24	51.3	16.2	3.5	2.6	54.8	57.4	6.4	10.6	45.2	42.6	100.0	300 100
25-34	94.5	16.1	2.6	0.3	97.1	97.4	2.7	3.0	2.9	2.6	100.0	366 300
35-44	97.3	9.5	1.6	0.3	98.9	99.2	1.6	1.9	1.1	0.8	100.0	364 400
45-54	91.8	7.9	2.3	0.7	94.0	94.7	2.4	3.1	6.0	5.3	100.0	290 900
55-64	63.6	7.7	1.8	0.0	65.4	65.4	2.7	2.7	34.6	34.6	100.0	174 300
All	82.4	11.7	2.4	0.8	84.8	85.5	2.8	3.7	15.2	14.5	100.0	1 496 000
All												
16-24	20.4	19.9	6.3	12.9	26.7	39.6	23.6	48.5	73.3	60.4	100.0	3 198 900
25-34	66.7	15.5	10.4	14.8	77.1	91.8	13.5	27.4	22.9	8.2	100.0	2 527 700
35-44	78.3	15.0	6.5	10.1	84.9	94.9	7.7	17.5	15.1	5.1	100.0	1 879 800
45-54	77.2	13.2	5.2	8.3	82.4	90.7	6.3	14.9	17.6	9.3	100.0	1 278 700
55-64	54.5	11.2	2.9	6.6	57.4	64.1	5.1	14.9	42.6	35.9	100.0	753 400
All	54.1	15.1	7.0	11.7	61.1	72.8	11.5	25.7	38.9	27.2	100.0	9 638 500

Sample number = 10 022

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.

NOTE 2: (1) = Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.4. Includes ALL employment: regular, casual and self-employment.

(2) = Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.6 and would include casual and part-time workers.

(3) = Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.3 and 8.1.7 and reflects those ACTIVELY seeking work.

(4) = Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.3 and 8.1.7. ( See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3).

(9) = See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3.

(10) = See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.2.2: Employment status by race and age, persons aged 16-64: Female (Percentage)

Race & Age	(1) % of population	(2) Of working % preferring	(3) % searching for a job	(4) % not searching because	(5) = (1 + 3) Participation rate	(6) = (1 + 3 + 4) Participation rate including	(7) = 100 X (3/5) Unemployment rate	(8) = 100 X (3 + 4)/6 Unemployment rate including	(9) % not searching jobs including	(10) = (9-4) % not searching jobs excluding	(11) = (1 + 3 + 9) Total	Number
------------	---------------------------	-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--	--	---	---	--	---	-----------------------------	--------

(4) = Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.3 and 8.1.7. ( See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3).

(9) = See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3.

(10) = See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.2.2: Employment status by race and age, persons aged 16-64: Female (Percentage)

Race & Age	(1) % of population working	(2) Of working % preferring more work	(3) % searching for a job	(4) % not searching because discouraged	(5) = (1 + 3) Participation rate	(6) = (1 + 3 + 4) Participation rate including discouraged	(7) = 100 X (3/5) Unemployment rate	(8) = 100 X (3 + 4)/6 Unemployment rate including discouraged	(9) % not searching jobs including discouraged	(10) = (9-4) % not searching jobs excluding discouraged	(11) = (1 + 3 + 9) Total	Number
<b>African</b>												
16-24	7.8	16.2	4.9	14.4	12.7	27.1	38.4	71.2	87.3	72.9	100.0	2 959 800
25-34	34.1	17.4	9.2	22.8	43.4	66.1	21.3	48.4	56.6	33.9	100.0	2 247 600
35-44	44.6	17.0	7.0	15.2	51.5	66.7	13.5	33.2	48.5	33.3	100.0	1 588 000
45-54	41.6	18.0	3.6	11.6	45.2	56.9	8.0	26.8	54.8	43.1	100.0	1 020 800
55-64	24.3	13.2	0.9	5.0	25.3	30.3	3.7	19.7	74.7	69.7	100.0	807 000
All	27.0	16.9	5.9	15.5	32.9	48.4	17.9	44.2	67.1	51.6	100.0	8 623 200
<b>Coloured</b>												
16-24	28.0	18.5	14.8	8.1	42.8	50.9	34.6	45.0	57.2	49.1	100.0	284 100
25-34	57.7	8.6	15.3	4.3	73.0	77.3	20.9	25.3	27.0	22.7	100.0	267 500
35-44	59.3	10.8	6.7	2.8	66.0	68.8	10.1	13.7	34.0	31.2	100.0	224 900
45-54	52.3	9.2	2.4	3.9	54.7	58.6	4.4	10.7	45.3	41.4	100.0	122 800
55-64	22.9	5.6	1.3	0.0	24.2	24.2	5.3	5.3	75.8	75.8	100.0	76 000
All	46.0	11.0	10.4	4.7	56.5	61.1	18.5	24.7	43.5	38.9	100.0	975 400
<b>Indian</b>												
16-24	31.3	16.5	7.8	4.4	39.1	43.6	20.0	28.1	60.9	56.4	100.0	101 400
25-34	44.0	2.3	3.1	5.1	47.1	52.2	6.6	15.8	52.9	47.8	100.0	86 500
35-44	47.3	5.1	1.2	4.7	48.4	53.1	2.4	11.0	51.6	46.9	100.0	75 200
45-54	25.4	11.6	0.0	0.0	25.4	25.4	0.0	0.0	74.6	74.6	100.0	59 300
55-64	19.2	19.7	3.8	0.0	23.0	23.0	16.5	16.5	77.0	77.0	100.0	23 100
All	36.1	8.5	3.6	3.6	39.7	43.3	9.0	16.6	60.3	56.7	100.0	345 400
<b>White</b>												
16-24	45.2	12.8	4.6	1.5	49.8	51.2	9.2	11.8	50.2	48.8	100.0	307 700
25-34	77.7	12.5	2.3	0.7	79.9	80.6	2.9	3.7	20.1	19.4	100.0	382 700
35-44	67.7	7.1	1.5	0.6	69.2	69.8	2.2	3.0	30.8	30.2	100.0	356 500
45-54	57.9	8.0	2.3	2.5	60.1	62.6	3.8	7.6	39.9	37.4	100.0	306 200
55-64	32.4	8.4	0.6	0.0	33.1	33.1	1.9	1.9	66.9	66.9	100.0	159 600
All	59.9	10.0	2.4	1.1	62.3	63.4	3.8	5.5	37.7	36.6	100.0	1 512 600
<b>All</b>												
16-24	13.2	15.6	5.7	12.6	18.9	31.4	30.2	58.1	81.1	68.6	100.0	3 653 000
25-34	42.1	14.7	8.7	17.8	50.8	68.6	17.1	38.6	49.2	31.4	100.0	2 984 300
35-44	49.8	13.8	5.9	11.3	55.7	67.0	10.5	25.6	44.3	33.0	100.0	2 244 700
45-54	45.1	14.4	3.1	8.7	48.3	56.9	6.4	20.7	51.7	43.1	100.0	1 509 000
55-64	25.3	11.9	1.0	3.8	26.3	30.1	3.7	15.9	73.7	69.9	100.0	1 065 600
All	33.2	14.3	5.7	12.3	39.0	51.3	14.7	35.2	61.0	48.7	100.0	11 456 600

Sample number = 12 063

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.

NOTE 2: (1) = Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.4. Includes ALL employment: regular, casual and self-employment.

(2) = Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.6 and would include casual and part-time workers.

(3) = Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.3 and 8.1.7 and reflects those ACTIVELY seeking work.

(4) = Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.3 and 8.1.7. ( See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3).

(9) = See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3.

(10) = See Tables 6.3 - 6.3.3.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.3: Reasons for not looking for a job by race and age, persons aged 16-64: All (Percentage)

Race & Age	No job available	Illness	Physical disability	Mental disability	Housewife/ Child rearing	Formal education	Retired / Pensioner	Other	Total	Number
<b>African</b>										
16-24	17.6	1.4	0.4	0.5	9.0	68.8	0.0	2.4	100.0	4 591 900
25-34	48.6	2.7	1.9	2.1	30.3	12.2	0.0	2.3	100.0	1 809 200
35-44	41.8	6.4	3.5	2.2	43.4	0.6	0.3	1.9	100.0	1 015 800
45-54	29.3	11.1	3.5	2.5	43.1	0.7	7.7	2.0	100.0	740 100
55-64	10.9	8.1	1.7	0.6	17.7	0.0	59.8	1.3	100.0	822 600
All	26.9	3.6	1.4	1.2	20.8	37.8	6.1	2.2	100.0	8 979 600
<b>Coloured</b>										
16-24	14.7	1.3	1.3	0.3	8.6	70.3	0.3	3.2	100.0	303 000
25-34	18.5	11.5	8.4	3.2	54.1	0.0	1.1	3.2	100.0	92 300
35-44	11.9	11.4	7.4	4.2	62.1	0.0	1.1	1.9	100.0	93 200
45-54	14.2	14.6	9.4	2.7	58.0	0.0	1.1	0.0	100.0	72 800
55-64	1.1	12.5	9.1	2.3	27.0	0.0	46.8	1.1	100.0	86 100
All	13.0	7.2	5.1	1.8	30.8	32.9	6.8	2.4	100.0	647 300
<b>Indian</b>										
16-24	6.4	0.9	1.8	0.0	10.8	80.2	0.0	0.0	100.0	98 700
25-34	9.3	3.7	0.0	0.0	83.3	1.8	0.0	1.8	100.0	47 500
35-44	9.7	3.9	9.7	4.0	70.7	0.0	0.0	1.9	100.0	45 000
45-54	0.0	11.8	0.0	3.5	76.2	0.0	5.1	3.5	100.0	52 300
55-64	0.0	16.5	9.9	0.0	36.7	0.0	37.0	0.0	100.0	26 600
All	5.6	5.5	3.2	1.3	48.7	29.6	4.6	1.3	100.0	270 100
<b>White</b>										
16-24	4.2	0.4	1.1	0.4	8.0	84.1	0.0	1.9	100.0	290 100
25-34	4.1	0.0	1.2	0.0	84.8	4.1	0.0	5.8	100.0	86 400
35-44	2.7	2.2	1.3	0.0	90.1	0.0	1.3	2.2	100.0	113 800
45-54	6.9	3.7	1.5	0.7	69.3	1.1	12.8	4.0	100.0	139 500
55-64	0.0	2.8	1.2	0.0	28.6	0.0	67.5	0.0	100.0	167 100
All	3.6	1.7	1.2	0.3	43.1	31.3	16.6	2.4	100.0	796 900
<b>All</b>										
16-24	16.5	1.3	0.5	0.4	9.0	69.9	0.0	2.4	100.0	5 283 700
25-34	44.4	3.0	2.1	2.0	34.9	11.0	0.0	2.5	100.0	2 035 300
35-44	34.9	6.3	3.8	2.2	49.9	0.5	0.4	1.9	100.0	1 267 800
45-54	23.6	10.3	3.5	2.3	49.6	0.6	7.8	2.2	100.0	1 004 700
55-64	8.2	7.8	2.4	0.6	20.6	0.0	59.4	1.0	100.0	1 102 300
All	23.8	3.7	1.7	1.1	23.8	36.8	6.9	2.2	100.0	10 693 800

Sample number = 11 465

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.8.

NOTE 2: 'Other' includes no money for job search and intending to study further.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.3.1: Reasons for not looking for a job by race and age, persons aged 16-64: Male (Percentage)

Race & Age	No job available	Illness	Physical disability	Mental disability	Housewife/ Child rearing	Formal education	Retired / Pensioner	Other	Total	Number
------------	------------------	---------	---------------------	-------------------	--------------------------	------------------	---------------------	-------	-------	--------

All	23.8	3.7	1.7	1.1	23.8	36.8	6.9	2.2	100.0	10 693 800
Sample number =										11 465

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.8.

NOTE 2: 'Other' includes no money for job search and intending to study further.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.3.1: Reasons for not looking for a job by race and age, persons aged 16-64: Male (Percentage)

Race & Age	No job available	Illness	Physical disability	Mental disability	Housewife/ Child rearing	Formal education	Retired / Pensioner	Other	Total	Number
<b>African</b>										
16-24	18.9	1.2	0.5	0.9	0.3	75.6	0.0	2.6	100.0	2 020 400
25-34	67.8	2.9	4.0	6.3	1.0	14.4	0.0	3.6	100.0	540 500
35-44	71.8	7.4	8.3	6.5	0.4	0.7	1.0	3.9	100.0	254 200
45-54	54.2	14.8	6.9	5.2	1.1	1.2	11.7	5.1	100.0	182 000
55-64	22.0	14.0	3.7	1.6	1.2	0.0	55.5	2.1	100.0	222 100
All	33.5	3.6	2.3	2.5	0.5	50.0	4.6	3.0	100.0	3 219 300
<b>Coloured</b>										
16-24	15.3	1.4	1.4	0.6	0.0	76.5	0.0	4.8	100.0	140 400
25-34	28.3	33.3	23.9	9.7	0.0	0.0	0.0	4.9	100.0	20 200
35-44	29.0	41.4	17.7	8.9	0.0	0.0	0.0	5.9	100.0	16 600
45-54	32.3	27.7	17.2	11.4	11.4	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	17 100
55-64	3.4	27.6	17.2	3.4	0.0	0.0	44.8	3.4	100.0	28 400
All	17.3	12.6	7.9	3.0	0.9	48.2	5.7	4.4	100.0	222 800
<b>Indian</b>										
16-24	4.9	0.0	2.4	0.0	0.0	92.8	0.0	0.0	100.0	37 100
25-34	0.0	100.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	1 800
35-44	14.1	28.3	28.3	29.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	8 200
45-54	0.0	33.3	0.0	22.8	0.0	0.0	21.7	22.8	100.0	8 100
55-64	0.0	38.7	8.9	0.0	8.9	0.0	40.5	0.0	100.0	8 800
All	4.3	15.7	5.7	5.9	1.4	55.5	8.6	2.9	100.0	61 900
<b>White</b>										
16-24	5.6	0.8	0.8	0.0	0.0	89.8	0.0	3.0	100.0	135 600
25-34	10.7	0.0	10.7	0.0	0.0	37.3	0.0	41.4	100.0	9 600
35-44	28.0	37.5	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	37.5	0.0	100.0	4 100
45-54	11.8	11.8	0.0	5.9	0.0	8.8	47.1	14.7	100.0	17 400
55-64	0.0	6.0	1.7	0.0	2.5	0.0	89.7	0.0	100.0	60 300
All	5.2	3.6	1.3	0.4	0.7	55.9	28.1	4.7	100.0	226 900
<b>All</b>										
16-24	17.7	1.2	0.6	0.8	0.3	76.8	0.0	2.7	100.0	2 333 500
25-34	65.2	4.3	4.8	6.3	1.0	14.2	0.0	4.2	100.0	572 000
35-44	67.3	10.3	9.2	6.9	0.4	0.6	1.5	3.9	100.0	281 100
45-54	47.3	16.2	6.9	6.3	1.7	1.6	13.9	6.1	100.0	224 600
55-64	15.6	14.4	4.7	1.4	1.6	0.0	60.6	1.7	100.0	319 700
All	30.3	4.4	2.6	2.5	0.6	50.3	6.1	3.2	100.0	3 730 800

Sample number = 4 007

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.8.

NOTE 2: 'Other' includes no money for job search and intending to study further.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 6.3.2: Reasons for not looking for a job by race and age, persons aged 16-64: Female (Percentage)

Race & Age	No job available	Illness	Physical disability	Mental disability	Housewife/ Child rearing	Formal education	Retired / Pensioner	Other	Total	Number
<b>African</b>										
16-24	16.6	1.5	0.3	0.1	15.9	63.4	0.0	2.2	100.0	2 571 500
25-34	40.4	2.5	1.0	0.3	42.7	11.2	0.0	1.8	100.0	1 268 700
35-44	31.7	6.0	1.9	0.8	57.8	0.6	0.0	1.2	100.0	761 600
45-54	21.2	9.9	2.5	1.7	56.8	0.5	6.4	1.0	100.0	558 100
55-64	6.8	5.9	0.9	0.2	23.9	0.0	61.4	1.0	100.0	600 500
All	23.3	3.6	0.9	0.4	32.1	30.9	7.0	1.7	100.0	5 760 300
<b>Coloured</b>										
16-24	14.2	1.2	1.2	0.0	16.1	65.0	0.6	1.8	100.0	162 600
25-34	15.8	5.4	4.1	1.4	69.2	0.0	1.4	2.7	100.0	72 100
35-44	8.2	5.0	5.1	3.8	75.5	0.0	1.3	1.1	100.0	76 600
45-54	8.6	10.6	7.0	0.0	72.3	0.0	1.5	0.0	100.0	55 700
55-64	0.0	5.1	5.1	1.7	40.4	0.0	47.7	0.0	100.0	57 600
All	10.7	4.4	3.7	1.2	46.5	24.9	7.4	1.3	100.0	424 500
<b>Indian</b>										
16-24	7.3	1.4	1.4	0.0	17.2	72.6	0.0	0.0	100.0	61 700
25-34	9.7	0.0	0.0	0.0	86.5	1.9	0.0	1.9	100.0	45 700
35-44	9.0	0.0	6.8	0.0	82.0	0.0	0.0	2.3	100.0	38 800
45-54	0.0	7.9	0.0	0.0	90.1	0.0	2.0	0.0	100.0	44 200
55-64	0.0	4.9	9.9	0.0	80.0	0.0	38.2	0.0	100.0	17 400
All	6.0	2.5	2.5	0.0	62.8	21.9	3.4	0.8	100.0	208 200
<b>White</b>										
16-24	2.9	0.0	1.3	0.7	15.1	79.0	0.0	1.0	100.0	154 500
25-34	3.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	95.3	0.0	0.0	1.3	100.0	76 800
35-44	1.9	0.9	1.4	0.0	93.5	0.0	0.0	2.3	100.0	109 700
45-54	6.2	2.5	1.7	0.0	79.2	0.0	7.9	2.5	100.0	122 100
55-64	0.0	1.0	0.8	0.0	43.3	0.0	54.9	0.0	100.0	106 800
All	2.9	0.9	1.1	0.2	60.0	21.4	12.0	1.4	100.0	569 900
<b>All</b>										
16-24	15.5	1.4	0.4	0.2	15.9	64.5	0.0	2.0	100.0	2 950 200
25-34	36.3	2.5	1.1	0.3	48.1	9.8	0.0	1.8	100.0	1 463 300
35-44	25.7	5.1	2.3	0.9	64.1	0.4	0.1	1.4	100.0	986 700
45-54	16.8	8.7	2.5	1.2	63.3	0.4	6.0	1.1	100.0	780 100
55-64	5.2	5.2	1.4	0.3	28.3	0.0	58.9	0.7	100.0	782 600
All	20.3	3.4	1.2	0.4	36.2	29.5	7.3	1.7	100.0	6 962 900

Sample number = 7 458

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.8.

NOTE 2: 'Other' includes no money for job search and intending to study further.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.3.3: Reasons for not looking for a job by race and location, persons aged 16-64 (Percentage)

Race &	No job	Illness	Physical	Mental	Housewife/	Formal	Retired /	Other	Total	Number
--------	--------	---------	----------	--------	------------	--------	-----------	-------	-------	--------



NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.8.

NOTE 2: 'Other' includes no money for job search and intending to study further.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.3.3: Reasons for not looking for a job by race and location, persons aged 16-64 (Percentage)

Race & Location	No job available	Illness	Physical disability	Mental disability	Housewife/ Child rearing	Formal education	Retired / Pensioner	Other	Total	Number
African										
Rural	25.6	3.6	1.4	1.0	23.0	37.2	6.2	2.0	100.0	6 236 900
Urban	30.1	3.8	1.3	1.1	16.3	38.6	7.1	1.6	100.0	1 440 500
Metropolitan	29.8	3.5	1.5	1.9	15.1	39.6	4.7	3.9	100.0	1 302 200
All	26.9	3.6	1.4	1.2	20.8	37.8	6.1	2.2	100.0	8 979 600
Coloured										
Rural	22.3	8.0	0.0	5.6	19.3	36.2	2.8	5.6	100.0	34 800
Urban	16.8	9.9	4.3	1.2	31.4	27.0	8.0	1.5	100.0	246 300
Metropolitan	9.6	5.3	6.2	1.8	31.5	36.6	6.4	2.7	100.0	366 200
All	13.0	7.2	5.1	1.8	30.8	32.9	6.8	2.4	100.0	647 300
Indian										
Urban	4.1	4.7	4.7	0.6	52.6	28.1	4.1	1.2	100.0	149 600
Metropolitan	7.5	6.6	1.5	2.3	43.8	31.6	5.3	1.5	100.0	120 400
All	5.6	5.5	3.2	1.3	48.7	29.6	4.6	1.3	100.0	270 000
White										
Rural	4.6	2.9	0.0	0.0	46.6	33.4	9.2	3.4	100.0	89 200
Urban	4.2	1.6	0.9	0.0	43.5	28.7	19.8	1.3	100.0	228 000
Metropolitan	3.1	1.5	1.6	0.4	42.3	32.1	16.4	2.6	100.0	479 600
All	3.6	1.7	1.2	0.3	43.1	31.3	16.6	2.4	100.0	796 900
All										
Rural	25.3	3.6	1.4	1.0	23.3	37.1	6.2	2.0	100.0	6 360 800
Urban	23.8	4.3	1.9	1.0	23.8	35.4	8.4	1.5	100.0	2 064 400
Metropolitan	19.7	3.5	2.3	1.6	25.0	37.1	7.5	3.3	100.0	2 268 500
All	23.8	3.7	1.7	1.1	23.8	36.8	6.9	2.2	100.0	10 693 800

Sample number = 11 465

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.1.8.

NOTE 2: 'Other' includes no money for job search and intending to study further.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.4: Regular employment, type of occupation by race: All (Percentage)**

Type of Occupation	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Professional/Technical	9.5	8.9	19.7	27.8	14.5
Managerial/Administrative	0.9	2.8	9.8	20.7	6.4
Clerical/Sales	9.0	16.0	29.3	25.2	14.7
Transport/Communication	6.7	4.5	3.3	2.8	5.3
Service	20.8	6.1	4.8	6.9	14.9
Farming & Related	6.8	0.6		0.7	4.3
Artisan/Apprentice, etc	4.7	11.4	9.7	9.9	7.0
Production, Mining, Supervisor	3.0	3.6	4.5	3.1	3.2
Operators, Semi-skilled	10.8	17.3	18.5	2.3	9.7
Labourers	27.7	28.8	0.6	0.4	19.9
Other	0.1	0.1		0.4	0.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	4 398 200	849 100	294 200	1 871 600	7 413 100

Sample number = 7 515

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.4.1: Regular employment, type of occupation by race: Male (Percentage)**

Type of Occupation	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Professional/Technical	6.2	6.2	20.9	30.7	12.9
Managerial/Administrative	1.0	3.5	12.0	21.0	6.7
Clerical/Sales	7.5	9.5	20.8	11.7	9.3
Transport/Communication	10.8	8.0	5.1	4.4	8.7
Service	10.7	5.4	5.2	6.3	8.8
Farming & Related	8.2	0.8		1.2	5.3
Artisan/Apprentice, etc	6.9	19.9	14.6	15.5	10.8
Production, Mining, Supervisor	4.6	5.0	4.2	4.8	4.7
Operators, Semi-skilled	12.7	16.0	16.8	3.7	11.0
Labourers	31.1	25.4	0.5	0.4	21.6
Other	0.1	0.2		0.4	0.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	2 686 600	475 900	188 100	1 098 900	4 449 500

Sample number = 4 500

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.4.2: Regular employment, type of occupation by race: Female (Percentage)

Type of Occupation	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Professional/Technical	14.7	12.4	17.5	23.6	16.8
Managerial/Administrative	0.6	1.9	5.9	20.2	6.1
Clerical/Sales	11.3	24.2	44.4	44.3	22.7
Transport/Communication	0.3			0.4	0.3
Service	36.5	6.9	4.1	7.7	24.1
Farming & Related	4.6	0.3			2.7
Artisan/Apprentice, etc	1.1	0.5	0.9	1.9	1.2
Production, Mining, Supervisor	0.5	1.8	4.9	0.7	0.9
Operators, Semi-skilled	7.7	19.0	21.4	0.3	7.7
Labourers	22.4	33.0	0.8	0.5	17.3
Other	0.2			0.3	0.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	1 711 600	373 200	106 200	772 700	2 963 600

Sample number = 3 015

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.4.3: Regular employment, type of occupation by province (Percentage)

Type of Occupation	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Professional/Technical	13.2	13.0	14.9	15.3	10.6	9.9	16.7	8.4	19.1	14.5
Managerial/Administrative	6.8	0.0	6.5	4.0	4.2	2.6	3.3	1.8	12.2	6.4
Clerical/Sales	17.0	10.3	11.0	13.4	12.8	9.0	13.1	12.2	19.2	14.7
Transport/Communication	5.4	4.7	4.2	5.9	5.3	5.1	3.3	4.9	5.9	5.3
Serivce	7.4	16.8	6.3	9.2	22.4	19.9	18.4	19.8	18.2	14.9
Farming & Related	0.8	0.0	1.0	4.7	1.1	15.7	12.2	10.1	0.4	4.3
Artisan/Apprentice, etc	7.6	8.2	5.6	5.5	4.6	7.1	5.0	6.0	9.2	7.0
Production, Mining, Supervisor	3.2	2.3	2.2	2.4	6.2	3.2	2.1	5.7	2.3	3.2
Operators, Semi-skilled	12.0	9.4	9.3	13.0	14.5	7.2	6.9	7.0	7.6	9.7
Labourers	26.1	35.2	38.6	26.6	18.0	20.0	19.1	24.1	5.9	19.9
Other	0.4	0.0	0.6	0.2	0.1	0.3	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	1 077 300	85 500	591 100	1 161 800	627 400	700 600	406 400	724 600	2 038 500	7 413 100

Sample number = 7 515

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.5: Regular employment, type of employer by race: All (Percentage)

Type of employer	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Central Government	9.9	9.3	15.7	10.4	10.2
Provincial Administrator	4.8	9.0	3.0	8.7	6.2
Local/Regional Authority	4.3	3.0	2.1	3.8	3.9
Public Corporation	5.6	1.7	7.6	6.1	5.3
Private Sector Employment	62.4	73.1	70.3	62.9	64.1
Non-profit Institution	0.6	0.3	0.3	1.6	0.8
Self-employment	0.3	0.4	0.6	6.0	1.8
Private Household	12.1	2.9	0.3	0.3	7.6
Other	0.0	0.2		0.1	0.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	4 397 400	846 400	291 600	1 868 500	7 403 900

Sample number = 7 505

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.5.1: Regular employment, type of employer by race: Male (Percentage)**

Type of employer	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Central Government	8.8	10.8	16.0	9.2	9.4
Provincial Administrator	3.6	7.4	2.8	4.7	4.2
Local/Regional Authority	4.1	3.5	1.9	4.3	4.0
Public Corporation	7.3	2.0	8.0	6.4	6.6
Private Sector Employment	73.3	75.2	69.8	65.8	71.5
Non-profit Institution	0.5		0.5	1.0	0.6
Self-employment	0.4	0.6	0.5	8.1	2.3
Private Household	1.8		0.5	0.4	1.2
Other	0.1	0.4		0.1	0.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	2 686 600	474 100	187 200	1 098 900	4 446 800

Sample number = 4 497

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.5.2: Regular employment, type of employer by race: Female (Percentage)

Type of employer	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Central Government	11.6	7.4	15.2	12.0	11.3
Provincial Administrator	6.7	11.0	3.4	14.5	9.2
Local/Regional Authority	4.6	2.3	2.5	3.0	3.8
Public Corporation	2.7	1.2	6.7	5.7	3.5
Private Sector Employment	45.3	70.4	71.3	58.8	52.9
Non-profit Institution	0.7	0.8		2.5	1.2
Self-employment	0.1	0.3	0.9	3.1	0.9
Private Household	28.1	6.6		0.2	17.2
Other				0.1	0.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	1 710 700	372 300	104 400	769 600	2 957 100

Sample number = 3 008

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



**Table 6.5.3: Regular employment, type of employer by province (Percentage)**

Type of Employer	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Central Government	7.9	22.8	17.3	10.8	9.9	4.4	14.0	11.5	9.3	10.2
Provincial Administrator	9.9	7.0	5.9	4.8	3.8	6.4	12.6	3.0	5.7	6.2
Local/Regional Authority	3.1		4.3	4.7	2.7	5.1	9.7	3.8	2.9	3.9
Public Corporation	3.1	5.0	4.1	6.7	5.1	7.0	3.3	3.6	6.6	5.3
Private Sector Employment	69.2	62.9	57.5	64.4	61.9	66.1	53.3	69.8	63.3	64.1
Non-profit Institution	0.9		0.6	0.6	0.3	0.7	1.2	0.3	1.3	0.8
Self-employment	2.3		0.5	1.7	2.7	0.5	0.2	0.7	2.8	1.8
Private Household	3.5	2.3	9.5	6.3	13.6	9.6	5.7	7.4	8.0	7.6
Other	0.2		0.3			0.1			0.1	0.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	1 076 300	85 500	591 300	1 159 200	627 400	699 500	405 500	725 500	2 033 800	7 403 900

Sample number = 7 505

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.6: Regular employment, type of economic sector by race: All (Percentage)

Type of Economic Sector	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	16.7	13.4		3.1	12.2
Mining	9.7	1.0	0.6	5.4	7.3
Manufacturing	15.1	25.0	36.3	13.0	16.6
Electricity & Water	1.6	1.9	0.9	3.0	1.9
Construction	5.6	5.3	4.6	5.8	5.6
Wholesale & Retail	9.8	13.5	16.4	11.5	10.9
Restaurant & Hotel/Entertainment	2.7	2.3	1.2	2.5	2.6
Transport & Communication	4.7	6.0	5.7	12.0	6.7
Finance	1.2	2.7	4.6	11.8	4.2
Educational Services	7.3	7.3	12.0	8.3	7.8
Medical Services	5.2	5.6	4.8	6.6	5.6
Legal Services	1.5	1.2	2.7	3.2	2.0
Domestic Services	13.4	3.6	0.3	0.6	8.5
Armed Forces	2.3	2.4	3.3	2.2	2.3
Other Services	3.2	8.1	6.6	10.0	5.6
Other	0.0	0.6		0.8	0.3
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	4 399 300	846 400	294 200	1 863 400	7 403 300

Sample number = 7 506

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.6.1: Regular employment, type of economic sector by race: Male (Percentage)

Type of Economic Sector	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
-------------------------	---------	----------	--------	-------	-----

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.6.1: Regular employment, type of economic sector by race: Male (Percentage)**

Type of Economic Sector	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	19.8	14.0		4.3	14.6
Mining	15.6	1.8	1.0	7.9	11.6
Manufacturing	16.9	25.9	33.8	16.9	18.6
Electricity & Water	2.5	3.4	0.9	4.1	2.9
Construction	8.6	8.8	6.7	8.7	8.6
Wholesale & Retail	9.4	10.3	17.2	9.8	9.9
Restaurant & Hotel/Entertainment	1.9	1.4	0.9	2.2	1.8
Transport & Communication	6.9	9.7	8.4	15.1	9.3
Finance	1.0	2.3	2.9	9.6	3.4
Educational Services	4.2	4.8	10.4	3.5	4.4
Medical Services	2.3	2.0	2.3	2.9	2.4
Legal Services	1.7	1.6	2.4	2.6	2.0
Domestic Services	2.1	0.2	0.5	0.5	1.4
Armed Forces	3.4	3.5	4.2	2.5	3.3
Other Services	3.5	9.8	8.5	8.4	5.6
Other	0.1	0.6		1.0	0.4
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	2 687 600	474 100	188 100	1 096 400	4 446 200

Sample number = 4 497

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.6.2: Regular employment, type of economic sector by race: Female (Percentage)

Type of Economic Sector	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	11.6	12.6		1.5	8.7
Mining	0.5			1.8	0.8
Manufacturing	12.3	24.0	40.7	7.5	13.6
Electricity & Water	0.0		0.8	1.4	0.4
Construction	0.9	0.8	0.8	1.8	1.1
Wholesale & Retail	10.4	17.7	15.2	13.9	12.4
Restaurant & Hotel/Entertainment	4.0	3.5	1.6	3.1	3.6
Transport & Communication	1.3	1.3	0.8	7.4	2.9
Finance	1.4	3.3	7.6	14.9	5.4
Educational Services	12.2	10.5	15.0	15.1	12.8
Medical Services	9.8	10.2	9.1	12.0	10.4
Legal Services	1.2	0.7	3.4	4.0	1.9
Domestic Services	31.0	8.0		0.7	19.2
Armed Forces	0.4	1.0	1.6	1.8	0.9
Other Services	2.8	5.9	3.3	12.4	5.7
Other		0.5		0.5	0.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	1 711 600	372 300	106 200	767 100	2 957 200

Sample number = 3 009

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.6.3: Regular employment, type of economic sector by province (Percentage)

Type of Economic Sector	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	13.1	6.0	13.4	13.8	21.3	26.2	18.9	14.6	1.0	12.2
Mining	0.5	10.4	1.8	1.4	15.5	13.6	3.1	30.4	3.5	7.3
Manufacturing	19.4	3.4	13.8	28.0	7.2	9.3	8.4	7.2	20.2	16.6
Electricity & Water	1.5	4.9	2.7	1.4	2.3	4.1	2.3	0.9	1.6	1.9
Construction	6.4	4.6	4.3	6.2	5.2	5.3	5.5	2.2	6.7	5.6
Wholesale & Retail	11.7	11.5	13.7	8.0	11.2	7.3	9.1	10.8	12.9	10.9
Restaurant & Hotel/Entertainment	2.7	2.4	1.8	2.5	1.4	2.6	3.9	3.1	2.6	2.6
Transport	8.1	14.3	8.3	5.8	3.8	2.9	6.6	3.0	9.3	6.7
Finance	5.2		2.3	2.4	2.6	1.6	1.4	1.2	8.3	4.2
Educational Services	7.2	8.4	9.6	8.3	7.4	7.2	15.3	6.2	6.5	7.8
Medical Services	6.1	4.7	6.0	4.9	4.8	3.2	7.2	5.0	6.6	5.6
Legal Services	1.7	6.3	2.7	1.7	2.1	1.2	1.4	3.6	1.6	2.0
Domestic Services	4.4	4.6	10.7	7.8	12.4	11.9	6.5	8.5	8.7	8.5
Armed Forces	1.9	9.4	2.2	3.0	1.3	1.7	3.0	1.6	2.6	2.3
Other Services	9.6	9.2	6.5	4.4	1.5	1.6	7.2	1.4	7.5	5.6
Other	0.5		0.2	0.2		0.1	0.3	0.3	0.5	0.3
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	1 076 300	85 500	589 100	1 161 800	627 400	700 600	405 500	725 500	2 031 700	7 403 300

Sample number = 7 506

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.7: Regular employment, union membership by province and race: All (Percentage)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	24.7	156 400	40.1	553 300	0.0	1 800	8.4	347 800	27.3	1 059 200
N. Cape	39.1	24 600	31.1	59 800	.	.	.	.	33.5	84 500
E. Cape	30.6	346 800	38.8	65 700	.	.	22.2	137 900	29.5	550 400
Kwazulu	29.8	707 700	59.2	62 600	44.8	228 400	12.2	118 800	32.7	1 117 500
O.F.S.	28.0	486 700	10.0	17 800	.	.	16.9	108 900	25.5	613 400
E. Tvl	23.3	599 700	0.0	800	25.9	3 800	41.3	81 700	25.4	685 900
N. Tvl	20.2	321 500	.	.	.	.	12.0	76 600	18.6	398 100
N.W.	31.8	641 600	50.0	1 700	100.0	900	32.1	76 400	32.0	720 600
P.W.V.	38.2	1 002 500	45.8	70 500	17.5	53 400	15.2	884 200	27.8	2 010 500
All/S.A.	30.2	4 287 500	40.6	832 300	39.4	288 100	16.1	1 832 200	28.2	7 240 100

Sample number = 7 338

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.7.1: Regular employment, union membership by province and race: Male (Percentage)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	33.0	103 900	40.6	302 100	0.0	1 800	7.4	208 400	27.9	616 200
N. Cape	40.0	21 400	36.8	37 300	.	.	.	.	38.0	58 700
E. Cape	30.8	195 900	41.5	40 200	.	.	31.4	78 100	32.3	314 200
Kwazulu	33.5	390 400	54.8	34 600	45.4	142 600	16.0	73 500	35.3	641 100
O.F.S.	37.5	299 600	22.2	8 000	.	.	25.0	63 000	35.0	370 600
E. Tvl	27.2	404 400	.	.	34.4	2 700	58.7	47 000	30.5	454 100
N. Tvl	22.5	182 200	.	.	.	.	12.8	39 800	20.7	222 000
N.W.	38.8	448 300	50.0	1 700	100.0	900	38.5	53 100	38.9	504 000
P.W.V.	45.7	575 500	46.0	42 500	25.6	36 500	17.9	508 500	32.9	1 162 900
All/S.A.	35.6	2 621 600	41.6	466 400	41.2	184 600	19.7	1 071 300	32.6	4 343 800

Sample number = 4 394

NOTE 1: Based on: Questionnaire Section 8.2.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.7.2: Regular employment, union membership by province and race: Female (Percentage)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	8.2	52 500	39.5	251 100	.	.	9.9	139 400	26.4	443 000
N. Cape	33.3	3 200	21.7	22 600	.	.	.	.	23.2	25 800
E. Cape	30.5	150 900	34.6	25 500	.	.	10.3	59 700	25.8	236 100
Kwazulu	25.3	317 300	64.7	28 000	43.9	85 800	6.0	45 400	29.1	476 500
O.F.S.	13.0	187 100	0.0	9 800	.	.	5.7	45 900	11.1	242 800
E. Tvl	15.4	195 300	0.0	800	0.0	900	17.6	34 700	15.6	231 700
N. Tvl	17.2	139 400	.	.	.	.	11.1	36 800	16.0	176 100
N.W.	15.7	193 200	.	.	.	.	17.5	23 400	15.9	216 600
P.W.V.	28.1	427 000	45.5	28 000	0.0	16 800	11.7	375 700	20.8	847 600
All/S.A.	21.6	1 665 900	39.3	365 900	36.4	103 500	11.0	761 000	21.6	2 896 300

Sample number = 2 944

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.2.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.8: Casual employment, type of occupation by race: All (Percentage)



**Table 6.8: Casual employment, type of occupation by race: All (Percentage)**

Type of Occupation	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Professional/Technical	2.5	1.6	4.1	15.4	4.8
Managerial/Administrative	0.1	0.8	4.4	6.7	1.5
Clerical/Sales	5.6	11.0	33.6	36.8	12.6
Transport/Communication	4.0	1.6	8.3	0.6	3.2
Service	20.7	9.5	16.5	21.2	19.2
Farming & Related	6.2			0.6	4.2
Artisan/Apprentice, etc	9.7	9.4	16.6	6.4	9.2
Production, Mining, Supervisor	1.1	1.6		1.5	1.2
Operators, Semi-skilled	4.4	7.3	16.5	1.8	4.6
Labourers	45.5	57.0		3.2	38.3
Other	0.2			5.7	1.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	613 200	120 500	21 200	167 400	922 200

Sample number = 945

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.3.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.8.1: Casual employment, type of occupation by race: Male (Percentage)**

Type of Occupation	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Professional/Technical	2.9	1.7	6.2	13.3	4.3
Managerial/Administrative		1.7	6.6	4.8	1.1
Clerical/Sales	4.8	8.3	13.2	20.7	7.7
Transport/Communication	7.2	3.4	12.3	1.6	6.1
Service	6.1	8.4	12.3	25.4	9.2
Farming & Related	7.5			1.6	5.6
Artisan/Apprentice, etc	15.8	18.2	24.8	15.1	16.3
Production, Mining, Supervisor	1.2	3.4		1.6	1.5
Operators, Semi-skilled	4.7	8.6	24.6	2.4	5.5
Labourers	49.8	46.3		4.0	41.5
Other				9.5	1.3
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	330 700	57 300	14 200	64 200	466 400

Sample number = 485

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.3.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.8.2: Casual employment, type of occupation by race: Female (Percentage)**

Type of Occupation	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Professional/Technical	2.0	1.6	.	16.7	5.2
Managerial/Administrative	0.3	.	.	7.9	2.0
Clerical/Sales	6.4	13.5	75.0	46.8	17.6
Transport/Communication	0.4	.	.	.	0.2
Service	37.8	10.5	25.0	18.6	29.5
Farming & Related	4.7	.	.	.	2.9
Artisan/Apprentice, etc	2.5	1.6	.	1.0	2.0
Production, Mining, Supervisor	1.0	.	.	1.5	1.0
Operators, Semi-skilled	4.0	6.2	.	1.5	3.7
Labourers	40.5	66.7	.	2.8	34.9
Other	0.4	.	.	3.3	1.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	282 500	63 200	7 000	103 200	455 800

Sample number = 460

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.3.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.8.3: Casual employment, type of occupation by province (Percentage)

Type of Occupation	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Professional/Technical	4.2			4.4	4.7		1.2	3.1	9.4	4.8
Managerial/Administrative	3.9	9.0					1.4	2.7	1.8	1.5
Clerical/Sales	15.4		13.8	5.9	10.6	8.4	8.5	3.1	18.0	12.6
Transport/Communication	1.9	9.8	2.6	3.3		4.5	3.6		4.4	3.2
Serivce	14.8		3.8	10.8	31.6	25.5	20.9	51.7	27.2	19.2
Farming & Related			0.7	4.4		22.1	7.3	9.3	4.7	4.2
Artisan/Apprentice, etc	4.2	36.1	16.0	2.7	2.4	15.2	11.1	5.8	11.8	9.2
Production, Mining, Supervisor	2.2		0.7				1.2		2.2	1.2
Operators, Semi-skilled	7.7		4.7	5.4	2.3	2.4	3.6	2.7	3.6	4.6
Labourers	45.1	45.1	57.8	63.2	44.9	21.9	41.2	21.6	14.1	38.3
Other	0.7				3.6				2.9	1.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	157 100	10 900	122 100	163 600	36 900	42 700	73 500	33 100	282 400	922 200

Sample number = 945

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.3.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.9: Casual employment, type of employer by race: All (Percentage)**

Type of employer	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Central Government	1.3	.	.	5.8	1.9
Provincial Administrator	1.5	1.5	.	2.1	1.6
Local/Regional Authority	3.5	1.6	.	.	2.5
Public Corporation	3.0	.	4.1	4.9	3.0
Private Sector Employment	48.9	67.8	95.9	69.6	56.2
Non-profit Institution	1.1	1.6	.	2.4	1.4
Self-employment	3.3	0.7	.	12.1	4.5
Private Household	37.0	26.8	.	0.6	28.2
Other	0.4	.	.	2.4	0.7
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	613 200	120 500	21 200	167 400	922 200

Sample number = 945

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.3.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.9.1: Casual employment, type of employer by race: Male (Percentage)**

Type of employer	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Central Government	1.4	.	.	8.7	2.2
Provincial Administrator	2.2	1.6	.	.	1.8
Local/Regional Authority	3.5	1.7	.	.	2.7
Public Corporation	4.5	.	6.2	3.2	3.8
Private Sector Employment	61.9	85.2	93.8	70.6	66.9
Non-profit Institution	0.8	3.4	.	.	1.0
Self-employment	3.7	1.5	.	11.1	4.3
Private Household	21.5	6.6	.	1.6	16.2
Other	0.5	.	.	4.8	1.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	330 700	57 300	14 200	64 200	466 400

Sample number = 485

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.3.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.9.2: Casual employment, type of employer by race: Female (Percentage)**

Type of employer	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Central Government	1.3	.	.	4.0	1.7
Provincial Administrator	0.6	1.4	.	3.5	1.4
Local/Regional Authority	3.4	1.6	.	.	2.4
Public Corporation	1.3	.	.	5.9	2.1
Private Sector Employment	33.7	52.0	100.0	69.0	45.3
Non-profit Institution	1.3	.	.	3.8	1.7
Self-employment	2.8	.	.	12.8	4.6
Private Household	55.2	45.0	.	.	40.4
Other	0.3	.	.	1.0	0.4
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	282 500	63 200	7 000	103 200	455 800

Sample number = 460

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.3.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.9.3: Casual employment, type of employer by province (Percentage)

Type of Employer	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Central Government	1.0		1.4	1.1	4.6		1.2	3.1	3.3	2.0
Provincial Administrator	1.0				9.5	6.6	4.8		1.1	1.6
Local/Regional Authority	1.2		5.0	3.8		4.2	9.7			2.5
Public Corporation	2.6		4.5	4.4	2.3		2.4		2.9	3.0
Private Sector Employment	66.6	63.9	43.1	50.9	49.9	48.8	53.5	42.5	63.2	56.6
Non-profit Institution	3.3	9.0		2.7			1.2		0.4	1.4
Self-employment			7.2	2.2		6.3	4.0	5.8	7.5	4.5
Private Household	24.3	27.0	37.3	34.3	33.7	34.1	23.2	48.6	20.2	28.4
Other			1.4	0.5					1.4	0.7
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	157 100	10 900	122 100	163 600	36 900	42 700	73 500	33 100	282 400	922 200

Sample number = 945

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.3.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.10: Casual employment, type of economic sector by race: All (Percentage)



**Table 6.10: Casual employment, type of economic sector by race: All (Percentage)**

Type of Economic Sector	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	10.2	7.3		3.4	8.3
Mining	1.0				0.7
Manufacturing	9.9	11.4	20.7	6.9	9.8
Electricity & Water	1.6	0.8	4.1	1.8	1.6
Construction	16.1	14.4			12.6
Wholesale & Retail	12.0	19.2	38.0	29.3	16.7
Restaurant & Hotel/Entertainment	3.0	3.9	4.1	21.2	6.4
Transport & Communication	4.2	1.6	12.4	5.2	4.2
Finance	0.3	0.8		7.0	1.6
Educational Services	1.5		4.1	9.7	2.8
Medical Services	0.8	1.6	4.1	4.3	1.6
Legal Services	0.3			0.6	0.3
Domestic Services	34.0	28.5		1.2	26.6
Armed Forces				1.2	0.2
Other Services	4.9	10.3	8.3	6.4	6.0
Other	0.3		4.1	1.8	0.6
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	613 200	120 500	21 200	167 400	922 200

Sample number = 945

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.3.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.10.1: Casual employment, type of economic sector by race: Male (Percentage)

Type of Economic Sector	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	6.5	3.4	.	4.8	5.7
Mining	1.5	.	.	.	1.1
Manufacturing	11.4	15.4	24.8	6.4	11.7
Electricity & Water	2.9	.	6.2	3.2	2.7
Construction	26.9	30.4	.	.	22.9
Wholesale & Retail	12.2	22.0	32.1	27.0	16.1
Restaurant & Hotel/Entertainment	4.6	.	.	22.1	6.3
Transport & Communication	7.1	3.4	18.5	13.5	7.9
Finance	0.6	.	.	3.2	0.9
Educational Services	1.4	.	6.2	7.2	2.2
Medical Services	0.9	1.7	.	1.6	1.0
Legal Services	0.6	.	.	.	0.4
Domestic Services	17.4	5.1	.	3.2	13.5
Armed Forces	.	.	.	3.2	0.4
Other Services	5.4	18.5	6.2	1.6	6.5
Other	0.6	.	6.2	3.2	1.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	330 700	57 300	14 200	64 200	466 400

Sample number = 485

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.3.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.10.2: Casual employment, type of economic sector by race: Female (Percentage)

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.3.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.10.2: Casual employment, type of economic sector by race: Female (Percentage)**

Type of Economic Sector	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	14.5	10.9	.	2.5	11.4
Mining	0.3	.	.	.	0.2
Manufacturing	8.0	7.8	12.5	7.2	8.1
Electricity & Water	.	1.6	.	1.0	0.5
Construction	3.5	.	.	.	2.3
Wholesale & Retail	11.8	16.6	50.0	30.7	17.9
Restaurant & Hotel/Entertainment	1.1	7.5	12.5	20.6	6.8
Transport & Communication	0.7	.	.	.	0.4
Finance	.	1.6	.	9.4	2.4
Educational Services	1.6	.	.	11.3	3.7
Medical Services	0.7	1.6	12.5	5.9	2.2
Legal Services	.	.	.	1.0	0.2
Domestic Services	53.4	49.7	.	.	41.3
Other Services	4.3	3.0	12.5	9.4	5.6
Other	.	.	.	1.0	0.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	282 500	63 200	7 000	103 200	455 810

Sample number = 460

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.3.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.10.3: Casual employment, type of economic sector by province (Percentage)

Type of Economic Sector	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V	All/S.A.
Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	6.7		8.7	13.6	13.8	13.8	14.5	23.6	1.4	8.3
Mining				0.5					1.8	0.7
Manufacturing	10.5		11.2	12.0	8.3	2.1	10.9	2.7	9.8	9.8
Electricity & Water	0.6			2.7		2.4	2.6		2.2	1.6
Construction	9.6	27.0	14.5	10.9	4.6	21.5	23.0	10.8	11.1	12.6
Wholesale & Retail	19.0	9.0	16.8	12.9	18.4	10.4	9.7	2.7	21.9	16.7
Restaurant & Hotel/Entertainment	7.7		2.1	6.0	9.5		2.6	2.7	10.1	6.4
Transport	4.9		1.6	6.5	2.3	2.4	4.8	2.7	4.3	4.2
Finance	1.6						1.2		4.0	1.6
Educational Services	3.9		0.7	3.3	4.7		1.2	3.1	3.6	2.8
Medical Services	3.2		1.6	0.5		2.1	1.2		1.8	1.6
Legal Services				0.5					0.7	0.3
Domestic Services	25.0	36.1	36.7	24.5	33.7	41.0	18.3	48.6	20.3	26.6
Armed Forces									0.7	0.2
Other Services	7.4	27.9	4.6	5.4	4.8	4.2	8.5	3.1	5.4	6.0
Other			1.6	0.5			1.4		0.7	0.6
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	157 100	10 900	122 100	163 600	36 900	42 700	73 500	33 100	282 400	922 200

Sample number = 945

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.3.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**CHAPTER SIX**

**EMPLOYMENT AND INCOME EARNING ACTIVITIES**

**Section 6.11-6.11.3**

**Self-Employment**

## Section 8.6: Other Forms of Self-Employment

**Interviewer:** This section is to be completed for all persons. DO NOT limit questions to those aged 16 and older.

1. Apart from the work that we have already talked about, did anyone in this household do any other kind of work for an income in the past month? I am going to read from a list of possibilities. As I read each one, please indicate whether or not it was a source of income for the household in the past month?

Yes..... -1 → Write the activity's name and code in the grid below.  
 No..... -2 → Go to Section 8.7

**Probe for other forms of employment, no matter how small or temporary**

**If NO to all, GO TO SECTION 8.7**

**Interviewer:** List all the activities at household level and report their codes. Then ask Questions 3 to 9.

- Note:**
- In **Question 3** record person names and codes of up to 3 household members most involved in the activity. Put the name and code of the person who spends the most time in this activity first
  - In **Question 6**, Costs include how much was spent by members of the household in, for example, paying workers or travelling or buying stocks when involved in **the activity**. In other words what were the total expenses?
  - In **Question 8**, think about how much would it cost you to replace all the equipment and your stock if it were stolen?
  - In **Question 5,6,7,8 and 9** "0" (zero) is a valid answer

**Codes for Question 2**

01=Shopkeeper	09=Taxi operator
02=Selling goods on the street	10=Food processing
03=Shebeen operator	11=Weaving cloth
04=Herbalist	12=Building or repairing houses
05=Sewing and selling clothes	13=Collecting wood/fuel for sale
06=Repairing shoes	14=Child care
07=Traditional healer	15=Self-Employed Artisan
08=Helping to transport goods to market	16=Other (Specify)

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.
		Who are the household members who spend time in the	About how	How	How	On	What is	How many

## Codes for Question 2

01=Shopkeeper  
02=Selling goods on the street  
03=Shebeen operator  
04=Herbalist  
05=Sewing and selling clothes  
06=Repairing shoes  
07=Traditional healer  
08=Helping to transport goods to market

09=Taxi operator  
10=Food processing  
11=Weaving cloth  
12=Building or repairing houses  
13=Collecting wood/fuel for sale  
14=Child care  
15=Self-Employed Artisan  
16=Other (Specify)

02= Selling goods on the street  
03= Shebeen operator  
04= Herbalist  
05= Sewing and selling clothes  
06= Repairing shoes  
07= Traditional healer  
08= Helping to transport goods to market

11=Weaving cloth  
12=Building or repairing houses  
13=Collecting wood/fuel for sale  
14=Child care  
15=Self-Employed Artisan  
16=Other (Specify)

[illegible]



**Table 6.11: Types of non-agricultural self employment by race: All (Percentage)**

Activities	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Shopkeeper	9.3	11.6	16.3	8.5	9.6
Selling goods on street	27.4	19.3	16.4	7.4	23.1
Shebeen operator	12.1	8.9	.	.	9.3
Herbalist	1.7	.	.	0.5	1.3
Sewing and selling clothes	10.8	15.0	12.7	11.1	11.2
Repairing shoes	1.8	1.5	.	0.7	1.5
Traditional healer	2.0	.	.	.	1.5
Helping transport goods to market	0.6	.	2.0	0.5	0.6
Taxi operator	5.3	4.3	2.0	.	4.2
Food processing	2.5	4.5	4.0	10.4	4.0
Weaving cloth	2.1	.	.	.	1.5
Building or repairing houses	6.9	4.5	14.1	5.5	6.8
Collecting wood/fuel for sale	1.2	.	.	.	0.9
Child care	1.1	.	.	3.4	1.4
Self-employed artisan	7.2	15.9	10.1	19.7	9.9
Professional/Technical	.	.	.	8.4	1.4
Clerical/Sales	5.1	10.3	10.2	9.7	6.4
Service	1.1	.	4.0	5.0	1.8
Restaurant & Hotel/Entertainment	0.6	3.0	2.0	6.1	1.7
Manufacturing	0.7	.	2.0	1.4	0.8
Other	0.6	1.3	4.0	1.6	0.9
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	802 300	65 400	43 400	186 600	1 097 700

Sample number = 1 139

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.4 and 8.6.

NOTE 2: Self-employed artisan = qualified and unqualified artisans.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.11.1: Types of non-agricultural self employment by race: Male (Percentage)**

Activity	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Shopkeeper	10.8	8.4	19.6	11.6	11.6

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.4 and 8.6.

NOTE 2: Self-employed artisan = qualified and unqualified artisans.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.11.1: Types of non-agricultural self employment by race: Male (Percentage)**

Activity	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Shopkeeper	10.8	8.4	19.6	11.6	11.6
Selling goods on the street	17.3	17.2	12.3	5.5	14.6
Shebeen operator	6.6	2.9	.	.	4.6
Herbalist	3.0	.	.	.	2.0
Sewing and selling clothes	1.9	5.9	2.4	3.6	2.6
Repairing shoes	4.2	2.9	.	.	3.0
Traditional healer	2.5	.	.	.	1.6
Helping transport goods to market	1.1	.	2.4	0.9	1.1
Taxi operator	12.4	8.3	2.4	.	8.9
Food processing	1.6	.	4.9	6.8	2.9
Weaving cloth	0.3	.	.	.	0.2
Building or repairing houses	16.0	8.8	17.0	9.2	14.4
Collecting wood/fuel for sale	1.3	.	.	.	0.9
Self-employed artisan	14.0	31.2	12.2	26.5	18.1
Professional/Technical	.	.	.	8.7	1.9
Clerical/Sales	2.3	5.9	12.3	10.3	5.1
Services	1.4	.	4.9	7.0	2.8
Restaurant & Hotel/Entertainment	1.4	5.9	2.4	6.3	2.9
Manufacturing	0.8	.	2.4	2.3	1.2
Other	0.9	2.5	4.9	1.4	1.4
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	331 400	33 400	36 100	111 500	512 400

Sample number = 527

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.4 and 8.6.

NOTE 2: Self-employed artisans = qualified and unqualified artisans.

NOTE 3: Gender refers to the person most involved in the activity.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.11.2: Types of non-agricultural self employment by race: Female (Percentage)

Activity	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Shopkeeper	8.3	14.9		3.8	8.1
Selling goods on the street	34.6	21.4	36.8	10.2	31.4
Shebeen operator	15.9	15.0			13.9
Herbalist	0.8			1.4	0.8
Sewing and selling clothes	17.0	24.5	62.2	22.4	19.1
Repairing shoes				1.7	0.2
Traditional healer	1.8				1.4
Helping transport goods to market	0.2				0.2
Taxi operator	0.2				0.2
Food processing	3.2	9.2		15.7	5.2
Weaving cloth	3.4				2.8
Building or repairing houses	0.6				0.5
Collecting wood/fuel for sale	1.1				0.9
Child care	1.9			8.5	2.7
Self-employed artisan	2.4			9.5	3.2
Other	0.4			2.0	0.6
Professional/Technical				8.0	1.0
Clerical/Sales	7.0	14.9		8.8	7.7
Services	0.8			2.0	1.0
Restaurant & Hotel/Entertainment				5.8	0.8
Manufacturing	0.6				0.5
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	470 800	32 000	7 300	75 100	585 200

Sample number = 612

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.4 and 8.6.

NOTE 2: Self-employed artisans = qualified and unqualified artisans.

NOTE 3: Gender refers to the person most involved in the activity.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.11.3: Types of non-agricultural self employment by province (Percentage)**

	W.C.	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
--	------	---------	---------	---------	--------	--------	--------	------	--------	----------

NOTE 2: Self-employed artisans = qualified and unqualified artisans.

NOTE 3: Gender refers to the person most involved in the activity.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.11.3: Types of non-agricultural self employment by province (Percentage)

Activity	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Shopkeeper	8.2	10.6	7.9	12.7	18.1	9.6	3.2	12.0	7.2	9.6
Selling goods on street	13.0	31.3	28.8	16.0	15.4	34.1	46.1	18.7	19.6	23.1
Shebeen operator	7.5	30.6	8.8	8.7	12.6	9.1	9.5	7.3	9.6	9.3
Herbalist			2.5	3.6	1.4		0.9		0.4	1.3
Sewing and selling clothes	15.0		10.1	13.1	10.6	12.7	7.2	7.5	10.7	11.2
Repairing shoes	0.9			1.1	4.9	2.4		3.1	1.9	1.5
Traditional healer			1.0	2.2	1.4	0.8	4.0	2.8	0.8	1.5
Helping transport goods to market			0.8	0.4	1.4	0.8	0.8	1.6	0.4	0.6
Taxi operator	1.7		7.4	3.6	6.9	5.6	0.8	10.0	3.5	4.2
Food processing	11.2		1.6	5.5	5.7	0.8	1.7	4.7	2.7	4.0
Waving cloth			1.6	5.5				2.8		1.5
Building or repairing houses	2.6		11.1	7.6	6.3	5.9	7.5	5.9	6.9	6.8
Collecting wood/fuel for sale			1.6	1.8	1.4		1.6	1.4		0.9
Child care	2.3			1.1		0.9		1.4	3.1	1.4
Self-employed artisan	16.3		9.1	6.5	4.9	12.5	7.2	8.8	12.6	9.9
Professional/Technical	1.3			0.4					5.0	1.4
Clerical/Sales	12.0	7.6	5.5	4.7	3.5	2.3	7.1	7.3	7.6	6.4
Services	1.3		1.4	1.8	2.1	1.6			3.5	1.8
Restaurant & Hotel/Entertainment	1.7			1.5	2.1		0.8	1.4	3.8	1.7
Manufacturing	1.3			1.1	1.5	0.8		1.4	0.8	0.8
Other	3.6		0.8	1.1			1.6	1.6		0.9
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	113 700	12 600	110 700	244 500	61 400	114 100	112 300	62 700	265 500	1 097 700

Sample number = 1 139

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 8.1.4 and 8.6.

NOTE 2: Self-employed artisan = qualified and unqualified artisans.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

# **CHAPTER SIX**

## **EMPLOYMENT AND INCOME EARNING ACTIVITIES**

**Section 6.12-6.14.2**

**Transportation**

## Section 8.4: Transport

**Ask all who are currently employed for a wage, salary or in-kind payment (Refer to people listed in Sections 8.2 and 8.3).**

**Interviewer:** First list the people employed and then ask them Questions 3 to 5.

[illegible]

Table 6.12: Average transportation time taken to work (one way) for those in regular/casual employment by province and race (Minutes)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Minutes	Number	Minutes	Number	Minutes	Number	Minutes	Number	Minutes	Number
W. Cape	54	176 700	36	641 600	17	2 700	22	381 500	35	1 202 400
N. Cape	35	25 700	21	62 800	.	.	.	.	25	88 500
E. Cape	33	441 800	33	77 500	.	.	15	154 700	29	674 000
Kwazulu	36	827 100	22	68 400	55	254 600	17	119 700	37	1 269 800
O.F.S.	30	521 000	25	17 800	.	.	19	107 600	28	646 400
E. Tvl	38	632 600	.	.	20	3 600	33	82 700	37	718 900
N. Tvl	43	392 800	.	.	.	.	12	69 400	38	462 200
N.W.	33	651 700	4	1 700	5	900	14	76 400	30	730 700
P.W.V.	52	1 117 200	41	72 200	25	58 000	29	913 800	41	2 161 200
All/S.A.	40	4 786 500	34	941 900	49	319 900	24	1 905 900	36	7 954 100

Sample number = 8 079

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.4.3.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.12.1: Average transportation time taken to work (one way) for those in regular/casual employment by location and race (Minutes)

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Minutes	Number	Minutes	Number	Minutes	Number	Minutes	Number	Minutes	Number
Rural	34	2 545 400	7	85 300	16	3 600	17	118 600	33	2 752 900
Urban	38	979 200	27	315 600	47	159 300	17	516 000	31	1 970 000
Metropolitan	52	1 261 900	43	541 000	51	157 000	28	1 271 300	41	3 231 200
All/S.A.	40	4 786 500	34	941 900	49	319 900	24	1 905 900	36	7 954 100

Sample number = 8 079

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.4.3.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 6.13: Average transportation cost (to and from work) for those in regular/casual employment by province and race (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Cost	Number	Cost	Number	Cost	Number	Cost	Number	Cost	Number
W. Cape	4.30	168 100	3.30	648 400	3.70	2 700	4.30	366 100	3.70	1 185 400
N. Cape	1.10	25 700	1.30	66 700	.	.	.	.	1.20	92 400
E. Cape	2.60	448 400	5.10	79 500	.	.	3.80	159 300	3.20	687 200
Kwazulu	3.10	829 800	3.80	68 400	5.60	253 800	5.10	118 800	3.90	1 270 700
O.F.S.	1.20	518 400	1.90	17 800	.	.	5.40	107 600	1.90	643 800
E. Tvl	2.60	647 100	0.00	800	8.90	1 800	5.30	83 700	2.90	733 500
N. Tvl	2.20	393 700	.	.	.	.	3.50	76 600	2.40	470 300
N.W.	2.00	658 900	0.00	1 700	0.00	900	5.10	76 400	2.30	738 000
P.W.V.	4.20	1 188 900	9.10	70 500	5.60	58 000	8.50	918 900	6.10	2 236 300
All/S.A.	2.90	4 879 000	3.70	953 800	5.60	317 200	6.40	1 907 500	3.90	8 057 600

Sample number = 8 187

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.4.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 6.13.1: Average transportation cost (to and from work) for those in regular/casual employment by location and race (Rand)

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Cost	Number	Cost	Number	Cost	Number	Cost	Number	Cost	Number
Rural	1.90	2 570 500	0.00	87 200	6.30	1 800	5.60	131 400	2.00	2 790 900
Urban	3.30	988 500	1.50	321 400	5.60	158 400	4.20	509 300	3.40	1 977 600
Metropolitan	4.40	1 320 100	5.60	545 200	5.60	157 000	7.40	1 266 800	5.80	3 289 100
All/S.A.	2.90	4 879 000	3.70	953 800	5.60	317 200	6.40	1 907 500	3.90	8 057 600

Sample number = 8 187

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.4.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.14: Modes of transportation (to and from work) by race (Percentage)**

Race	Bus	Taxi	Train	Bicycle	Car	Walk	Other	Total	Number
African	12.8	32.0	5.6	1.1	8.1	39.9	0.3	100.0	5 492 100
Coloured	6.0	26.4	13.0	1.3	25.7	27.5	0.0	100.0	1 072 400
Indian	16.4	6.4	0.3	0.3	67.7	8.9	0.0	100.0	330 500
White	5.1	0.4	1.8	1.2	82.0	8.6	1.0	100.0	2 016 100
All	10.4	23.2	5.5	1.1	29.2	30.2	0.4	100.0	8 911 000

Sample number = 8 335

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.4.5.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.14.1: Modes of transportation (to and from work) by province (Percentage)**

Province	Bus	Taxi	Train	Bicycle	Car	Walk	Other	Total	Number
W. Cape	4.0	17.3	19.6	0.9	39.4	18.4	0.4	100.0	1 366 600
N. Cape	4.1	17.6	1.0	7.4	27.1	41.7	1.0	100.0	97 300
E. Cape	7.4	31.5	1.5	0.1	26.8	32.2	0.5	100.0	717 500
Kwazulu	14.4	25.7	1.6	0.5	25.5	32.2	0.2	100.0	1 503 300
O.F.S.	4.8	21.4	0.0	2.2	20.3	51.0	0.4	100.0	657 200
E. Tvl	25.1	15.9	0.0	0.9	16.3	41.3	0.5	100.0	811 500
N. Tvl	14.9	18.0	0.7	2.0	22.8	41.6	0.0	100.0	484 600
N.W.	12.9	18.6	2.9	3.6	10.9	50.8	0.3	100.0	812 300
P.W.V.	7.5	28.4	6.4	0.4	40.4	16.2	0.7	100.0	2 460 700
All/S.A.	10.4	23.2	5.5	1.1	29.2	30.2	0.4	100.0	8 911 000

Sample number = 8 335

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.4.5.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 6.14.2: Modes of transportation (to and from work) by location: African and Coloured (Percentage)**

Race & Location	Bus	Taxi	Train	Bicycle	Car	Walk	Other	Total	Number
African									
Rural	16.0	20.0	1.0	1.4	8.4	52.9	0.2	100.0	2 734 300
Urban	7.9	44.5	2.2	1.7	8.9	34.6	0.3	100.0	1 180 300
Metropolitan	10.9	43.5	16.2	0.3	7.1	21.4	0.5	100.0	1 577 500
All	12.8	32.0	5.6	1.1	8.1	39.9	0.3	100.0	5 492 100
Coloured									
Rural	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.9	9.8	89.2	0.0	100.0	88 200
Urban	2.9	26.5	1.8	2.6	16.3	49.6	0.3	100.0	331 000
Metropolitan	8.4	29.9	20.5	0.6	32.6	8.0	0.0	100.0	653 100
All	6.0	26.4	13.0	1.3	25.7	27.5	0.0	100.0	1 072 400

6 211

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.4.3.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

# **CHAPTER SEVEN**

# **REMITTANCES**

## Section 6: Remittances and Marital Maintenance

### 6.1 Income Received from Absent Members of the Household or from Any Other Person.

1. Are there any members of this household who have been away for more than half of the last month, (or any other persons) who send money or food, or make any other kind of contribution to this household?

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→ Go to Section 6.2

**Interviewer: SAY:** "Please name each person who has been away for more than half of the last month (and any other person) who sends money or food or makes some other kind of contribution to the household (record names in the column provided under Question 2).

**Next:.** Ask Questions 3 to 6.

- Note:**
- For **Question 4a** it is possible that the individual sending money or goods has more than one type of relationship with the household. (For instance a person may be husband, father, and grandfather)  
In these cases use the first applicable code from the box.
  - For **Questions 4b and 4c:** Fill in the name and the person code of the related household member from the household roster.
  - For **Questions 6a to 6c** we want to know how much do you think it would have cost the household to buy all the things that \_\_\_\_\_ brought to the household in the past 12 months?

#### Codes for Question 3

01=Pretoria-Witwatersrand-Vaal (PWV)	11=Other Urban Area in Natal
02=Durban	12=Other Urban Area in Orange Free State
03=Cape Town	13=Rural Area in Transvaal
04=Port Elizabeth	14=Rural Area in Cape Province
05=East London	15=Rural Area in Natal
06=Bloemfontein	16=Rural Area in Orange Free State
07=Kimberley	17=Homeland - Urban
08=Pietermaritzburg	18=Homeland - Rural
09=Other urban area in Transvaal	19=Another African country (Specify)

#### Codes for Question 4a

1=Wife/Husband/Partner
2=Father/Mother
3=Son/Daughter
4=Brother/Sister
5=Other Family
6=Not Related

2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
List names of people making	Where is _____	What is ____'s relationship to any member of the household ?	In the past 12 months, did _____ send or give money to the household?	In the past 12 months, did _____ make a contribution in kind to the household?

02=Durban  
03=Cape Town  
04=Port Elizabeth  
05=East London  
06=Bloemfontein  
07=Kimberley  
08=Polokwane

13=Rural Area in Transvaal  
14=Rural Area in Cape Province  
15=Rural Area in Natal  
16=Rural Area in Orange Free State  
17=Homeland - Urban  
18=Homeland - Rural

3=Son/Daughter  
4=Brother/Sister  
5=Other Family  
6=Not Related

2. List names of people making contributions to household  Names	3. Where is ____ now?  (Use code box)  Code	4. What is ____'s relationship to any member of the household ?			5. In the past 12 months, did ____ send or give money to the household?			6. In the past 12 months, did ____ make a contribution in kind to the household?		
		4a.  Relationship Code	4b.  Person Name	4c.  Person Code	5a. Number of times?  Number	5b. How much in total in the past 12 months? Rand	5c. How much in the past 30 days? Rand	6a. Number of times?  Number	6b. Total Value in the past 12 months? Rand	6c. Total value in the past 30 days? Rand



## 6.2 Absent Household Members and Other Persons Who Received Contributions from the Household.

1. Are there any members of this household who have been away for more than half of the last month, (or any other persons) who have received money, food, or any other assistance from this household in the past 12 months?

Yes .....-1

No .....-2

→ Go to Section 7

**Interviewer: SAY:** "Please name each person who has been away for more than half of the last month (and any other person) who received food or any other kind of assistance from the household (record names in the column provided under Question 2).

In the case of the entire family being supported (like in the case of migrant workers) WRITE "Family".

**Next:.** Ask Questions 3 to 6.

**Note:** • For Question 4a : Fill in the relationship code from the code box

- For Questions 4b and 4c: Fill in the name and the person code from the flap. If name and code are not on the flap, code 88
- For Questions 6a to 6c we want to know how much do you think it would have cost the household to buy all the things that \_\_\_\_\_ brought to the household in the past 12 months?

### Codes for Question 3

01=Pretoria-Witwatersrand-Vaal (PWV)	11=Other Urban Area in Natal
02=Durban	12=Other Urban Area in Orange Free State
03=Cape Town	13=Rural Area in Transvaal
04=Port Elizabeth	14=Rural Area in Cape Province
05=East London	15=Rural Area in Natal
06=Bloemfontein	16=Rural Area in Orange Free State
07=Kimberley	17=Homeland - Urban
08=Pietermaritzburg	18=Homeland - Rural
09=Other Urban Area in Transvaal	19=Another African country (Specify)
10=Other Urban Area in Cape Province	20=Other (Specify)

### Codes for Question 4a

1=Wife/Husband/Partner
2=Father/Mother
3=Son/Daughter
4=Brother/Sister
5=Other Family
6=Not Related
7=Family

2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
List names of people receiving	Where is _____	What is _____'s relationship to any member of the household ?	In the past 12 months, did the household send or give money to _____?	In the past 12 months, did the household make a contribution in kind to _____?

2. List names of people receiving contributions from the household  Names	3. Where is ____ now?  (Use code box)  Code	4. What is ____'s relationship to any member of the household ?			5. In the past 12 months, did the household send or give money to ____?			6. In the past 12 months, did the household make a contribution in kind to ____?		
		4a.  Relationship Code	4b.  Person Name	4c.  Person Code	5a. Number of times?  Number	5b. How much in total in the past 12 months? Rand	5c. How much in the past 30 days? Rand	6a. Number of times?  Number	6b. Total Value in the past 12 months? Rand	6c. Total value in the past 30 days? Rand

Table 7.1: Percentage of households receiving annual remittances in cash or kind from absent members and other persons by province and race

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	9.2	152 100	13.2	401 200	0.0	1 800	3.7	332 400	8.9	887 500
N. Cape	12.0	26 800	31.6	93 200	.	.	.	.	27.2	120 000
E. Cape	34.1	1 018 300	9.5	51 900	.	.	2.8	110 300	30.1	1 180 500
Kwazulu	38.7	1 049 000	7.5	43 700	11.2	188 100	4.5	101 600	31.4	1 382 400
O.F.S.	30.8	561 800	10.5	18 900	.	.	1.4	93 200	26.2	671 800
E. Tvl	23.8	654 700	0.0	800	0.0	2 800	6.1	67 400	22.0	725 700
N. Tvl	46.1	834 200	.	.	.	.	4.3	70 400	42.9	904 600
N.W.	23.4	735 100	0.0	1 700	0.0	900	5.5	74 400	21.7	812 100
P.W.V.	10.0	1 060 900	1.7	49 200	2.7	34 600	5.4	701 400	7.9	1 846 200
All/S.A.	28.9	6 092 700	14.2	658 700	9.6	228 200	4.5	1 551 100	22.8	8 530 800

Sample number = 8 848

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 6.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 7.2: Percentage of households receiving annual remittances in cash or kind from absent members and other persons by province and location: African**

Province	Rural		Urban		Metropolitan		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	0.0	12 900	0.0	11 800	10.9	127 400	9.2	152 100
N. Cape	0.0	2 100	13.0	24 600	.	.	12.0	26 800
E. Cape	39.8	799 400	14.6	120 400	12.0	98 500	34.1	1 018 300
Kwazulu	45.8	787 400	20.3	166 200	12.1	95 300	38.7	1 049 000
O.F.S.	25.7	250 900	34.9	310 800	.	.	30.8	561 800
E. Tvl	24.9	517 000	19.8	137 700	.	.	23.8	654 700
N. Tvl	47.4	779 900	27.9	54 300	.	.	46.1	834 200
N.W.	23.9	680 800	17.0	54 300	.	.	23.4	735 100
P.W.V.	25.0	4 100	11.2	201 700	9.7	855 000	10.0	1 060 900
All/S.A	36.6	3 834 500	21.9	1 081 900	10.2	1 176 300	28.9	6 092 700

Sample number = 6 533

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 6.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 7.3: Average annual value of remittances received in cash or kind from absent members and other persons by province and race (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Amount	Number	Amount	Number	Amount	Number	Amount	Number	Amount	Number
W. Cape	1 097.00	13 900	4 081.00	53 000	0.00	0	7 528.00	12 300	4 090.00	79 200
N. Cape	6 400.00	3 200	3 980.00	29 400	.	.	.	.	4 218.00	32 600
E. Cape	2 158.00	347 500	368.00	4 900	.	.	7 790.00	3 100	2 182.00	355 500
Kwazulu	3 195.00	405 700	4 275.00	3 300	4 468.00	21 000	4 020.00	4 500	3 273.00	434 600
O.F.S.	2 558.00	173 000	2 600.00	1 800	.	.	5 340.00	1 300	2 579.00	176 100
E. Tvl	3 436.00	155 900	0.00	0	0.00	0	7 650.00	4 100	3 544.00	159 900
N. Tvl	2 894.00	384 600	.	.	.	.	3 580.00	3 100	2 899.00	387 700
N.W.	3 323.00	172 000	0.00	0	.	0	12 300.00	4 100	3 531.00	176 100
P.W.V.	1 701.00	106 500	1 400.00	800	10 800.00	900	6 875.00	37 800	3 096.00	146 100
All/S.A.	2 795.00	1 762 300	3 808.00	93 200	4 738.00	21 900	7 033.00	70 200	3 018.00	1 947 700

Sample number = 2 145

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 6.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 7.4: Average annual value of remittances received in cash or kind from absent members and other persons by province and location:**  
African (Rand)

Province	Rural		Urban		Metropolitan		All	
	Amount	Number	Amount	Number	Amount	Number	Amount	Number
W. Cape	.	.	.	.	1 097.00	13 900	1 097.00	13 900
N. Cape	.	.	6 400.00	3 200	.	.	6 400.00	3 200
E. Cape	2 210.00	318 200	1 469.00	17 600	1 785.00	11 800	2 158.00	347 500
Kwazulu	3 205.00	360 300	3 500.00	33 800	1 970.00	11 600	3 195.00	405 700
O.F.S.	2 909.00	64 600	2 349.00	108 400	.	.	2 558.00	173 000
E. Tvl	3 761.00	128 600	1 899.00	27 200	.	.	3 436.00	155 900
N. Tvl	2 938.00	369 500	1 816.00	15 100	.	.	2 894.00	384 600
N.W.	3 299.00	162 800	3 750.00	9 200	.	.	3 323.00	172 000
P.W.V.	1 200.00	1 000	1 930.00	22 500	1 645.00	82 900	1 701.00	106 500
All/S.A.	2 956.00	1 405 000	2 432.00	237 100	1 627.00	120 200	2 795.00	1 762 300

Sample number = 1 954

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 6.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 7.5: Percentage of households sending annual remittances in cash or kind to other persons by province and race

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	45.1	152 100	8.3	401 200	0.0	1 800	6.5	332 400	13.9	887 500
N. Cape	28.0	26 800	11.6	93 200	.	.	.	.	15.2	120 000
E. Cape	10.6	1 018 300	9.5	51 900	.	.	12.5	110 300	10.7	1 180 500
Kwazulu	15.2	1 049 000	0.0	43 700	5.6	188 100	5.4	101 600	12.7	1 382 400
O.F.S.	21.6	561 800	0.0	18 900	.	.	15.5	93 200	20.2	671 800
E. Tvl	13.4	654 700	100.0	800	0.0	2 800	4.5	67 400	12.6	725 700
N. Tvl	7.4	834 200	.	.	.	.	1.4	70 400	6.9	904 600
N.W.	22.5	735 100	50.0	1 700	100.0	900	4.1	74 400	21.0	812 100
P.W.V.	43.4	1 060 900	10.3	49 200	5.4	34 600	7.4	701 400	28.2	1 846 200
All/S.A.	20.4	6 092 700	8.5	658 700	5.8	228 200	7.4	1 551 100	16.7	8 530 800

Sample number = 8 848

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 6.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 7.6: Percentage of households sending annual remittances in cash or kind to other persons by province and location: African**

Province	Rural		Urban		Metropolitan		All/S.A.	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	91.7	12 900	63.6	11 800	38.7	127 400	45.1	152 100
N. Cape	0.0	2 100	30.4	24 600	.	.	28.0	26 800
E. Cape	8.7	799 400	19.5	120 400	15.2	98 500	10.6	1 018 300
Kwazulu	13.1	787 400	27.9	166 200	10.3	95 300	15.2	1 049 000
O.F.S.	26.7	250 900	17.4	310 800	.	.	21.6	561 800
E. Tvl	10.3	517 000	25.1	137 700	.	.	13.4	654 700
N. Tvl	5.7	779 900	31.1	54 300	.	.	7.4	834 200
N.W.	23.2	680 800	13.2	54 300	.	.	22.5	735 100
P.W.V.	0.0	4 100	42.1	201 700	44.0	855 000	43.4	1 060 900
All/S.A.	13.2	3 834 500	26.1	1 081 900	38.2	1 176 300	20.4	6 092 700

Sample number = 6 533

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 6.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 7.7: Average annual value of remittances in cash or kind sent to other persons by province and race (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Amount	Number	Amount	Number	Amount	Number	Amount	Number	Amount	Number
W. Cape	2 460.00	68 500	2 063.00	33 400	0.00	0	5 249.00	21 400	2 837.00	123 300
N. Cape	1 386.00	7 500	5 891.00	10 800	.	.	.	.	4 044.00	18 300
E. Cape	1 699.00	108 100	996.00	4 900	.	.	6 294.00	13 800	2 063.00	126 800
Kwazulu	1 663.00	159 500	0.00	0	7 793.00	10 500	13 117.00	5 400	2 385.00	175 500
O.F.S.	3 219.00	121 300	0.00	0	.	.	7 089.00	14 400	3 631.00	135 700
E. Tvl	2 078.00	87 800	500.00	800	0.00	0	1 173.00	3 100	2 033.00	91 700
N. Tvl	2 493.00	61 400	.	.	.	.	6 400.00	1 000	2 541.00	62 400
N.W.	1 345.00	165 300	4 800.00	800	2 400.00	900	1 873.00	3 100	1 378.00	170 200
P.W.V.	2 373.00	460 800	1 860.00	5 100	2 900.00	1 900	5 262.00	52 100	2 659.00	519 800
All/S.A.	2 153.00	1 240 300	2 708.00	55 800	6 726.00	13 300	5 669.00	114 300	2 499.00	1 423 800

Sample number = 1 462

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 6.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 7.8: Average value of remittances in cash or kind sent to other persons by province and location: African (Rand)**

Province	Rural		Urban		Metropolitan		All/S.A.	
	Amount	Number	Amount	Number	Amount	Number	Amount	Number
W. Cape	2 688.00	11 800	1 371.00	7 500	2 571.00	49 300	2 460.00	68 500
N. Cape	.	.	1 386.00	7 500	.	.	1 386.00	7 500
E. Cape	1 802.00	69 600	1 487.00	23 500	1 555.00	15 000	1 699.00	108 100
Kwazulu	1 251.00	103 400	2 639.00	46 400	1 389.00	9 800	1 663.00	159 500
O.F.S.	4 596.00	67 100	1 516.00	54 200	.	.	3 219.00	121 300
E. Tvl	2 084.00	53 300	2 067.00	34 600	.	.	2 078.00	87 800
N. Tvl	1 851.00	44 500	4 183.00	16 900	.	.	2 493.00	61 400
N.W.	1 352.00	158 100	1 186.00	7 200	.	.	1 345.00	165 300
P.W.V.	.	.	1 990.00	85 000	2 460.00	375 800	2 373.00	460 800
All/S.A.	1 973.00	507 700	2 052.00	282 700	2 418.00	449 900	2 153.00	1 240 300

Sample number = 1 286

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 6.2.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

# **CHAPTER EIGHT**

## **EXPENDITURE, FOOD CONSUMPTION AND DEBT STRUCTURE**

### Section 3: Food Spending and Consumption

In this section, we look at the patterns of food consumption for all the people in the household. This should include all the food that members of the household have bought and eaten. It should not include food that has been bought for resale or exchanging for commercial purposes.

#### Interviewer :

**First:** Introduce this section by saying :

"I have a list of different kinds of food that people may have eaten during the past week or month . As I read each one, I'd like you to tell me whether or not it was bought or consumed in this household during the past month. "

**Then :** Ask Question 1 for each item on the list.

**Next :** For each of the items marked with a YES to Question 1 : Ask Questions 2, 3, 4 and 5

- Note:**
- For **Question 3, 4 and 5**, record the amount in the verbal form in which the respondent gives it to you.
  - For **Question 4** we want to know whether any of those foods were received in the form of a gift or as payment for work that any member of the household did.
  - For **Question 5** we want to know if the household was able to consume any of the foods listed as a result of its being produced by the household

1. Was _____ bought or consumed by this household in the past month ?		2. Does the household usually buy or receive it weekly or monthly?	3. What was the amount spent OR quantity purchased in the last period?	4. How much was received as a gift or as a payment in the last period? (Value OR Quantity)	5. How much was eaten from own production in the last period? (Value OR Quantity)
	Eaten/Bought?				

1. Was _____ bought or consumed by this household in the past month?				2. Does the household usually buy or receive it weekly or monthly?		3. What was the amount spent OR quantity purchased in the last period?		4. How much was received as a gift or as a payment in the last period? (Value OR Quantity)		5. How much was eaten from own production in the last period? (Value OR Quantity)	
Code	Food name	Eaten/Bought?		Weekly -1 Monthly -2	Amount (Rand)	Amount (Quantity)	Amount (Rand)	Amount (Quantity)	Amount (Rand)	Amount (Quantity)	
		YES	NO								
01	Maize grain/samp (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
02	Mealie Meal/Maize Flour (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
03	Rice (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
04	White/Brown Bread (loaves)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
05	Wheat Flour (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
06	Breakfast Cereal (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
07	Dried Peas/Lentils/Beans (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
08	Potatoes (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
09	Tomatoes (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
10	Madumbes/Sweet Potatoes/Other Roots/Tubers (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
11	Vegetable Oil (litres)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
12	Margarine/Butter/Ghee/Other Fats (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
13	Cheese (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
14	Jam (units)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
15	Fresh Milk/Sour Milk/Yoghurt (litres)	-1	-2	-1 -2							

1. Was _____ bought or consumed by this household in the past month ?				2. Does the household usually buy or receive it weekly or monthly?		3. What was the amount spent OR quantity purchased in the last period?		4. How much was received as a gift or as a payment in the last period? (Value OR Quantity)		5. How much was eaten from own production in the last period? (Value OR Quantity)	
Code	Food name	Eaten/Bought?		Weekly -1 Monthly -2		Amount (Rand)	Amount (Quantity)	Amount (Rand)	Amount (Quantity)	Amount (Rand)	Amount (Quantity)
		YES	NO								
16	Baby Formula/Milk Powder (kilos)	-1	-2	-1	-2						
17	Sugar (kilos)	-1	-2	-1	-2						
18	Mutton/Beef/Pork (kilos)	-1	-2	-1	-2						
19	Chicken (kilos)	-1	-2	-1	-2						
20	Eggs (Unit=one egg, not kilo)	-1	-2	-1	-2						
21	Fresh Fish (kilos)	-1	-2	-1	-2						
22	Tinned Fish (units)	-1	-2	-1	-2						
23	Pumpkin/squash (kilos)	-1	-2	-1	-2						
24	Other vegetables (kilos)	-1	-2	-1	-2						
25	Bananas (kilos)	-1	-2	-1	-2						
26	Apples (units)	-1	-2	-1	-2						
27	Citrus fruit (kilos)	-1	-2	-1	-2						
28	Soft drinks (litres)	-1	-2	-1	-2						
29	Meals prepared outside home	-1	-2	-1	-2						
30	Meals given to guests	-1	-2	-1	-2						
31	Other food expenditure/ Consumption	-1	-2	-1	-2						

## Section 4: Non-Food Spending

### 4.1 Regular Non-Food Spending

## Section 4: Non-Food Spending

### 4.1 Regular Non-Food Spending

**Interviewer: For each of the items listed, ASK:**

1. In the past month, about how much, if anything, was spent on \_\_\_\_ (Ask for each item on the list below) ?

	CODE	RAND
<b>PERSONAL ITEMS:</b>		
Cigarettes, tobacco	-01	
Beer, wine, spirits	-02	
Entertainment (cinema, sports, music, etc)	-03	
Personalised care items: soap, shampoo, haircuts, facials, and so on	-04	
Newspapers/stationery, envelopes, stamps	-05	
Telephone	-06	
<b>REGULAR TRANSPORT COSTS:</b>		
Petrol, oil and car service	-07	
Buses, taxis, trains and air tickets	-08	
<b>MISCELLANEOUS:</b>		
Washing powder	-09	
Childcare	-10	
Religious and membership dues of organisations	-11	
Informal taxation and donations	-12	
Domestic servants, gardeners and other household labour	-13	



## 4.2 Occasional Non-Food Spending

**Interviewer:** For each of the items listed, ASK:

1. And in the past year, about how much was spent by the household on:

	CODE	RAND
<b>HOUSEHOLD:</b>		
Kitchen equipment, like pots and pans, lamps, torches and so on	-01	
Home maintenance and repairs to the dwelling	-02	
Bedding, sheets, blankets and towels	-03	
Furniture and other household appliances	-04	
<b>CLOTHING AND SHOES:</b>		
Shoes for adults and children	-05	
Clothes for adults and children	-06	
Material to make clothing or curtains	-07	
<b>HEALTH AND CARE: (Exclude payment to medical aid schemes)</b>		
Dentists, doctors or nurses	-08	
Hospital fees	-09	
Medical supplies, for example, medicines, bandages and so on	-10	
Traditional healer's fees	-11	
<b>PERSONAL AND OTHER ITEMS:</b>		
Holidays	-12	
Jewellery, watches, other luxury goods (eg. yacht)	-13	

## 4.3 Summary of Food and Non-Food Expenditure

**Interviewer:** Ask all households to provide a summary of expenditure in the food and non-food categories listed in the grid below.



#### 4.3 Summary of Food and Non-Food Expenditure

**Interviewer:** Ask all households to provide a summary of expenditure in the food and non-food categories listed in the grid below.

Name the expenditure category (e.g. groceries) and then ask each of the following questions.

**Where the block is shaded, do not ask that particular question.**

1a. Code	1b. Name	2. How much did the household spend in the last month? Rand	3. How much is usually spent in a month? Rand	4. How much was spent in the last year? Rand
01	Groceries (including toiletries and household essentials)			
02	Food eaten out			
03	Holidays			
04	Cars and other vehicles (including hire purchases and lease agreements)			
05	Furniture, including hire purchase agreements			
06	Clothing			
07	Payments to domestic servants and gardeners			
08	Insurance (including life, short-term and funeral policies)			
09	Savings (including retirement annuities and stokvel contributions)			

#### 4.4 Household Durables

**Interviewer: Introduce by saying:** "I have a list of household items here which someone in the household may or may not own"

1. **Then ask:** How many \_\_\_\_\_ does the household own ? Write "0" (zero) if none owned.

	CODE	NUMBER
Motor vehicle, including cars and bakkies	-01	
Bicycles	-02	
Radio	-03	
Electric Stove	-04	
Gas Stove	-05	
Primus Cooker	-06	
Fridge	-07	
TV	-08	
Geyser	-09	
Electric Kettle	-10	
Telephone	-11	

#### 4.5 Household Debt

1. Does any member of this household owe cash or goods to any institution or to an individual who is not a household member?

#### 4.5 Household Debt

1. Does any member of this household owe cash or goods to any institution or to an individual who is not a household member?

Yes.....-1

No.....-2

→ Go to Section 5

2. **Interviewer:** Introduce by saying: "I am going to read through a list of possible lenders. As I read through the list, please indicate whether or not money is owed to that source." and mark Yes or No in Question 2a.

If YES to Question 2a, then ask Questions 2b and 2c.

**Note:** Exclude bond on house in which respondent is living.

2a. Is anything owed to _____ ?				2b. How much is owed to _____?	2c. What is the monthly payment?
Code	Possible Lender	YES	NO	Amount	Amount
01	Relative or friend	-1	-2	R	R
02	Government Agency	-1	-2	R	R
03	Landlord	-1	-2	R	R
04	Banks or Building Society	-1	-2	R	R
05	Non Governmental Organization (NGO)	-1	-2	R	R
06	Money Lender	-1	-2	R	R
07	Stokvel/Credit Union	-1	-2	R	R
08	Burial Services	-1	-2	R	R
09	Employer	-1	-2	R	R
10	Hire Purchase	-1	-2	R	R
11	Shopkeeper Credit	-1	-2	R	R
12	Other (Specify)	-1	-2	R	R

## CALCULATION OF TOTAL EXPENDITURE

NOTE: THIS IS A BRIEF SUMMARY OF HOW INCOME WAS CALCULATED. INTERESTED RESEARCHERS ARE ENCOURAGED TO OBTAIN COPIES OF THE PROGRAMS USED IN THESE CALCULATIONS. THESE ARE WRITTEN FOR "STATA" AND WILL BE SUPPLIED ON REQUEST.

### FOOD

Food prices were recorded in the "Community Questionnaire" undertaken in each cluster. Two shops in each area were visited and the prices of a range of commodities obtained. The average of the two prices was taken to give commodity prices in each cluster. Where the price of a commodity was missing, the mean price in the corresponding magisterial district was used, or failing this the mean price in the same province and location. Only in a few cases was it necessary to use the mean in the province or corresponding location.

Food expenditure was calculated using these prices and the recorded consumption. There were initially a total of 1357 missing consumption values (for a **commodity**, not a household). It was not desirable to lose the entire observation if the household was uncertain of the consumption of an item. Moreover, we do know that the household consumed at least some of the commodity. Hence the following procedure was used. Based on the assumption that consumption patterns are similar in the same cluster, the best way to replace the missing figures was to substitute per capita medians. Where this could not be done, the sample median was used.

### FOOD SUPPORT

It is possible that a household receives a food subsidy from an employer, or that it receives food as an in-kind remittance. In both cases this food should have been recorded in the food consumption section (Section 3, question 4) under the heading "how much was received as a gift/payment". This was frequently not done, under

the mistaken impression that this would be double counting. If the amount of food received is larger than the figure specified in section 3, question 4, then the difference was added to total food expenditure.

### HOUSING

If the home is rented, either the actual value of the rent paid, or an estimate of the rental value of the house if it is provided for free by somebody else (Section 2.1 questions 9b and 9c) is used.

If the home is owned and a resale value is reported (section 2.1, question 8), then an estimate of the rental value based on the ratio of the property value and rental value in the same area is used.

### HOUSING SUPPORT

It is possible that the household does not own the house and does not pay any rent, or that it receives a subsidy for the house payment. If the household reports a housing benefit from an employer and also pays rent, then the household's total rent is calculated as the sum of the payment plus the subsidy. Where no rent is paid, the subsidy is taken as the housing expenditure.

### UTILITIES (Section 2.5)

There are approximately 600 households who report no expenditure on utilities. In the majority of these cases this was a result of boycott or other specified reasons for not paying. In these cases, expenditure on utilities has been set to zero. Missing values in the case of hostels were also set to zero. In other cases where the respondent did not know or refused to answer, missing values

were replaced by the medians by race and cluster. Also included are some imputed estimates of the value of wood collected, using a value of R2 per person per trip.

### EDUCATION EXPENDITURE

In total there are 5457 households recording educational expenditure and 5362 households that have persons enrolled in

section (Section 3, question 4) under the heading "how much was received as a gift/payment". This was frequently not done, under

in the case of hostels were also set to zero. In other cases where the respondent did not know or refused to answer, missing values

August 1994

were replaced by the medians by race and cluster. Also included are some imputed estimates of the value of wood collected, using a value of R2 per person per trip.

#### **REGULAR NON-FOOD SPENDING (Section 4.1)**

There are 64 households that do not spend anything. These are not altered.

In some cases it was noted that households had child care expenses and yet were single person households. This was reclassified as remittances, provided that the figure was greater than the one already given in the remittances section (to avoid double-counting). In all other cases where household size was greater than one, childcare was added to other regular non food expenditure.

#### **OCCASIONAL NON-FOOD SPENDING (Section 4.2)**

There are 748 households that do not spend anything. These are not altered.

#### **TRANSPORT COSTS**

Transport cost is reported as an item of regular non-food expenditure (section 4.1). In addition, households were asked for the weekly cost of transport to school (section 5, question 7) and the daily cost of transport to work (section 8.4, question 4.) The information on the cost of transport from the different sections was compared. The value of transport benefits received from an employer was also added.

School transport: the reported cost of transport to and from school was used if available. To estimate the missing values, persons enrolled in education were divided into two age groups, up to 17 and 18 and over. The median value by race, province, location and type of transport was then used where a cost had not been specified. (Walking and bicycling had no cost.) If the type of transport was not specified, then the median by province, race and age was used.

#### **EDUCATION EXPENDITURE**

In total there are 5457 households recording educational expenditure and 5362 households that have persons enrolled in education. There are 102 households that have education expenditure, but no-one enrolled: these are possibly households with children away at boarding school/university who are not classified as household members. All cases of non reporting of educational expenditure were set to zero. Where the respondent refused to answer or did not know, per student medians by cluster and race were substituted.

There are 129 households that report (annual) education bursaries. These values are added to the school expenses. There are 114 households that report receiving school meals. From the descriptive statistics, however, it is not clear whether the values reported are daily/monthly/annual figures. Consequently, the value of school meals has not been included.

#### **DURABLE AND TAX EXPENSES**

Information on durable expenses and hire purchases are available in different sections of the questionnaire (Sections 4.2., 4.3., 4.5). The calculation of total expenditure is defined as **exclusive** of furniture and other durables. We do not have comparable information on all expenditure groups, so it is preferable to leave this category out.

Expenditure is calculated as **current expenditure net of taxes**. It is therefore expected that expenditure will be lower than income for many households, the difference being investment in durables and all forms of tax liabilities on income.

#### **REMITTANCES**

There are 1462 households that report remittance expenditure. In addition, in the 73 cases of one person households with child care expenses, these expenses were shifted to remittances.

Table 8.1: Average MONTHLY household expenditure by province and race (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	1 329.00	144 600	2 039.00	391 400	3 291.00	1 800	4 570.00	323 300	2 873.00	861 000
N. Cape	1 496.00	25 700	980.00	91 200	.	.	.	.	1 093.00	116 900
E. Cape	725.00	1 014 800	1 639.00	50 900	.	.	4 151.00	107 200	1 078.00	1 173 000
Kwazulu	1 374.00	1 046 300	1 794.00	43 700	2 977.00	188 100	4 281.00	100 700	1 818.00	1 378 800
O.F.S.	787.00	538 400	978.00	18 900	.	.	5 303.00	91 800	1 433.00	647 200
E. Tvl	1 259.00	652 800	327.00	800	3 018.00	2 800	4 845.00	67 400	1 599.00	723 800
N. Tvl	893.00	831 300	.	.	.	.	3 207.00	67 400	1 067.00	898 700
N.W.	989.00	734 200	1 070.00	1 700	862.00	900	3 643.00	73 400	1 230.00	810 200
P.W.V.	1 513.00	1 056 800	2 659.00	47 500	5 180.00	34 600	5 160.00	697 300	2 997.00	1 836 300
All/S.A.	1 111.00	6 044 900	1 854.00	644 300	3 306.00	228 200	4 742.00	1 528 500	1 884.00	8 445 900

Sample number = 8 763

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1-5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



**Table 8.1.1: Average MONTHLY household per capita expenditure by province and race (Rand)**

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	473.00	144 600	512.00	391 400	1 331.00	1 800	1 807.00	323 300	993.00	861 000
N. Cape	653.00	25 700	354.00	91 200	.	.	.	.	419.00	116 900
E. Cape	184.00	1 014 800	346.00	50 900	.	.	1 330.00	107 200	296.00	1 173 000
Kwazulu	294.00	1 046 300	503.00	43 700	741.00	188 100	1 881.00	100 700	477.00	1 378 800
O.F.S.	287.00	538 400	282.00	18 900	.	.	2 081.00	91 800	541.00	647 200
E. Tvl	424.00	652 800	327.00	800	1 334.00	2 800	1 566.00	67 400	534.00	723 800
N. Tvl	219.00	831 300	.	.	.	.	1 464.00	67 400	312.00	898 700
N.W.	388.00	734 200	1 070.00	1 700	862.00	900	1 355.00	73 400	478.00	810 200
P.W.V.	560.00	1 056 800	831.00	47 500	1 404.00	34 600	2 022.00	697 300	1 138.00	1 836 300
All/S.A.	342.00	6 044 900	495.00	644 300	854.00	228 200	1 845.00	1 528 500	640.00	8 445 900

Sample number = 8 763

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1-5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 8.1.2: Average MONTHLY per capita expenditure by province and race (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	340.00	564 400	424.00	1 883 500	1 097.00	5 300	1 531.00	965 200	724.00	3 418 400
N. Cape	443.00	86 800	213.00	418 900	.	.	.	.	253.00	505 600
E. Cape	136.00	5 396 900	292.00	286 200	.	.	1 135.00	392 200	208.00	6 075 300
Kwazulu	220.00	6 532 800	410.00	191 200	669.00	837 400	1 667.00	258 500	321.00	7 819 800
O.F.S.	189.00	2 243 200	255.00	65 000	.	.	1 680.00	290 000	357.00	2 598 200
E. Tvl	266.00	3 089 000	327.00	800	1 308.00	6 400	1 390.00	234 800	347.00	3 331 000
N. Tvl	166.00	4 473 900	.	.	.	.	1 275.00	169 500	206.00	4 643 400
N.W.	252.00	2 877 900	1 070.00	1 700	862.00	900	1 161.00	230 200	320.00	3 110 700
P.W.V.	401.00	3 981 300	600.00	210 600	1 205.00	148 800	1 744.00	2 063 400	859.00	6 404 100
All/S.A.	230.00	29 246 100	391.00	3 057 900	755.00	998 900	1 574.00	4 603 800	420.00	37 906 600

Sample number = 40 076

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1-5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 8.2: Average MONTHLY household expenditure by province and race: Female headed households (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	1 245.00	48 200	1 876.00	90 300	4 069.00	900	2 831.00	56 700	2 007.00	196 000
N. Cape	1 530.00	1 100	677.00	23 500	.	.	.	.	714.00	24 600
E. Cape	661.00	396 000	1 283.00	10 800	.	.	4 008.00	13 800	786.00	420 500
Kwazulu	1 200.00	327 600	1 446.00	11 500	2 805.00	29 800	3 092.00	11 800	1 392.00	380 700
O.F.S.	695.00	137 700	753.00	4 500	.	.	4 709.00	9 200	940.00	151 400
E. Tvl	1 036.00	116 000	327.00	800	2 291.00	900	1 876.00	2 000	1 055.00	119 900
N. Tvl	776.00	265 000	.	.	.	.	1 599.00	11 200	810.00	276 200
N.W.	883.00	147 200	.	.	.	.	2 077.00	7 100	938.00	154 300
P.W.V.	1 285.00	315 400	2 240.00	4 200	.	.	3 457.00	120 500	1 889.00	440 100
All/S.A.	954.00	1 754 200	1 572.00	145 700	2 826.00	31 600	3 222.00	232 300	1 266.00	2 163 800

Sample number = 2 284

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1-5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 8.2.1: Average MONTHLY household per capita expenditure by province and race: Female headed households (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	329.00	48 200	487.00	90 300	2 035.00	900	1 918.00	56 700	869.00	196 000
N. Cape	255.00	1 100	192.00	23 500	.	.	.	.	194.00	24 600
E. Cape	183.00	396 000	281.00	10 800	.	.	1 754.00	13 800	237.00	420 500
Kwazulu	232.00	327 600	371.00	11 500	954.00	29 800	2 421.00	11 800	360.00	380 700
O.F.S.	193.00	137 700	196.00	4 500	.	.	4 519.00	9 200	455.00	151 400
E. Tvl	296.00	116 000	327.00	800	1 145.00	900	912.00	2 000	313.00	119 900
N. Tvl	199.00	265 000	.	.	.	.	1 331.00	11 200	245.00	276 200
N.W.	271.00	147 200	.	.	.	.	1 124.00	7 100	311.00	154 300
P.W.V.	429.00	315 400	1 114.00	4 200	.	.	2 000.00	120 500	866.00	440 100
All/S.A.	259.00	1 754 200	423.00	145 700	990.00	31 600	2 018.00	232 300	469.00	2 163 800

Sample number = 2 284

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1-5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 8.2.2: Average MONTHLY per capita expenditure by province and race: Female headed households (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	258.00	232 400	380.00	445 400	2 035.00	1 800	1 746.00	91 900	510.00	771 500
N. Cape	255.00	8 400	152.00	105 000	.	.	.	.	158.00	111 400
E. Cape	129.00	2 029 600	248.00	55 900	.	.	1 568.00	35 200	156.00	2 120 700
Kwazulu	190.00	2 072 900	316.00	52 700	867.00	96 300	2 233.00	16 300	237.00	2 238 200
O.F.S.	151.00	636 000	188.00	17 800	.	.	4 120.00	10 600	214.00	664 300
E. Tvl	216.00	557 400	327.00	800	1 145.00	1 900	938.00	4 100	224.00	564 200
N. Tvl	151.00	1 365 300	.	.	.	.	1 257.00	14 300	162.00	1 379 600
N.W.	197.00	660 500	.	.	.	.	855.00	17 400	214.00	677 900
P.W.V.	296.00	1 369 100	933.00	10 200	.	.	1 672.00	249 100	510.00	1 628 400
All/S.A.	187.00	8 929 600	333.00	687 900	893.00	99 900	1 706.00	438 800	270.00	10 156 200

Sample number = 10 900

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1-5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 8.3: Average MONTHLY household expenditure by location and race (Rand)

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Rural	955.00	3 803 500	1 561.00	43 300	3 055.00	1 800	4 682.00	123 800	1 079.00	3 972 500
Urban	1 205.00	1 072 000	1 332.00	256 700	2 963.00	131 400	4 189.00	420 300	2 012.00	1 880 400
Metropolitan	1 533.00	1 169 400	2 280.00	344 300	3 784.00	95 000	4 986.00	984 400	3 025.00	2 593 100
All/S.A.	1 111.00	6 044 900	1 854.00	644 300	3 306.00	228 200	4 742.00	1 528 500	1 884.00	8 445 900

Sample number = 8 763

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1, 5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 8.3.1: Average MONTHLY household per capita expenditure by location and race (Rand)**

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Rural	270.00	3 803 500	477.00	43 300	1 095.00	1 800	1 713.00	123 800	317.00	3 972 500
Urban	412.00	1 072 000	387.00	256 700	778.00	131 400	1 592.00	420 300	698.00	1 880 400
Metropolitan	514.00	1 169 400	577.00	344 300	954.00	95 000	1 970.00	984 400	1 091.00	2 593 100
All/S.A.	342.00	6 044 900	495.00	644 300	854.00	228 200	1 845.00	1 528 500	640.00	8 445 900

Sample number = 8 763

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1, 5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 8.3.2: Average MONTHLY per capita expenditure by location and race (Rand)

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Rural	185.00	19 657 500	328.00	206 400	1 240.00	4 500	1 459.00	397 400	212.00	20 265 800
Urban	272.00	4 754 500	299.00	1 143 700	698.00	557 600	1 357.00	1 297 800	488.00	7 753 500
Metropolitan	371.00	4 834 100	460.00	1 707 800	823.00	436 800	1 687.00	2 908 600	793.00	9 887 400
All/S.A.	230.00	29 246 100	391.00	3 057 900	755.00	998 900	1 574.00	4 603 800	420.00	37 906 600

Sample number = 40 076

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1, 5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 8.4: Average MONTHLY household expenditure by location and race: Female headed households (Rand)**

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Rural	814.00	1 036 500	.	.	.	.	3 738.00	11 200	845.00	1 047 700
Urban	997.00	309 000	1 359.00	77 700	2 225.00	21 900	2 644.00	45 100	1 282.00	453 600
Metropolitan	1 277.00	408 800	1 815.00	68 000	4 191.00	9 600	3 337.00	176 000	1 922.00	662 400
All/S.A.	954.00	1 754 200	1 572.00	145 700	2 826.00	31 600	3 222.00	232 300	1 266.00	2 163 800

Sample number = 2 284

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1, 5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 8.4.1: Average MONTHLY household per capita expenditure by location and race: Female headed households (Rand)

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Rural	202.00	1 036 500					2 053.00	11 200	222.00	1 047 700
Urban	283.00	309 000	356.00	77 700	913.00	21 900	2 125.00	45 100	509.00	453 600
Metropolitan	384.00	408 800	500.00	68 000	1 165.00	9 600	1 988.00	176 000	833.00	662 400
All/S.A.	259.00	1 754 200	423.00	145 700	990.00	31 600	2 018.00	232 300	469.00	2 163 800

Sample number = 2 284

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1, 5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



**Table 8.4.2: Average MONTHLY per capita expenditure by location and race: Female headed households (Rand)**

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Rural	154.00	5 490 800					1 869.00	22 500	161.00	5 513 300
Urban	204.00	1 511 400	297.00	355 900	763.00	64 000	1 731.00	68 900	291.00	2 000 200
Metropolitan	271.00	1 927 400	372.00	332 000	1 125.00	35 900	1 690.00	347 500	482.00	2 642 800
All/S.A.	187.00	8 929 600	333.00	687 900	893.00	99 900	1 706.00	438 800	270.00	10 156 200

Sample number = 10 900

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1, 5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 8.5: Average commodity household budget shares by race (Percentage)

Commodity	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Housing	9.9	13.7	14.7	20.3	12.2
Utilities	7.9	11.1	9.6	7.8	8.2
Food	52.9	40.0	32.9	22.1	45.8
Child care	0.9	3.1	6.2	5.8	2.1
Transport	4.4	4.0	4.0	4.3	4.4
Personal (1)	6.7	9.0	8.8	8.4	7.2
Other occasional non food expenditure (2)	2.7	3.8	3.4	6.7	3.6
Household	0.8	1.0	0.8	0.6	0.8
Clothing	4.1	5.0	4.9	3.2	4.0
Health	0.6	1.0	2.0	2.6	1.1
Holiday/Jewellery	0.6	0.7	2.3	3.2	1.1
Insurance	0.9	3.5	5.8	8.0	2.5
Saving	2.0	1.6	2.2	3.5	2.2
Schooling	2.2	1.5	1.8	3.1	2.3
Remittances	3.3	1.0	0.6	0.5	2.5
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Monthly total expenditure (Rand)	1 111.00	1 854.00	3 306.00	4 742.00	1 884.00
Monthly household per capita expenditure (Rand)	342.00	495.00	854.00	1 845.00	640.00
Number	6 044 900	644 300	228 300	1 528 500	8 445 900

Sample number = 8 763

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1, 5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: (1) Personal Expenses include: Tobacco, Alcohol, Entertainment, Personal Care, Newspapers, Telephone.

NOTE 3: (2) Other Expenses include: Washing, Dues, Taxes and Household Labour.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

NOTE 3: (2) Other Expenses include: Washing, Dues, Taxes and Household Labour.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 8.5.1: Average commodity household budget shares by province (Percentage)

Commodity	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Housing	16.2	12.9	8.4	12.4	8.4	11.4	12.4	11.7	14.4	12.2
Utilities	8.0	15.5	11.0	8.6	9.4	6.1	9.2	7.5	5.8	8.2
Food	35.4	39.8	55.7	50.6	48.2	46.5	53.5	50.0	34.3	45.8
Child care	3.6	1.5	1.1	1.9	1.4	1.8	1.1	1.6	3.4	2.1
Transport	4.5	2.5	2.5	3.9	2.4	5.4	2.4	3.3	7.6	4.4
Personal (1)	8.3	8.1	6.1	6.8	8.0	6.6	4.8	8.0	8.4	7.2
Other occasional non food expenses (2)	4.4	3.1	3.5	2.9	3.7	3.4	3.6	2.8	4.1	3.6
Household	0.8	1.0	0.7	0.7	0.6	1.5	0.8	0.7	0.8	0.8
Clothing	4.1	4.2	3.5	3.7	4.8	4.3	4.2	4.4	4.0	4.0
Health	1.5	1.2	0.8	1.1	0.9	1.1	0.7	0.6	1.4	1.1
Holiday/Jewellery	1.6	0.5	0.4	0.7	0.7	2.4	0.4	0.5	1.9	1.1
Insurance	4.8	4.6	1.7	2.1	2.5	1.6	1.3	1.5	3.7	2.5
Savings	2.8	1.8	0.8	1.6	2.6	2.5	1.8	2.5	3.3	2.2
Schooling	2.2	0.7	2.3	2.0	1.8	2.1	2.6	2.1	2.8	2.3
Remittances	1.8	2.7	1.3	1.2	4.5	3.4	1.1	2.7	4.2	2.5
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Monthly household expenditure (Rand)	2 873.00	1 093.00	1 078.00	1 818.00	1 433.00	1 599.00	1 067.00	1 230.00	2 997.00	1 884.00
Monthly household per capita expenditure (Rand)	993.00	419.00	296.00	477.00	541.00	534.00	312.00	478.00	1 138.00	640.00
Number	861 000	116 900	1 173 000	1 378 800	647 200	723 800	898 700	810 200	1 836 300	8 445 900

Sample number = 8 763

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1, 5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: (1) Personal Expenses include: Tobacco, Alcohol, Entertainment, Personal Care, Newspapers, Telephone.

NOTE 3: (2) Other Expenses include: Washing, Dues, Taxes and Household Labour.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 8.5.2: Average commodity household budget shares by location (Percentage)

Commodity	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	All
Housing	10.1	11.8	15.7	12.2
Utilities	8.9	8.9	6.5	8.2
Food	55.0	42.2	34.2	45.8
Child care	0.9	2.6	3.6	2.1
Transport	3.0	4.0	6.7	4.4
Personal (1)	6.0	8.1	8.4	7.2
Other occasional non food expenses (2)	3.1	3.7	4.2	3.6
Household	0.8	0.9	0.7	0.8
Clothing	3.9	4.4	3.9	4.0
Health	0.8	1.2	1.4	1.1
Holiday/Jewellery	0.6	1.2	1.9	1.1
Insurance	1.0	3.6	4.1	2.5
Savings	1.6	2.7	2.9	2.2
Schooling	2.2	2.1	2.6	2.3
Remittances	2.2	2.5	3.0	2.5
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Monthly household expenditure (Rand)	1 079.00	2 012.00	3 025.00	1 884.00
Monthly household per capita expenditure (Rand)	317.00	698.00	1 091.00	640.00
Number	3 972 500	1 880 400	2 593 100	8 445 900

Sample number = 8 763

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1, 5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: (1) Personal Expenses include: Tobacco, Alcohol, Entertainment, Personal Care, Newspapers, Telephone.

NOTE 3: (2) Other Expenses include: Washing, Dues, Taxes and Household Labour.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

NOTE 2: (1) Personal Expenses include: Tobacco, Alcohol, Entertainment, Personal Care, Newspaper, etc.

NOTE 3: (2) Other Expenses include: Washing, Dues, Taxes and Household Labour.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 8.6: Average share of total expenditure spent on food by province and race (Percentage)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	51.5	144 600	40.6	391 400	39.2	1 800	21.9	323 300	35.4	861 000
N. Cape	35.9	25 700	40.9	91 200	.	.	.	.	39.8	116 900
E. Cape	59.5	1 014 800	44.8	50 900	.	.	25.0	107 200	55.7	1 173 000
Kwazulu	57.6	1 046 300	33.8	43 700	33.8	188 100	16.3	100 700	50.6	1 378 800
O.F.S.	53.1	538 400	40.7	16 900	.	.	20.8	91 800	48.2	647 200
E. Tvl	48.9	652 800	45.8	800	28.8	2 800	23.7	67 400	46.5	723 800
N. Tvl	55.9	831 300	.	.	.	.	23.5	67 400	53.5	898 700
N.W.	51.3	734 200	56.7	1 700	23.2	900	36.8	73 400	50.0	810 200
P.W.V.	43.3	1 056 800	32.6	47 500	28.5	34 600	21.0	697 300	34.3	1 836 300
All/S.A.	52.9	6 044 900	40.0	644 300	32.9	228 200	22.1	1 528 500	45.8	8 445 900

Sample number = 8 763

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1-5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 8.6.1: Average share of total expenditure spent on food by location and race (Percentage)

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Rural	56.10	3 803 500	45.40	43 300	26.00	1 800	26.70	123 800	55.00	3 972 500
Urban	50.40	1 072 000	43.30	256 700	31.10	131 400	24.00	420 300	42.20	1 880 400
Metropolitan	44.70	1 169 400	36.90	344 300	35.50	95 000	20.70	984 400	34.20	2 593 100
All/S.A.	52.90	6 044 900	40.00	644 300	32.90	228 200	22.10	1 528 500	45.80	8 445 900

Sample number = 8 763

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1, 2.4-2.5, 3, 4.1-4.3, 5.1, 5.3, 6.2, 8.2.4 and 8.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 8.7: Average food budget shares by race (Percentage)**

Food Types	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All/S.A.
Grains	35.4	19.2	16.1	10.9	29.1
Meat & Fish	22.0	31.9	28.1	29.9	24.4
Dairy	6.8	9.3	12.3	15.5	8.8
Fruits & Vegetables	16.4	15.7	18.2	13.9	15.9
Oils	4.6	5.2	6.0	3.9	4.6
Sugar	6.1	4.8	3.1	1.9	5.1
Meals outside home	3.1	2.9	6.3	12.8	5.0
Other	5.5	11.0	10.0	11.3	7.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Monthly expenditure (1) (Rand)	142.00	164.00	239.00	351.00	185.00
Number	5 938 000	643 300	228 200	1 532 400	8 341 900

Sample number = 8 660

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 3.

NOTE 2: (1) Monthly household per capita total food expenditure.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 8.7.1: Average food budget shares by province (Percentage)

Food Types	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Grains	15.2	24.0	37.7	31.4	31.6	30.0	46.1	33.0	17.5	29.1
Meat & Fish	29.8	30.4	17.8	23.6	24.3	23.0	17.8	26.3	29.2	24.4
Dairy	11.4	7.8	8.9	7.4	10.5	8.0	4.2	8.7	10.4	8.8
Fruits & Vegetables	16.1	16.1	15.9	17.2	15.6	16.8	13.8	15.5	16.0	15.9
Oils	4.3	5.7	5.1	6.0	4.6	3.7	4.2	3.7	4.1	4.6
Sugar	3.5	6.9	8.5	4.6	5.4	4.5	7.4	5.4	2.8	5.1
Meals outside home	7.9	0.7	1.9	3.0	2.8	4.4	2.7	2.7	10.4	5.0
Other	11.8	8.3	4.3	6.7	5.0	9.7	3.7	4.7	9.6	7.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Monthly expenditure (1) (Rand)	252.00	113.00	119.00	180.00	139.00	167.00	123.00	167.00	264.00	185.00
Number	866 600	113 000	1 176 500	1 380 600	640 000	661 500	898 500	797 800	1 807 400	8 341 900

Sample number = 8 660

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 3.

NOTE 2: (1) Monthly household per capita total food expenditure.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



**Table 8.7.2: Average food budget shares by location (Percentage)**

Food Types	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	All/S.A.
Grains	40.1	23.1	16.9	29.1
Meat & Fish	19.2	27.9	29.7	24.4
Dairy	6.7	10.1	10.9	8.8
Fruit & Vegetables	15.5	16.5	16.2	15.9
Oils	4.6	4.9	4.3	4.6
Sugar	6.9	4.4	2.9	5.1
Meals outside home	2.1	4.8	9.4	5.0
Other	4.8	8.4	9.7	7.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Monthly expenditure (1) (Rand)	125.00	213.00	254.00	185.00
Number	3 902 700	1 865 500	2 573 600	8 341 900

Sample number = 8 660

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 3.

NOTE 2: (1) Monthly household per capita food expenditure.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 8.8: Percentage of households that own durables by race**

Type of durables	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Motor vehicle	9.8	33.2	70.2	91.9	28.8
Bicycles	16.1	26.3	20.1	49.2	23.3
Radio	79.3	77.6	92.2	96.4	82.7
Electric stove	20.8	76.0	96.8	93.4	41.0
Gas stove	11.2	35.3	23.0	18.3	14.7
Primus cooker	71.9	17.4	6.6	6.1	53.3
Fridge	23.8	72.7	97.2	96.3	43.4
TV	32.6	78.0	94.1	95.5	49.8
Geyser	6.1	49.7	85.6	96.5	28.8
Electric kettle	17.4	70.0	82.9	97.3	38.5
Telephone	8.2	48.5	75.2	88.8	28.4
Number	5 744 000	641 300	226 500	1 541 600	8 153 400

Sample number = 8 447

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 4.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 8.8.1: Percentage of households that own durables by province

Province	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Motor vehicle	51.8	14.3	16.5	24.1	18.9	25.1	15.2	17.3	45.7	28.8
Bicycles	36.4	25.0	14.6	18.2	22.3	25.1	21.7	25.1	25.7	23.3
Radio	85.4	67.1	75.3	86.5	79.2	90.2	83.4	75.2	85.7	82.7
Electric stove	72.5	61.2	16.6	37.7	27.1	26.6	17.5	23.5	70.3	41.0
Gas stove	27.9	28.4	17.2	19.2	9.8	10.9	7.9	13.0	9.7	14.7
Primus cooker	18.8	37.1	78.4	60.1	68.2	52.6	65.1	71.8	32.3	53.3
Fridge	73.7	54.6	19.6	42.1	30.1	33.6	23.2	32.8	65.8	43.4
TV	80.0	59.3	30.0	46.7	39.9	40.7	25.8	41.5	70.5	49.8
Geyser	63.5	21.5	11.8	22.7	20.2	14.5	9.2	17.6	49.6	28.8
Electric kettle	73.1	51.4	15.2	29.8	26.8	28.2	15.8	23.8	66.3	38.5
Telephone	61.6	17.8	14.1	24.3	18.5	14.7	8.2	13.6	49.1	28.4
Number	876 100	112 000	1 144 300	1 320 300	645 100	673 100	818 300	752 600	1 811 500	8 153 400

Sample number = 8 447

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 4.4.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 8.9: Incidence of debt incurred by province and race (Percentage)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	38.7	152 100	73.8	401 200	50.0	1 800	50.7	332 400	59.1	887 500
N. Cape	84.0	26 800	66.3	93 200	.	.	.	.	70.3	120 000
E. Cape	47.5	1 018 300	86.9	51 900	.	.	43.1	110 300	48.9	1 180 500
Kwazulu	44.2	1 049 000	32.1	43 700	64.2	188 100	27.7	101 600	45.3	1 382 400
O.F.S.	47.0	561 800	64.2	16 900	.	.	62.0	93 200	50.0	671 800
E. Tvl	40.7	654 700	0.0	800	32.2	2 800	56.1	67 400	42.0	725 700
N. Tvl	34.8	834 200	.	.	.	.	44.9	70 400	35.6	904 600
N.W.	47.9	735 100	50.0	1 700	100.0	900	50.6	74 400	48.2	812 100
P.W.V.	33.3	1 060 900	51.7	49 200	51.4	34 600	49.1	701 400	40.1	1 846 200
All/S.A.	41.9	6 092 700	69.5	658 700	61.9	228 200	48.5	1 551 100	45.8	8 530 800

Sample number = 8 848

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 4.5.1.

NOTE 2: Percentage of households that owe cash or goods to any institution or to an individual who is not a household member.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 8.10: Sources of household debt by race (Percentage)**

Type of debt	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Relative/Friend	16.2	6.6	10.4	8.2	12.9
Government Agency	0.5	1.8	1.7	1.4	0.9
Landlord	1.1	2.0		3.5	1.7
Banks/Building society	1.6	5.4	8.4	30.0	8.4
Non Governmental Organisation (NGO)	0.4	0.3	0.4	0.3	0.3
Money Lender	2.0	1.0		0.4	1.5
Stokvel/Credit Union	1.3			0.8	1.0
Burial Services	3.5	1.3		1.3	2.6
Employer	1.8	2.3	3.7	1.5	1.9
Hire Purchase	30.7	33.8	42.3	24.4	30.3
Shopkeeper credit	37.8	33.4	30.3	22.7	33.7
Other	2.9	12.1	2.9	5.5	4.8
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number of Credit	3 215 200	758 500	212 700	1 102 900	5 289 200

Sample number = 5 457

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 4.5.

NOTE 2: Those with valid sources given. A household may have more than one source of credit listed.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 8.10.1: Sources of household debt by province (Percentage)

Type of debt	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Relative/Friend	6.8	5.0	15.6	17.4	15.1	15.2	10.5	10.0	13.7	12.9
Government Agency	1.1	2.1	0.7	0.6	0.5	1.5	0.3	0.8	1.4	0.9
Landlord	4.3		0.5	0.3	0.8	0.5	0.9	1.2	3.3	1.7
Banks/Building society	16.5	4.5	3.3	5.1	9.8	4.5	1.5	3.6	14.7	8.4
Non Governmental Organisation (NGO)	0.9			0.1	0.2	1.2			0.4	0.3
Money Lender	1.1		1.5	1.8	1.8	5.2	0.5	1.2	0.5	1.5
Stokvel/Credit Union	0.6		0.1	1.8	1.2	1.7	0.7	0.6	1.2	1.0
Burial Services	0.7		1.8	2.1	2.9	3.5	5.6	1.3	4.4	2.6
Employer	2.4	0.7	0.5	1.6	2.4	3.6	2.2	1.4	2.1	1.9
Hire Purchase	28.2	37.7	21.0	36.8	31.5	37.6	29.3	33.8	27.6	30.3
Shopkeeper credit	28.2	35.1	49.9	29.4	30.0	23.3	44.9	44.2	26.3	33.7
Other	9.1	15.0	4.8	2.9	3.9	2.4	3.8	1.9	4.6	4.8
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number of Credit	793 200	140 700	723 400	840 900	444 500	399 700	403 400	499 800	1 043 500	5 289 200

Sample number = 5 457

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 4.5.

NOTE 2: Those with valid sources given. A household may have more than one source of credit listed.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 8.11: Average monthly debt payment per capita by province and race (Rand)**

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	59.4	56 800	115.1	291 400	100.0	900	223.1	151 700	141.5	500 700
N. Cape	200.0	21 400	83.1	59 800	.	.	.	.	113.9	81 300
E. Cape	39.1	471 000	49.3	42 200	.	.	105.2	39 800	44.7	553 000
Kwazulu	33.2	456 400	62.0	13 200	98.2	114 600	507.1	19 000	61.1	603 300
O.F.S.	78.1	263 000	38.6	14 300	.	.	391.9	51 200	125.2	328 500
E. Tvl	60.2	256 900	.	.	187.5	900	809.8	34 700	149.6	292 500
N. Tvl	42.6	281 700	.	.	.	.	195.7	31 700	58.0	313 300
N.W.	96.9	344 700	130.0	800	152.0	900	960.3	35 600	177.6	382 100
P.W.V.	70.7	331 800	176.5	24 600	136.0	14 000	305.3	318 600	184.3	689 000
All/S.A.	58.8	2 483 600	104.0	446 300	103.2	131 400	342.3	682 200	117.4	3 743 500

Sample number = 3 889

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 4.5.2c.

NOTE 2: Only households that are in debt and have reported monthly payments.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

## **CHAPTER NINE**

# **HEALTH INCIDENCE AND EXPENDITURE**



## Section 10: Health

### 10.1 Health Spending/Incidence/Expense

1. Think about the last two weeks: Has any member of the household been sick or injured during the past two weeks? This includes people who have some form of permanent injury, disability, or ailment.

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→ Go to Section 10.2

**Interviewer :** if YES, ask: Please name each person who has been sick or injured during the past two weeks or any person who is disabled.  
(Prompt fully by asking: Anybody else? Write down the person name and code of each person mentioned.)

**Next:** Do all the questions for each person listed before going onto the next person.

- Note:**
- For **Question 5:** if there is not a second illness code as a "00"
  - After **Question 6:** Circle all individuals that are still sick at the time of interview.
  - For **Question 9c:** record the actual total cost to the household for consultation, accommodation at hospitals or clinics, medicines, etc.
  - For **Question 9d:** record the actual cost to the household of medicines only.
  - For **Question 10:** Ask only if the answer in Question 8 is "No-one". Otherwise move to next the person

1. Name of Person Injured Disabled or Sick	2.	3.	4. What was the nature of the main illness,	5. What was the nature of the second illness,	6. How many of the past 14 days has __	7. How many of the past 14 days has __not being able to do	8. Who if anyone has been consulted to deal with	9a. How long did it take to get there?	9b. How long did __ have to wait to get	9c. How much was charged in total	9d. What was the cost of medi- cines?	10. If "no-one" in Q.8 Why did __not want to consult/see
--	----	----	--	--	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	---



<p>2. <b>Name of Person Injured Disabled or Sick</b></p> <p><b>Name</b></p>	<p>3.</p> <p><b>Code</b></p>	<p>4. <b>What was the nature of the main illness, injury, disability or ailment?</b></p> <p><b>Code</b></p>	<p>5. <b>What was the nature of the second illness, injury, disability or ailment if any?</b></p> <p><b>Code</b></p>	<p>6. <b>How many of the past 14 days has ____ been sick or injured?</b></p> <p><b>Days</b></p>	<p>7. <b>How many of the past 14 days has ____ not being able to do what he/she normally does because of illness or injury?</b></p> <p><b>Days</b></p>

Table 9.1: Incidence of ill-health in the previous two weeks by province and race (Percentage)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	6.2	586 900	11.6	1 911 000	0.0	5 300	14.1	988 100	11.4	3 491 400
N. Cape	6.9	93 200	7.7	421 800	.	.	.	.	7.5	515 000
E. Cape	7.7	5 412 800	10.6	287 200	.	.	16.7	404 400	8.5	6 104 400
Kwazulu	9.9	6 543 500	7.8	191 200	14.8	837 400	7.3	260 300	10.3	7 832 300
O.F.S.	5.7	2 266 500	1.4	65 000	.	.	11.7	292 600	6.3	2 624 100
E. Tvl	8.6	3 090 900	0.0	800	0.0	6 400	11.3	234 800	8.8	3 333 000
N. Tvl	5.4	4 498 300	.	.	.	.	7.1	173 600	5.5	4 671 900
N.W.	5.5	2 878 800	0.0	1 700	0.0	900	5.2	234 300	5.5	3 115 700
P.W.V.	8.2	3 985 400	7.1	214 800	18.9	148 800	12.4	2 081 800	9.8	6 430 800
All/S.A	7.6	29 356 200	10.2	3 093 500	15.3	998 900	12.2	4 670 000	8.6	38 118 600

Sample number = 40 284

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 9.1.1: Incidence of ill-health in the previous two weeks by province and gender (Percentage)**

Province	Female		Male		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
W. Cape	12.0	1 803 500	10.7	1 687 900	11.4	3 491 400
N. Cape	9.6	261 000	5.4	254 000	7.5	515 000
E. Cape	8.8	3 309 200	8.1	2 795 200	8.5	6 104 400
Kwazulu	11.7	4 241 700	8.6	3 590 600	10.3	7 832 300
O.F.S.	6.7	1 374 400	5.9	1 248 400	6.3	2 622 800
E. Tvl	9.7	1 701 100	7.8	1 631 000	8.8	3 332 100
N. Tvl	5.7	2 560 700	5.2	2 108 500	5.5	4 669 200
N.W.	5.0	1 573 200	5.9	1 541 600	5.5	3 114 800
P.W.V.	10.8	3 250 500	8.7	3 179 400	9.8	6 429 800
All/S.A.	9.3	20 075 400	7.8	18 036 500	8.6	38 111 800

Sample number = 40 277

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: There are 7 persons of unknown gender.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 9.1.2: Incidence of ill-health in the household in the previous two weeks by location, gender and race (Percentage)

Location & Gender	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
Rural										
Female	8.7	2 465 400	11.7	603 400	14.5	290 600	12.1	658 800	10.1	4 018 200
Male	6.1	2 311 000	7.9	554 100	9.5	266 900	13.4	672 000	7.9	3 804 100
All	7.4	4 776 400	9.9	1 157 400	12.1	557 600	12.7	1 330 800	9.0	7 822 300
Urban										
Female	8.2	10 631 700	6.9	99 000	0.0	1 800	10.4	196 300	8.2	10 928 800
Male	6.9	9 083 200	4.6	107 300	0.0	2 700	8.4	207 200	6.9	9 400 500
All	7.6	19 714 900	5.7	206 400	0.0	4 600	9.4	403 500	7.6	20 329 300
Metropolitan										
Female	8.8	2 492 700	11.0	910 800	20.6	220 600	12.6	1 504 300	10.8	5 128 400
Male	6.7	2 365 400	10.8	819 000	18.3	216 200	12.1	1 431 400	9.5	4 831 900
All	7.8	4 858 100	10.9	1 729 700	19.4	436 800	12.3	2 935 700	10.2	9 960 300
All										
Female	8.4	15 589 800	11.0	1 613 200	17.0	513 000	12.3	2 359 300	9.3	20 075 400
Male	6.7	13 759 600	9.3	1 480 400	13.4	485 800	12.1	2 310 700	7.8	18 036 500
All	7.6	29 349 400	10.2	3 093 500	15.3	998 900	12.2	4 670 000	8.6	38 111 800

Sample number = 40 277

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 9.2: Incidence of ill-health by age group and race (Percentage)

Age	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
0 - 6	7.7	4 606 300	8.7	415 200	21.5	106 900	15.1	419 200	8.6	5 547 600
7 - 15	3.2	7 246 800	6.6	702 900	11.2	198 200	10.5	766 000	4.3	8 914 000
16 - 24	4.7	5 724 400	4.6	566 200	9.6	194 500	9.4	699 000	5.3	7 184 100
25 - 34	7.6	4 176 500	9.8	487 400	13.4	152 100	10.4	755 700	8.3	5 571 700
35 - 44	10.4	2 860 100	12.8	419 200	13.4	157 500	11.2	733 000	10.9	4 169 900
45 - 54	12.3	1 858 700	14.5	235 900	19.4	118 700	13.3	602 100	13.0	2 815 500
55 - 64	18.1	1 318 000	32.3	139 100	38.9	43 400	16.3	336 100	19.4	1 836 600
65 +	20.3	1 327 800	22.6	110 900	25.9	27 500	18.1	347 100	20.1	1 813 300
All/S.A	7.6	29 118 600	10.2	3 076 900	15.3	998 900	12.2	4 658 300	8.6	37 852 600

Sample number = 39 997

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 9.2.1: Incidence of ill-health by age group and gender (Percentage)

Age	Female		Male		All	
	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number
0 - 6	8.8	2 724 400	8.4	2 817 300	8.6	5 541 700
7 - 14	4.1	4 407 400	4.4	4 505 700	4.3	8 913 100
16 -24	5.7	3 799 200	4.7	3 384 900	5.3	7 184 100
25 -34	9.0	3 018 600	7.5	2 553 100	8.3	5 571 700
35 -44	11.4	2 276 300	10.3	1 893 600	10.9	4 169 900
45 -54	14.3	1 529 300	11.6	1 286 100	13.0	2 815 500
55 -64	20.1	1 077 300	18.3	759 300	19.4	1 836 600
65 +	22.0	1 094 300	17.1	718 900	20.1	1 813 300
All/S.A.	9.3	19 926 800	7.8	17 918 900	8.6	37 845 800

Sample number = 39 990

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Secion 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 9.3: Duration of ill-health of individuals reporting ill in the previous two weeks by province and race (Days)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Days	Number	Days	Number	Days	Number	Days	Number	Days	Number
W. Cape	7.8	35 300	8.7	219 700	.	.	7.1	137 900	8.1	393 000
N. Cape	4.2	6 400	8.8	32 400	.	.	.	.	8.0	38 800
E. Cape	6.9	415 800	8.9	30 400	.	.	8.6	67 400	7.2	513 700
Kwazulu	8.9	644 600	5.7	14 800	5.7	123 400	5.8	19 000	8.3	801 800
O.F.S.	7.6	128 500	12.0	900	.	.	8.6	34 100	7.8	163 600
E. Tvl	8.3	266 200	.	.	.	.	6.2	26 500	8.1	292 800
N. Tvl	7.8	243 000	.	.	.	.	7.9	12 300	7.8	255 200
N.W.	7.1	156 100	.	.	.	.	2.5	12 300	6.8	168 300
P.W.V.	7.7	323 600	5.4	15 300	6.7	28 100	6.9	255 300	7.2	622 200
All/S.A.	7.9	2 219 600	8.4	313 500	5.9	151 500	7.1	564 700	7.7	3 249 300

Sample number = 3 385

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 9.3.1: Duration of ill-health of individuals reporting ill in the previous two weeks by individual days and race (Percentage)**

Duration	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
0 days	2.6	4.6	3.1	6.6	3.5
1 day	5.2	5.2	1.7	7.6	5.5
2 days	8.1	10.1	14.1	9.3	8.8
3 days	10.3	9.6	20.9	9.5	10.6
4 days	7.1	5.2	7.6	9.0	7.3
5 days	7.7	3.8	3.5	7.7	7.1
6 days	1.8	0.3	2.3	1.4	1.6
7 days	14.8	13.1	27.9	12.5	14.8
8-9 days	2.6		2.9	1.7	2.2
10 days	4.0	2.5	1.8	3.1	3.6
11-13days	1.9	3.0		0.8	1.7
14 days	33.9	42.7	14.3	30.8	33.3
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	2 219 600	313 500	151 500	564 700	3 249 300

Sample number = 3 385

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Those reporting 14 or more days of illness had chronic disorders  
or were disabled.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

or were disabled.  
NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 9.4: Average number of days lost because of ill-health of individuals reporting ill in the previous two weeks by province and race: persons aged 16-64

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W.Cape	7.9	21 400	8.4	137 300	.	.	6.3	52 100	7.8	210 800
N. Cape	3.8	4 300	7.7	14 700	.	.	.	.	6.3	19 000
E. Cape	6.0	187 700	7.4	16 700	.	.	8.9	19 900	6.4	224 200
Kwazulu	8.3	306 700	4.0	4 100	4.0	62 100	3.3	5 400	7.5	378 400
O.F.S.	5.7	79 300	.	.	.	.	7.5	15 700	6.0	95 000
E. Tvl	6.6	100 500	.	.	.	.	6.5	12 300	6.6	112 800
N. Tvl	6.4	87 800	.	.	.	.	14.0	4 100	6.7	91 900
N.W.	6.4	63 900	.	.	.	.	2.3	3 100	6.2	67 000
P.W.V.	6.6	128 000	6.3	5 100	9.0	10 300	6.2	100 100	6.5	243 400
All/S.A.	6.9	979 600	8.1	177 900	4.7	72 400	6.6	212 600	6.9	1 442 600

Sample number = 1 507

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 9.5: Type of illness reported for individuals in the previous two weeks by race (PER THOUSAND)

Type of illness	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
No illness	924.2	898.6	848.2	878.7	914.5
Tuberculosis	2.0	5.0		0.5	2.0
Asthma	4.9	11.6	4.4	5.1	5.5
Malaria	0.3	0.6			0.3
Rheumatic Heart Disease	2.2	2.9	2.6	0.4	2.1
High Blood Pressure	8.1	7.1	7.3	6.0	7.8
Measles	0.7	0.6	5.3		0.7
Hepatitis B	0.3	0.6	0.9		0.3
Kidney problems	1.7	1.9	1.8	2.1	1.8
Stroke	1.8	0.6		0.7	1.5
Cirrhosis of the liver	0.2	0.3		0.7	0.3
Diarrhoea/gastroenteritis	4.9	3.8	5.4	3.5	4.6
Flu	15.6	12.3	82.2	32.7	19.2
Fever	4.7	4.8	2.6	2.3	4.4
Injury	4.1	10.6	5.3	12.6	5.7
Violence related injury	0.4	1.0			0.4
Illness related to pregnancy	1.1	0.6		0.4	0.9
Cancer	0.3	1.3	0.9	1.1	0.5
Allergies	1.1	2.5	0.9	4.4	1.6
Diabetes	1.6	3.4	8.1	1.8	2.0
HIV infection	0.0				0.0
Physical disability	2.7	3.8	0.9	3.1	2.8
Mental disability	3.8	2.5	0.9		3.1
Other	13.2	23.5	22.3	44.1	18.1
Total	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0
Number	29 350 900	3 092 600	998 000	4 666 900	38 108 400

Sample number = 40 274

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Other includes Bilharzia, ulcers, headaches/migraines, bronchitis, pneumonia, slipped disc, thrush and viral infection.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 9.5.1: Type of illness reported for individuals in the previous two weeks by location (PER THOUSAND)

Type of illness	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	All/S.A.
-----------------	-------	-------	--------------	----------

NOTE 2: Other includes Bilharzia, ulcers, headaches, high fever, diarrhoea, disc, thrush and viral infection.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 9.5.1: Type of illness reported for individuals in the previous two weeks by location (PER THOUSAND)

Type of illness	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	All/S.A.
No illness	924.2	910.1	898.2	914.5
Tuberculosis	2.0	2.1	2.1	2.0
Asthma	5.3	5.1	5.9	5.5
Malaria	0.3	0.1	0.3	0.3
Rheumatic heart disease	2.1	1.7	2.3	2.1
High Blood Pressure	7.4	8.2	8.1	7.8
Measles	0.8	1.2	0.3	0.7
Hepatitis B	0.3	0.4	0.3	0.3
Kidney problems	1.8	2.1	1.4	1.8
Stroke	1.9	1.6	0.6	1.5
Cirrhosis of the liver	0.2	0.2	0.5	0.3
Diarrhoea/gastroenteritis	5.5	3.2	3.9	4.6
Flu	16.0	19.8	25.2	19.2
Fever	5.4	3.8	2.7	4.4
Injury	4.3	7.0	7.6	5.7
Violence-related injury	0.5	0.1	0.5	0.4
Illness related to pregnancy	1.1	0.6	1.0	0.9
Cancer	0.4	1.0	0.3	0.5
Allergies	0.9	1.6	3.0	1.6
Diabetes	1.3	2.2	3.2	2.0
HIV infection	0.0		0.1	0.0
Physical disability	2.7	2.5	3.3	2.8
Mental disability	3.4	2.0	3.4	3.1
Other	12.2	23.4	25.8	18.1
Total	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0
Number	20 327 500	7 819 500	9 961 300	38 108 400

Sample number = 40 274

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 9.5.2: Type of illness reported for individuals actually ill in the previous two weeks by race (PER THOUSAND)

Type of illness	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Tuberculosis	26.8	49.6		4.1	23.8
Asthma	64.4	114.8	29.3	42.3	63.8
Malaria	3.9	6.3			3.2
Rheumatic heart disease	29.1	28.2	17.3	3.6	24.0
High blood pressure	107.3	70.3	47.8	49.6	90.9
Measles	9.3	6.3	34.7		8.6
Hepatitis B	3.8	6.3	5.8		3.4
Kidney problems	22.3	18.8	11.6	17.1	20.6
Stroke	23.3	6.3		5.4	17.5
Cirrhosis	3.0	2.6		5.4	3.3
Diarrhoea/gastroenteritis	64.0	37.1	35.5	28.4	53.9
Flue	205.7	121.2	541.3	269.4	224.2
Fever	62.1	46.9	17.3	18.5	51.0
Injury	54.3	104.2	35.1	104.0	66.8
Violence-related injury	5.9	9.4			4.9
Illness related to pregnancy	14.3	6.3		3.6	11.0
Cancer	3.9	12.5	5.8	8.8	5.6
Allergies	14.0	25.0	6.2	36.1	18.6
Diabetes	21.4	34.0	53.2	15.1	23.0
HIV infection	0.8				0.6
Physical Disability	36.0	37.5	6.2	25.2	32.9
Mental Disability	49.8	25.0	6.2		36.8
Other	174.6	231.5	146.8	363.3	211.6
Total	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0
Number	2 225 400	313 500	151 500	566 300	3 256 700

Sample number = 3 393

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 9.6: Type of illness reported for individuals in the previous two weeks by race: persons aged 0-6 (PER THOUSAND)

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 9.6: Type of illness reported for individuals in the previous two weeks by race: persons aged 0-6 (PER THOUSAND)**

Type of illness	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
No illness	923.0	913.2	784.8	848.9	914.0
Tuberculosis	0.4	4.4	.	.	0.7
Asthma	2.2	9.5	.	8.0	3.1
Malaria	.	2.4	.	.	0.2
Rheumatic heart disease	0.2	.	.	.	0.2
Measles	3.1	.	16.4	.	2.9
Kidney problems	0.4	.	.	.	0.3
Stroke	0.2	.	.	.	0.2
Diarrhoea/gastroenteritis	10.8	14.2	42.1	4.9	11.2
Flu	33.3	11.5	131.0	54.3	35.1
Fever	9.2	18.9	8.2	9.2	9.9
Injury	2.0	2.4	8.8	9.7	2.8
Allergies	1.5	7.1	8.8	13.4	2.9
HIV infection	0.2	.	.	.	0.2
Physical Disability	0.6	2.4	.	2.4	0.9
Mental Disability	0.2	.	.	.	0.2
Other	12.8	14.2	.	49.1	15.4
Total	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0
Number	4 605 400	415 200	106 900	419 200	5 546 700

Sample number = 5 954

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Other includes poisoning, chicken pox, conjunctivitis, thrush, meningitis, pneumonia, bronchitis and viral infection.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 9.6.1: Type of illness reported for individuals in the previous two weeks by location:  
persons aged 0-6 (PER THOUSAND)**

Type of illness	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	All/S.A.
No illness	926.5	899.4	891.5	914.0
Tuberculosis	0.5	1.0	0.7	0.7
Asthma	2.1	3.1	6.0	3.1
Malaria	.	.	0.8	0.2
Rheumatic heart disease	.	.	0.9	0.2
Measles	2.9	5.3	0.9	2.9
Kidney problem	0.5	.	.	0.3
Stroke	.	0.9	.	0.2
Diarrhoea/gastroenteritis	10.4	15.5	9.9	11.2
Flu	30.4	35.6	48.1	35.1
Fever	10.7	9.8	7.6	9.9
Injury	1.9	2.4	5.5	2.8
Allergies	1.7	2.0	7.2	2.9
HIV infection	0.3	.	.	0.2
Physical Disability	0.3	2.8	0.9	0.9
Mental Disability	0.3	.	.	0.2
Other	11.6	22.3	20.1	15.4
Total	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0
Number	3 341 200	1 021 600	1 183 900	5 546 700

Sample number = 5 954

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Other includes poisoning, chicken pox, conjunctivitis, thrush, meningitis, pneumonia, bronchitis and viral infection.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 9.6.2: Type of illness reported for individuals actually ill in the previous two weeks by race:  
persons aged 0-6 (PER THOUSAND)**



NOTE 2: Other includes poisoning, chicken pox, conjunctivitis, thrush, meningitis, pneumonia, bronchitis and viral infection.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 9.6.2: Type of illness reported for individuals actually ill in the previous two weeks by race:  
persons aged 0-6 (PER THOUSAND)

Type of illness	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Tuberculosis	5.0	50.8	.	.	7.6
Asthma	28.6	108.9	.	53.0	36.5
Malaria	.	27.2	.	.	2.1
Rheumatic heart disease	2.9	.	.	.	2.1
Measles	40.8	.	76.1	.	34.0
Kidney problems	5.0	.	.	.	3.7
Stroke	2.5	.	.	.	1.9
Diarrhoea/gastroenteritis	140.4	163.4	195.6	32.2	130.4
Flu	432.2	132.5	608.9	359.3	408.4
Fever	118.9	217.8	38.1	61.0	114.8
Injury	26.2	27.2	40.7	64.5	32.0
Allergies	19.0	81.7	40.7	88.7	34.0
HIV infection	2.4	.	.	.	1.8
Physical Disability	7.8	27.2	.	16.1	10.0
Mental Disability	2.5	.	.	.	1.9
Other	165.8	163.4	.	325.2	178.8
Total	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0	1000.0
Number	354 600	36 000	23 000	63 300	476 900

Sample number = 506

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Other includes poisoning, chicken pox, conjunctivitis, thrush, meningitis, pneumonia, bronchitis and viral infection.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 9.7: Health care consultation for individuals reporting ill by race (Percentage)

Type of consultation	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
No-one	18.2	14.5	15.6	18.1	17.7
Family/Friend	0.4	0.6	0.6	0.4	0.4
Private Doctor	35.0	47.6	66.4	68.9	43.6
Traditional healer	2.9	.	.	.	2.0
Health Centre/Clinic	17.4	4.2	4.2	2.2	12.9
Hospital	23.6	31.6	11.0	7.2	20.9
Primary Health Worker	0.2	.	.	.	0.1
Pharmacy	1.1	0.9	1.7	1.9	1.2
Shop/Supermarket	0.6	.	.	.	0.4
Private Nurse	0.1	.	.	.	0.0
Other	0.5	0.6	0.6	1.4	0.6
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	2 220 100	314 500	152 300	567 000	3 253 900

Sample number = 3 389

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 9.7.1: Health care consultation for individuals reporting ill by location and gender: All (Percentage)

Type of consultation	Rural			Urban			Metropolitan			All/S.A.		
	Female	Male	All	Female	Male	All	Female	Male	All	Female	Male	All
No-one	19.2	19.4	19.3	16.5	18.5	17.3	17.4	13.3	15.5	18.1	17.2	17.7
Family/friend	0.5	0.0	0.3	0.4	0.6	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.6	0.5	0.4	0.4
Private Doctor	34.9	33.8	34.5	53.2	48.7	51.3	52.2	52.2	52.2	44.1	43.0	43.6
Traditional healer	3.4	3.0	3.2	1.2	0.3	0.8	0.2	1.7	0.9	2.0	2.0	2.0
Health Centre/Clinic	18.5	16.7	17.8	6.6	9.8	8.0	9.3	8.3	8.8	13.2	12.5	12.9
Hospital	21.2	24.9	22.7	20.6	19.3	20.0	18.2	19.6	18.8	20.1	22.0	20.9
Primary Health Worker	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.4	0.2	0.3	0.2	0.1	0.2
Pharmacy	1.0	0.7	0.9	0.9	2.2	1.5	1.1	2.3	1.6	1.0	1.5	1.2
Shop/Supermarket	0.9	0.6	0.8	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.2	0.1	0.4	0.3	0.4
Private Nurse	0.3	0.0	0.1	0.0	0.3	0.1	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.1	0.1
Other	0.1	0.8	0.4	0.6	0.3	0.5	0.7	1.6	1.1	0.4	1.0	0.6
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	896 300	639 900	1 536 200	404 300	300 600	704 900	554 400	458 400	1 012 800	1 855 000	1 398 900	3 253 900

Sample number = 3 389

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 9.7.2: Health care consultation for individuals reporting ill by location and gender: African (Percentage)

Type of consultation	Rural			Urban			Metropolitan			All/S.A.		
	Female	Male	All	Female	Male	All	Female	Male	All	Female	Male	All
No-one	19.2	19.6	19.3	16.7	21.0	18.4	16.6	9.5	13.6	18.3	18.0	18.2
Family/friend	0.5	0.0	0.3	0.4	0.6	0.5	1.0	0.7	0.8	0.6	0.2	0.4
Private Doctor	34.0	33.1	33.6	41.9	34.1	38.8	37.6	36.6	37.2	35.9	33.8	35.0
Traditional healer	3.5	3.1	3.3	2.2	0.7	1.6	0.5	4.9	2.4	2.8	3.0	2.9
Health Centre/Clinic	19.0	17.2	18.2	9.6	15.4	11.9	20.3	17.9	19.3	17.7	17.0	17.4
Hospital	21.5	24.9	22.9	27.5	24.4	26.2	22.1	26.7	24.0	22.6	25.1	23.6
Primary Health Worker	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.9	0.7	0.8	0.2	0.2	0.2
Pharmacy	1.0	0.7	0.9	1.3	2.6	1.8	0.9	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1
Shop/Supermarket	0.9	0.6	0.8	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.7	0.3	0.6	0.5	0.6
Private Nurse	0.3	0.0	0.2	0.0	0.6	0.2	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.2	0.1	0.1
Other	0.1	0.9	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.5	0.0	1.3	0.5	0.2	0.9	0.5
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	869 000	617 700	1 486 700	213 700	141 400	355 100	219 600	158 600	378 300	1 302 300	917 700	2 220 100

Sample number = 2 408

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 9.8: Health care consultation for individuals reporting days lost by race: persons aged 16-64 (Percentage)**

Type of Consultation	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
No-one	15.6	10.5	13.4	13.3	14.5
Family/friend	0.2	0.6	.	.	0.2
Private Doctor	37.2	44.6	63.5	72.9	44.7
Traditional healer	3.5	.	.	.	2.3
Health Centre/Clinic	13.6	3.8	6.2	2.9	10.4
Hospital	27.3	39.0	14.5	8.5	25.3
Primary Health Worker	0.3	.	.	.	0.2
Pharmacy	1.2	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.2
Shop/Supermarket	0.3	.	.	.	0.2
Private Nurse	0.2	.	.	.	0.2
Other	0.6	0.6	1.2	1.2	0.7
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	974 200	177 900	72 400	211 300	1 435 900

Sample number = 1 500

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 9.8.1: Health care consultation for individuals reporting ill by gender (Percentage)**

Type of consultation	Female	Male	All
No-one	18.1	17.2	17.7
Family/friend	0.5	0.4	0.4
Private doctor	44.1	43.0	43.6
Traditional healer	2.0	2.0	2.0
Health clinic/centre	13.2	12.5	12.9
Hospital	20.1	21.9	20.9
Primary Health Worker	0.2	0.1	0.1
Pharmacy	1.0	1.5	1.2
Shop/Supermarket	0.4	0.3	0.4
Private Nurse	0.1	0.0	0.0
Other	0.4	1.0	0.6
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	1 855 000	1 398 900	3 253 900

Sample number = 3 389

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 9.9: Reasons for non-treatment/consultation for those reporting ill by race (Percentage)**

Reason for non-treatment	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Did not want/need it	27.9	31.0	55.8	74.6	37.5
Too expensive	44.9	21.6	40.5	13.2	37.3
Insufficient money for transport	15.9	2.2	.	.	11.3
Did not know where to go	1.1	.	.	.	0.8
Did not know how to get there	0.2	.	.	.	0.2
Hours were not convenient	0.4	.	.	1.0	0.5
Would lose pay from work	0.7	.	.	.	0.5
Other	8.8	45.3	3.7	11.2	11.9
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	401 500	45 500	23 700	100 500	571 200

Sample number = 596

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 9.10: Reasons for non-treatment/consultation for those reporting days lost by race (Percentage)

Reason for non-treatment	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Did not want/need it	21.5	27.3	66.8	77.2	30.3
Too expensive	53.4	24.2	33.2	13.9	45.2
Insufficient money for transport	17.1	3.0	.	.	13.1
Did not know where to go	0.7	.	.	.	0.5
Did not know how to get there	0.3	.	.	.	0.3
Hours were not convenient	0.3	.	.	2.5	0.6
Other	6.7	45.5	.	6.3	10.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	257 900	32 400	13 200	40 400	343 900

Sample number = 365

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



# **CHAPTER TEN**

# **FERTILITY**

## 10.2 Pregnancy and Child Health

**Interviewer:** Ask for all women aged 15 to 49 years. Record person names and codes from the flap and write them under Question 1 and Question 2.

**Next:** Repeat all the questions for the first person on the list before going on to the next person.

**Note:** • In Question 3, if answer is "0" (zero) then go to next person

1.  Name	2.  Person Code	3. How many times has ____ been pregnant?  If "0", go to next person (Number)	4. How many times has ____ given birth?  (Number)	5. How many babies were not born alive?  (Number)	6. How many children are alive now?  (Number)	7. How many died before age 1?  (Number)	8. How many died between ages 1 and 5?  (Number)	9. Is ____ pregnant now?		10. Is ____ breastfeeding at the moment?		11. How old is ____'s youngest child  (Years)
								Yes	No	Yes	No	
								-1	-2	-1	-2	
								-1	-2	-1	-2	
								-1	-2	-1	-2	
								-1	-2	-1	-2	
								-1	-2	-1	-2	
								-1	-2	-1	-2	
								-1	-2	-1	-2	
								-1	-2	-1	-2	
								-1	-2	-1	-2	
								-1	-2	-1	-2	
								-1	-2	-1	-2	

Table 10.1: Incidence of pregnancies and number of children ever born by age group and race (Percentage)

Table 10.1: Incidence of pregnancies and number of children ever born by age group and race (Percentage)

Age	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
15-19					
Ever pregnant (%)	16.7	9.3	0.0	0.0	14.6
Children ever born (#)	0.2	0.1	0.0	0.0	0.1
No. of women	1 592 800	134 200	46 700	130 700	1 904 400
20-24					
Ever pregnant (%)	59.7	40.1	35.0	23.6	54.0
Children ever born (#)	0.9	0.5	0.4	0.3	0.8
No. of women	1 543 700	157 700	58 300	180 400	1 940 100
25-29					
Ever pregnant (%)	84.7	81.6	72.0	59.9	81.4
Children ever born (#)	1.8	1.5	1.2	1.0	1.7
No. of women	1 233 600	143 000	37 900	177 100	1 591 700
30-34					
Ever pregnant (%)	92.3	93.0	89.2	86.3	91.3
Children ever born (#)	2.8	2.6	2.3	1.7	2.6
No. of women	1 029 400	123 600	48 600	210 300	1 411 800
35-39					
Ever pregnant (%)	95.3	92.5	94.8	92.2	94.5
Children ever born (#)	3.7	3.1	2.5	2.4	3.4
No. of women	853 600	116 300	34 600	195 400	1 199 900
40-44					
Ever pregnant (%)	94.9	95.8	91.4	88.7	93.9
Children ever born (#)	4.4	3.8	2.8	2.3	3.9
No. of women	741 500	109 700	40 700	164 800	1 056 700
45-49					
Ever pregnant (%)	96.1	94.6	89.8	92.5	94.9
Children ever born (#)	5.0	4.2	3.0	2.5	4.3
No. of women	540 200	73 000	34 400	180 400	827 900

Sample number = 10 462

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.2.

NOTE 2: Ever pregnant (%) = Percentage of women who have ever been pregnant.

NOTE 3: Children ever born (#) = Number of children ever born.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 10.1.1: Incidence of pregnancies and number of children ever born by age group and province (Percentage)

Age	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A
15-19										
Ever pregnant (%)	6.3	15.3	13.2	14.4	17.5	18.2	17.6	19.3	12.0	14.6
Children ever born (#)	0.0	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.1	0.1
No. of women	147 000	18 900	356 500	459 100	127 900	165 200	258 800	149 600	220 300	1 904 400
20-24										
Ever pregnant (%)	38.4	35.1	48.3	58.0	57.9	64.8	64.6	62.8	43.0	54.0
Children ever born (#)	0.5	0.5	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.6	0.8
No. of women	177 200	19 600	289 500	406 700	139 700	174 400	254 800	167 400	310 600	1 940 100
25-29										
Ever pregnant (%)	78.7	89.2	82.9	83.5	80.0	84.9	87.9	84.8	72.6	81.4
Children ever born (#)	1.4	1.7	1.8	1.8	1.6	1.9	2.0	1.5	1.3	1.7
No. of women	144 200	27 100	210 500	315 100	112 400	150 100	179 600	134 800	317 800	1 591 700
30-34										
Ever pregnant (%)	91.5	89.1	90.9	90.2	90.3	94.3	90.1	95.4	91.0	91.3
Children ever born (#)	2.3	2.7	3.1	2.9	2.4	2.8	3.0	2.5	2.2	2.6
No. of women	150 300	27 800	202 000	291 300	97 600	116 000	117 100	105 500	304 000	1 411 800
35-39										
Ever pregnant (%)	91.2	85.5	95.1	94.7	95.6	96.7	96.4	94.5	94.3	94.5
Children ever born (#)	2.6	3.2	4.2	3.5	3.5	3.5	4.5	3.0	2.8	3.4
No. of women	141 600	14 200	169 500	219 500	79 300	85 900	124 200	102 900	262 900	1 199 900
40-44										
Ever pregnant (%)	93.5	77.8	94.6	91.6	96.1	93.1	96.9	96.7	93.5	93.9
Children ever born (#)	3.3	2.7	4.5	4.3	3.8	4.3	4.9	4.1	3.1	3.9
No. of women	132 600	8 600	132 600	199 400	65 600	85 900	114 700	81 800	235 300	1 056 700
45-49										
Ever pregnant (%)	95.3	67.2	96.5	92.5	98.5	100.0	97.7	94.1	93.1	94.9
Children ever born (#)	3.3	4.2	4.8	4.7	4.7	5.3	5.3	4.5	3.2	4.3
No. of women	107 000	6 000	119 000	166 600	55 000	55 600	76 800	64 900	177 100	827 900

Sample number = 10 462

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.2.

NOTE 2: Ever pregnant (%) = Percentage of women who have ever been pregnant.

NOTE 3: Children ever born (#) = Number of children ever born.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 10.2: Infant and child mortality by age group and race (PER THOUSAND)

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.2.  
 NOTE 2: Ever pregnant (%) = Percentage of women who have ever been pregnant.  
 NOTE 3: Children ever born (#) = Number of children ever born.  
 NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 10.2: Infant and child mortality by age group and race (PER THOUSAND)

Age	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
15-19					
Died 0-1	36.1	0.0	0.0	0.0	34.5
Died 0-5	38.6	0.0	0.0	0.0	36.9
No. of women	242 300	11 800	0	0	253 800
20-24					
Died 0-1	48.1	23.4	27.8	0.0	44.7
Died 0-5	58.9	23.4	27.8	0.0	54.3
No. of women	897 900	63 300	15 000	39 000	1 016 200
25-29					
Died 0-1	47.8	0.0	17.9	11.2	40.5
Died 0-5	65.2	8.3	17.9	22.7	56.3
No. of women	20 700	114 900	24 700	98 000	1 258 300
30-34					
Died 0-1	58.3	15.8	27.9	2.2	47.1
Died 0-5	85.1	20.8	27.9	2.2	67.9
No. of women	945 900	114 900	43 300	171 300	1 275 400
35-39					
Died 0-1	60.5	6.1	25.0	8.6	47.3
Died 0-5	93.6	14.0	25.0	8.6	72.5
No. of women	805 100	107 600	31 900	179 400	1 124 000
40-44					
Died 0-1	54.0	20.1	18.7	13.0	44.0
Died 0-5	92.0	39.5	26.6	14.7	74.3
No. of women	698 900	105 100	37 200	144 200	985 400
45-49					
Died 0-1	63.7	24.8	26.2	7.0	48.5
Died 0-5	108.6	41.8	27.0	7.0	81.1
No. of women	515 300	69 000	30 900	164 800	780 000

Sample number = 7 051

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.2.

NOTE 2: Figures tabled above are PER THOUSAND and not a percentage.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 10.2.1: Infant and child mortality by aged group and province (PER THOUSAND)

Age	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A
15-19										
Died 0-1	0.0	0.0	20.4	22.4	43.5	37.0	20.8	71.4	90.9	34.5
Died 0-5	0.0	0.0	33.5	22.4	43.5	37.0	20.8	71.4	90.9	36.9
No. of women	8 200	3 000	45 200	59 700	20 700	25 500	43 000	26 100	22 400	253 800
20-24										
Died 0-1	53.8	71.4	75.2	48.2	60.1	50.4	29.3	43.8	2.6	44.7
Died 0-5	53.8	71.4	88.2	61.2	94.5	63.0	31.2	43.8	8.4	54.3
No. of women	66 900	7 000	138 000	222 500	75 200	111 000	160 900	103 200	131 500	1 016 200
25-29										
Died 0-1	11.1	43.5	58.9	55.6	60.0	43.5	27.8	37.5	19.7	40.5
Died 0-5	28.9	77.6	77.2	74.9	66.8	61.6	34.1	77.1	23.0	56.3
No. of women	110 500	23 100	172 700	253 300	86 900	126 600	155 200	110 600	219 500	1 258 300
30-34										
Died 0-1	31.0	0.0	86.4	48.2	56.3	40.1	48.6	73.4	17.8	47.1
Died 0-5	32.6	23.3	116.5	78.9	103.2	71.1	61.7	88.0	22.1	67.9
No. of women	134 500	24 800	183 700	260 100	86 000	108 500	103 700	100 600	273 500	1 275 400
35-39										
Died 0-1	24.6	27.8	70.7	64.6	90.6	55.7	36.7	48.1	14.4	47.3
Died 0-5	33.1	48.6	106.4	89.7	108.6	85.8	72.3	90.1	28.5	72.5
No. of women	129 000	52 100	159 200	205 300	74 100	83 100	117 900	96 400	246 800	1 124 000
40-44										
Died 0-1	13.8	0.0	64.8	51.2	96.7	28.0	42.1	80.1	18.1	44.0
Died 0-5	40.6	0.0	107.8	83.6	145.4	58.1	84.8	99.7	32.9	74.3
No. of women	123 900	6 900	125 400	180 800	63 000	80 000	109 400	78 100	217 900	985 400
45-49										
Died 0-1	22.6	31.3	70.5	50.1	57.7	65.6	78.3	53.5	18.8	48.5
Died 0-5	32.0	31.3	134.6	99.1	98.8	95.9	103.4	76.7	30.1	81.1
No. of women	101 900	4 000	114 000	151 500	54 200	55 600	75 000	61 100	162 800	780 000

Sample number = 7 051

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.2.

NOTE 2: Figures tabled above are PER THOUSAND and not a percentage.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 10.2.

NOTE 2: Figures tabled above are PER THOUSAND and not a percentage.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

## **CHAPTER ELEVEN**

# **CHILDREN'S HEALTH AND NUTRITIONAL STATUS**

## Section 11: Anthropometry

**Anthropometrist:** Fill in this section for all children in the household who are **6 years old or younger** (in other words, **up to 72 months**).

SCALE  
CHECKED  
(Tick ✓)

**First:** Copy the children's names and codes from the flap. Do not copy age.

**Next:** Record the information relating to each person in the grid below for Questions 3 to 10.

**Then:** Weigh and measure the height of the child and record the measurements using only one decimal point.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.	11.	12.	13.
	Person Code	What is the gender of the child?	Date of birth	Source of birth date	Does the child have a hospital or clinic card?	Check card and ask whether child has been vaccinated against the following illnesses?	Is she/he being breast- fed?	At what age did breast- feeding stop?	How many times is child fed per day?	Weight	Height	Reason not measured
Name	Code	Male -M Female-F	Month/ Year	Code	If NO, go to 8.	Record the number of vaccinations. If None record "0" (zero)	Yes No	Months	Number	Kg	Cm	Code
					Yes No	7a. Measles	7b. DPT	7c. Polio	7d. TB	Yes No		
		M F			-1 -2					-1 -2	.	.
		M F			-1 -2					-1 -2	.	.
		M F			-1 -2					-1 -2	.	.
		M F			-1 -2					-1 -2	.	.
		M F			-1 -2					-1 -2	.	.
		M F			-1 -2					-1 -2	.	.
		M F			-1 -2					-1 -2	.	.
		M F			-1 -2					-1 -2	.	.
		M F			-1 -2					-1 -2	.	.
		M F			-1 -2					-1 -2	.	.

### Codes for Question 5

1= Clinic Card	5= Reported by other person
2= Road to health Card	6= School Card
3= Baptismal Certificate	7= Birth certificate
4= Reported by mother	8=Other (Specify)

### Codes for Question 13

1= Child not present
2= Refusal by parent or other person
3= Child ill
4= Other (Specify)



Codes for Question 5	
1= Clinic Card	5= Reported by other person
2= Road to health Card	6= School Card
3= Baptismal Certificate	7= Birth certificate
4= Reported by mother	8=Other (Specify)

2= Refusal by parent or guardian
3= Child ill
4= Other (Specify)

## CHAPTER 11: CHILDREN'S HEALTH AND NUTRITIONAL STATUS

Anthropometric data was collected on all children below the age of 6 years residing in interviewed households. This was done subsequent to the interviewing of the household, and conducted by persons trained in the correct method of measuring the weight and height of a baby/child. Despite this, it was obvious that the weighing was often not properly done. In certain cases the fieldworkers were sent back to remeasure.

Nevertheless, the weight data remains questionable, and it was decided not to include tables of weight for age and weight for height z-scores.

Table 11.1: Z-scores for height for age by race and age group (children 7-60 months)

Race	7-12	13-24	25-36	37-48	49-60	All
African						
% HAZ < -2	17.5	34.4	25.4	30.0	29.1	28.3
Av HAZ	-0.6	-1.3	-1.1	-1.4	-1.3	-1.2
Number	310 700	589 700	653 900	671 700	570 100	2 796 100
Coloured						
%HAZ < -2	15.7	18.8	21.9	18.5	19.0	19.1
Av HAZ	-1.2	-0.9	-0.9	-0.7	-1.0	-0.9
Number	24 100	61 500	53 800	63 500	56 900	259 900
Indian						
% HAZ < -2	0.0	0.0	10.5	9.9	4.4	6.1
Av HAZ	-0.4	-0.5	0.1	-0.3	-0.5	-0.3
Number	4 500	12 400	16 700	17 600	21 100	72 300
White						
%HAZ < -2	0.0	5.8	7.3	3.9	4.6	4.9
Av HAZ	0.9	0.1	0.2	0.1	-0.2	0.1
Number	20 400	50 900	54 500	52 500	66 700	245 000
All						
%HAZ < -2	16.2	30.5	23.5	27.0	25.3	25.4
Av HAZ	-0.6	-1.1	-1.0	-1.2	-1.2	-1.1
Number	359 700	714 500	778 900	805 400	714 900	3 373 400

Sample number = 3 689

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 11.

NOTE 2: %HAZ &lt; -2 = Percentage with height for age z-scores less than -2.

Av HAZ = Average height for age is zero in the case of a standard population.

NOTE 3: Height for age z-scores indicate the difference (measured in standard deviations) from the median height of a health reference population of the same age.

NOTE 4: A low height for age z-score is an indication of chronic malnutrition (or stunting). A height for age z-score of less than -2 is normally used as a cut-off to determine malnutrition.

NOTE 5: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 11.1.1: Z-scores for height for age by province and age group (children 7-60 months)

Province	7-12	13-24	25-36	37-48	49-60	All
----------	------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-----

NOTE 4: A low height for age z-score is an indication of chronic malnutrition.  
less than -2 is normally used as a cut-off to determine malnutrition.

NOTE 5: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 11.1.1: Z-scores for height for age by province and age group (children 7-60 months)

Province	7-12	13-24	25-36	37-48	49-60	All
W. Cape						
%HAZ < -2	17.4	14.6	18.5	13.1	20.0	16.5
Av HAZ	-0.8	-0.8	-0.9	-0.5	-0.8	-0.7
Number	23 700	54 900	53 000	60 700	50 500	242 700
N. Cape						
%HAZ < -2	25.0	22.2	34.0	63.2	26.8	35.6
Av HAZ	-1.5	-0.8	-1.4	-1.7	-1.3	-1.3
Number	3 900	8 800	8 900	11 200	15 000	47 800
E. Cape						
%HAZ < -2	21.5	33.4	30.7	31.3	40.6	32.5
Av HAZ	-0.4	-1.1	-1.2	-1.5	-1.7	-1.3
Number	69 400	134 000	133 900	150 600	130 700	618 600
Kwazulu						
%HAZ < -2	15.8	35.6	24.5	30.8	17.1	26.0
Av HAZ	-0.5	-1.2	-1.1	-1.4	-1.0	-1.1
Number	67 700	152 900	159 900	170 800	151 000	702 300
O.F.S.						
%HAZ < -2	19.9	28.5	25.6	27.9	21.0	25.4
Av HAZ	-0.7	-1.1	-1.0	-1.2	-1.3	-1.1
Number	21 300	45 200	39 700	49 200	34 600	189 900
E. Tvl						
%HAZ < -2	15.9	28.4	20.6	20.6	17.5	21.1
Av HAZ	-0.6	-1.3	-1.0	-1.2	-1.0	-1.1
Number	34 600	60 400	73 600	67 800	52 500	288 900
N. Tvl						
%HAZ < -2	10.1	32.3	25.8	34.9	35.6	29.7
Av HAZ	-0.7	-1.3	-1.1	-1.5	-1.6	-1.3
Number	62 000	113 300	113 900	130 500	115 500	535 300
N.W.						
%HAZ < -2	22.4	36.4	21.0	23.3	26.8	25.4
Av HAZ	-0.9	-1.5	-1.0	-1.1	-0.9	-1.1
Number	24 700	33 300	57 300	51 600	55 500	222 400
P.W.V.						
%HAZ < -2	11.4	26.6	17.0	15.4	13.9	17.5
Av HAZ	-0.2	-0.9	-0.6	-0.7	-0.6	-0.6
Number	52 500	111 700	138 600	113 000	109 600	525 400
All/S.A.						
%HAZ < -2	16.2	30.5	23.5	27.0	25.3	25.4
Av HAZ	-0.6	-1.1	-1.0	-1.2	-1.2	-1.1
Number	359 700	714 500	778 900	805 400	714 900	3 373 400

Sample number = 3 689

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 11.

NOTE 2: %HAZ < -2 = Percentage with height for age z-scores less than -2.

Av HAZ = Average height for age is zero in the case of a standard population.

NOTE 3: Height for age z-scores indicate the difference (measured in standard deviations) from the median height of a health reference population of the same age.

NOTE 4: Low height for age z-scores is an indication of chronic malnutrition (or stunting). A height for age z-score of less than -2 is normally used as a cut-off to determine malnutrition.

NOTE 5: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 11.2: Vaccination status by race and age group (children 0-60 months)

Race	0-6	7-12	13-24	25-36	37-48	49-60	All
<b>African</b>							
% Card	78.6	75.2	73.2	66.4	60.8	57.5	67.3
Number of children	450 200	397 200	722 600	755 300	798 400	691 000	3 814 800
% Vaccination	93.3	94.6	96.0	94.4	92.5	92.4	93.9
Number of cards	354 900	303 300	534 400	508 200	496 800	403 600	2 601 100
<b>Coloured</b>							
% Card	93.3	85.4	91.8	88.0	89.4	78.5	87.6
Number of children	29 100	26 900	72 200	64 500	74 200	63 800	330 700
% Vaccination	96.4	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	99.7
Number of cards	27 100	24 000	66 300	57 700	66 400	50 100	291 600
<b>Indian</b>							
% Card	100.0	100.0	100.0	95.0	100.0	100.0	98.9
Number of children	6 200	6 200	14 100	18 600	18 500	21 900	85 600
% Vaccination	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number of cards	6 200	6 200	14 100	17 600	18 500	21 900	84 600
<b>White</b>							
% Card	96.0	95.9	88.0	87.0	82.2	91.8	89.3
Number of children	38 000	25 000	53 500	66 600	54 600	74 400	312 000
% Vaccination	96.4	80.9	95.7	85.4	88.0	84.9	88.5
Number of cards	36 500	24 000	47 000	59 900	44 900	68 300	280 600
<b>All</b>							
% Card	81.0	77.3	76.1	70.0	65.0	63.2	70.8
Number of children	523 500	455 400	862 300	905 000	945 700	851 200	4 543 100
% Vaccination	93.8	94.1	96.5	94.2	93.2	92.5	94.1
Number of cards	424 700	357 500	661 800	643 500	626 500	543 900	3 257 900

Sample number = 4 884

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 11.

NOTE 2: % Card = Percentage of children with vaccination cards.

% Vaccination = Percentage of children who had vaccinations.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 11.2.1: Vaccination status by province and age group (children 0-60 months)

Province	0-6	7-12	13-24	25-36	37-48	49-60	Age
W. Cape							

NOTE 2: % Card = Percentage of children with vaccination cards.  
 % Vaccination = Percentage of children who had vaccinations.  
 NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 11.2.1: Vaccination status by province and age group (children 0-60 months)

Province	0-6	7-12	13-24	25-36	37-48	49-60	Age
W. Cape							
% Card	100.0	96.4	91.9	88.7	89.7	84.1	90.4
Number of children	31 000	27 200	63 500	62 100	68 700	62 200	314 700
% Vaccination	93.1	94.4	100.0	94.5	100.0	97.1	97.1
Number of cards	31 000	27 200	58 300	56 000	61 600	52 300	286 500
N. Cape							
% Card	88.2	43.0	31.8	22.8	23.1	49.2	70.3
Number of children	9 100	4 900	12 000	12 000	14 200	18 000	68 100
% Vaccination	87.9	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	98.0
Number of cards	8 100	4 900	11 000	9 900	14 200	18 000	47 800
E. Cape							
% Card	66.6	69.6	63.0	51.8	40.8	43.8	53.9
Number of children	105 800	80 800	167 400	154 400	177 000	145 700	831 200
% Vaccination	96.3	100.0	98.4	98.9	96.7	95.9	97.7
Number of cards	71 400	58 900	108 900	81 900	78 400	64 800	464 200
Kwazulu							
% Card	76.5	65.7	73.0	70.2	57.8	60.8	66.4
Number of children	98 800	93 500	181 400	179 500	209 100	184 000	946 200
% Vaccination	96.5	97.1	93.9	95.1	90.6	91.5	93.7
Number of cards	75 600	62 300	132 400	127 800	123 600	115 300	637 000
O.F.S.							
% Card	90.0	72.1	77.1	57.9	62.3	50.2	66.5
Number of children	34 500	29 000	58 000	57 700	64 200	51 300	294 700
% Vaccination	90.3	89.6	100.0	79.7	78.5	86.5	87.7
Number of cards	31 000	20 900	44 700	34 200	40 000	25 800	196 700
E. Tvl							
% Card	82.41	85.79	82.86	65.94	76.24	68.13	75.61
Number of children	48 700	43 900	71 000	85 600	80 200	68 800	398 200
% Vaccination	90.4	84.4	94.9	93.0	93.4	87.7	91.2
Number of cards	40 100	37 700	59 700	56 500	62 100	47 800	303 800
N. Tvl							
% Card	78.1	73.5	75.5	73.9	67.4	58.2	70.4
Number of children	89 500	74 400	131 300	130 100	142 100	134 200	701 600
% Vaccination	94.9	91.9	98.2	95.4	97.2	97.7	96.2
Number of cards	69 900	54 700	99 100	96 100	95 800	79 000	494 600
N.W.							
% Card	85.2	88.7	73.6	76.0	79.3	63.4	76.4
Number of children	44 100	42 200	56 200	71 100	65 900	70 000	349 500
% Vaccination	83.0	91.8	86.1	86.5	84.4	82.8	85.7
Number of cards	37 600	37 400	41 400	55 000	52 300	44 400	268 000
P.W.V.							
% Card	96.7	93.1	86.6	80.6	81.9	89.7	86.4
Number of children	62 000	59 500	121 800	152 500	124 300	118 900	639 000
% Vaccination	98.3	96.4	97.1	96.8	95.1	92.3	95.8
Number of cards	59 900	56 400	106 400	126 000	103 800	106 600	559 200
All/S.A							
% Card	81.0	77.3	76.1	70.0	65.0	63.2	70.8
Number of children	523 500	455 400	862 300	905 000	945 700	851 200	4 543 100
% Vaccination	93.8	94.2	96.5	94.2	93.2	92.5	94.1
Number of cards	424 700	357 500	661 800	643 500	626 500	543 900	3 257 900

Sample number = 4 884

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 11.  
 NOTE 2: % Card = Percentage of children with vaccination cards.  
 % Vaccination = Percentage of children who had vaccinations.  
 NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 11.3: Breastfeeding practice by race and age group (children 0-60 months)

Race	0-6	7-12	13-24	25-36	37-48	49-60	Age
African							
%BFED	90.1	71.4	42.3	8.1	2.3	1.3	28.4
Number	448 400	398 400	720 500	752 700	798 500	691 200	3 809 700
Coloured							
%BFED	71.5	24.5	29.6	16.7	7.9	0.0	19.9
Number	30 100	26 900	72 200	64 500	74 200	63 800	331 700
Indian							
%BFED	29.3	57.0	12.4	0.0	9.5	0.0	10.3
Number	6 200	6 200	14 100	18 600	18 500	22 900	86 500
White							
%BFED	45.5	14.3	4.8	1.5	1.9	0.0	8.2
Number	38 000	25 000	53 500	66 600	54 600	74 400	312 000
All							
%BFED	85.1	65.3	38.4	8.1	2.8	1.0	26.0
Number	522 700	456 600	860 300	902 300	945 800	852 200	4 539 900

Sample number = 4 880

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 11.

NOTE 2: %BFED = Percentage of children breastfed.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 11.3.1: Breastfeeding practice by province and age group (children 0-60 months)

Province	0-6	7-12	13-24	25-36	37-48	49-60	All
W. Cape							
%BFED	76.2	36.1	22.6	17.7	5.7	0.0	20.1
Number	32 000	27 200	63 500	62 100	68 700	62 200	315 700
N. Cape							
%BFED	88.2	20.0	50.0	8.2	11.8	0.0	26.5
Number	9 100	4 900	12 000	12 000	14 200	18 000	68 100
E. Cape							
%BFED	80.5	68.7	29.9	7.6	2.1	1.2	24.9
Number	104 100	80 800	168 300	152 900	178 700	144 000	828 800
Kwazulu							
%BFED	88.4	55.8	35.5	5.0	2.6	1.5	23.4
Number	98 800	92 600	180 500	179 500	206 400	183 100	940 900
O.F.S.							
%BFED	87.4	77.9	44.6	13.8	0.0	1.6	29.6
Number	34 500	29 000	58 000	58 500	64 200	51 300	295 500
E. Tvl							
%BFED	88.4	70.1	43.8	6.8	1.3	1.3	28.3
Number	48 700	44 900	71 000	84 700	81 100	69 800	400 200
N. Tvl							
%BFED	96.7	82.7	54.4	8.3	6.9	2.0	34.6
Number	89 500	74 400	131 300	129 100	141 200	136 000	701 500
N.W.							
%BFED	75.7	68.8	37.5	8.0	0.0	0.0	25.5
Number	44 100	42 200	55 100	71 100	65 900	70 000	348 400
P.W.V.							
%BFED	77.5	58.5	39.0	6.7	0.8	0.0	22.1
Number	62 000	60 500	120 700	152 500	125 300	119 800	640 900
All/S.A							
%BFED	85.1	65.3	38.4	8.1	2.8	1.0	26.0
Number	522 700	456 600	860 300	902 300	945 800	852 200	4 539 900

Sample number = 4 880

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 11.

NOTE 2: %BFED = Percentage of children breastfed.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

## **CHAPTER TWELVE**

# **PERCEIVED QUALITY OF LIFE**



## Section 9: Perceived Quality of Life

Ask the questions in this section only to one person in the household.

Respondent Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Respondent Code: \_\_\_\_\_

1. Taking everything into account, how satisfied is this household with the way it lives these days? **(Circle one response)**

Very satisfied ..... -1  
 Satisfied..... -2  
 Neither satisfied nor dissatisfied..... -3  
 Dissatisfied..... -4  
 Very dissatisfied..... -5

2. What in your opinion could government do to most help this household improve its living conditions? In other words, what do you need most? Tell me 3 different things. **(Probe, but do not prompt. Keep on probing until three things have been mentioned.)**

**NOTE:**

- 1) Use the list below to record the needs mentioned by the respondent.
- 2) If a response does not fit the list, record under "Other" rows.

3. **When 3 things have been mentioned, ask:**

3a. Which of the three \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_ is most important? (Mark with a "1")

3b. And which one comes second? (Mark with a "2")

3c. Mark the third with a "3"

4. Thinking about the last 5 years, how would you say your physical safety when you are inside your home has changed, if at all? Are you safer than you were 5 years ago, about the same, or less safe than you were 5 years ago?

	Check Three	Rank 1, 2, 3
Jobs	-01	
Schools	-02	
Training	-03	
Clinics	-04	
Roads	-05	
Electricity	-06	
Housing	-07	
Sanitation	-08	
Piped water	-09	
Food aid	-10	
Transport	-11	
Sports facilities	-12	
Libraries	-13	
Cinemas	-14	
Banks	-15	
Shops	-16	
Peace - cessation of violence	-17	
Political Settlement	-18	
Other 1 (Specify)	-19	
Other 2 (Specify)	-20	
Other 3 (Specify)	-21	

	YES	NO
Account	-1	-2

- 3a. Which of the three \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_  
"1")
- 3b. And which one comes second? (Mark with a "2")
- 3c. Mark the third with a "3"

4. Thinking about the last 5 years, how would you say your physical safety when you are inside your home has changed, if at all? Are you safer than you were 5 years ago, about the same, or less safe than you were 5 years ago?

More ..... -1  
The same ..... -2  
Less ..... -3

5. Now thinking about your physical safety when you are outside the home:

How does it compare with 5 years ago? Do you feel safer than 5 years ago, about the same, or less safe than 5 years ago?

More ..... -1  
The same ..... -2  
Less ..... -3

- 6a. In the past 12 months, has any person in this household been a victim of crime?

Yes..... -1  
No..... -2

→ Go to Question 7

- 6b. **If YES:** I have a list of things here that could have happened to people.  
I

am going to read the list. As I go through each one, please say whether that has happened to somebody in this household in the past 12 months?  
(Read from list)

Other 3 (Specify)

	YES	NO
Assault	-1	-2
Robbery	-1	-2
Rape	-1	-2
Murder	-1	-2
Abduction	-1	-2
Other (Specify)	-1	-2
.....		

7. When you compare your situation with that of your parents, do you think you are richer, about the same, or poorer than they were?

Richer ..... -1  
The same ..... -2  
Poorer ..... -3

8. Suppose we get a new government: Do you think the situation for your household will get better, stay the same, or get worse?

Get better..... -1  
Stay the same ..... -2  
Get worse ..... -3

**Table 12.1: Perceived quality of life, at the time of the interview, by race (Percentage)**

Perceived Quality of Life	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Very satisfied	4.5	7.0	12.0	22.1	8.1
Satisfied	18.6	38.9	49.9	53.1	27.3
Neither satisfied nor dissatisfied	8.9	12.6	8.2	9.2	9.3
Dissatisfied	38.9	24.2	23.2	10.5	32.1
Very dissatisfied	29.0	17.3	6.6	5.1	23.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	6 025 500	653 900	227 300	1 545 000	8 451 800

Sample number = 8 763

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 12.1.1: Perceived quality of life, at the time of the interview, by province (Percentage)

Perceived Quality of Life	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Very satisfied	14.0	3.4	1.3	6.0	8.6	11.4	6.3	8.0	11.2	8.1
Satisfied	38.0	41.7	18.6	27.0	20.3	28.0	22.8	28.7	31.0	27.3
Neither satisfied nor dissatisfied	8.2	9.3	6.8	11.8	15.9	8.8	7.8	9.8	7.7	9.3
Dissatisfied	26.8	30.9	50.8	38.9	31.2	32.2	37.3	28.9	17.1	32.1
Very dissatisfied	13.0	14.7	22.6	16.3	24.0	19.7	25.9	24.6	33.1	23.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	882 300	116 900	1 166 800	1 370 800	660 800	720 800	894 500	805 600	1 833 100	8 451 800

Sample number = 8 763

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 12.1.2: Perceived quality of life, at the time of the interview, by race and location (Percentage)

Perceived Quality of Life	African			Coloured			Indian			White			All
	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	
Very satisfied	4.6	5.1	3.7	19.9	3.3	8.2	51.2	14.0	8.5	21.7	21.5	22.4	8.1
Satisfied	20.3	16.0	15.5	36.2	35.8	41.5		46.7	55.4	56.1	60.1	49.6	27.3
Neither satisfied nor dissatisfied	10.2	8.3	5.4	4.5	15.0	11.8	44.5	7.3	8.7	7.3	7.0	10.4	9.3
Dissatisfied	40.7	41.4	30.7	28.8	29.4	19.8		27.3	17.9	7.5	8.0	12.0	32.1
Very dissatisfied	24.2	29.2	44.7	10.6	16.5	18.7		4.7	9.5	7.4	3.3	5.6	23.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	3 797 500	1 064 100	1 164 000	43 300	258 600	352 000	1 800	131 400	94 100	126 400	430 700	987 900	8 451 800

Sample number = 8 763

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.1.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 12.2: What could the government do to help this household most? by race (Percentage)

Choice	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Jobs	56.4	59.7	56.7	22.8	51.0
Schools	22.0	10.9	9.3	12.1	19.2
Training	6.1	8.6		8.1	6.6
Health services	14.1	3.7	4.8	5.8	11.7
Roads	13.3	11.0	7.6	3.3	11.4
Electricity	25.8	9.8		3.8	20.7
Housing	38.4	41.8	39.3	12.1	34.4
Sanitation	10.1	5.7			8.9
Piped water	32.2	5.4			26.1
Food aid	21.0	38.8	4.7	8.0	19.8
Transport	5.6	4.8	7.7	6.0	5.7
Sports facilities	3.2	10.4	17.9	2.5	4.0
Libraries	1.6	1.9	8.4	0.6	1.6
Cinemas	1.0	1.3		1.9	1.2
Banks	2.0	1.3		2.1	1.9
Shops	3.5	5.0		1.8	3.3
Peace-end of violence	19.6	36.0	42.3	55.6	27.5
Political settlement	8.8	10.3	30.4	41.4	14.8
Improved income/wage etc	6.8	13.4	12.2	7.7	7.6
Lower taxes	0.3	2.4	7.1	37.1	6.7
Inflation/Price control	0.4	2.2	10.3	26.1	5.0
Social security	1.4	4.1	7.6	5.3	2.4
Improved utilities	0.1	2.3		5.5	1.2
Other recreational services	0.5	2.5	4.8	0.9	0.8
Law and Order	0.4		6.0	5.7	1.5
Telecommunications	1.5				1.4
Other	4.1	5.2	6.4	22.8	7.3
Total	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0
Number	6 056 800	650 100	225 600	1 449 200	8 381 700

Sample number = 8718

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.2.

NOTE 2: The questionnaire asked respondents to prioritise their first three choices in terms of the first eighteen choices listed in this table. If they had other choices they were asked to prioritise these.

Eight additional codes were then disaggregated from the category 'other'.

NOTE 3: 'Other' = Stabilise economy, Loans, Churches, Lower interest/bond rates, Agricultural issues and Deregulation.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 12.2.1: What could the government do to help this household most? by province (Percentage)

Choice	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Jobs	51.8	61.5	59.3	51.0	47.2	46.7	47.7	51.3	49.1	51.0
Schools	12.6	8.2	20.7	17.7	15.6	22.0	17.9	23.5	22.0	19.2
Training	10.0		5.1	5.5	3.3	15.2	5.0	5.7	5.7	6.6
Health services	4.5		22.7	12.5	5.7	9.9	21.0	9.7	6.8	11.7
Roads	6.2	34.9	15.0	16.1	10.4	9.7	13.9	15.4	3.8	11.4
Electricity	6.6	18.1	18.6	20.8	30.7	19.4	42.5	34.0	6.7	20.7
Housing	40.3	39.3	27.6	36.5	42.3	37.9	17.8	36.6	37.3	34.4
Sanitation	5.1	8.6	8.8	4.9	16.1	11.2	9.7	11.0	4.3	8.9
Piped water		12.9	36.9	33.2	23.1	20.1	56.1	28.7	2.7	26.1
Food aid	25.9	33.0	31.7	22.0	19.3	16.9	20.4	11.2	11.5	19.8
Transport	5.3		7.7	6.6	3.2	5.4	6.6	3.7	5.1	5.7
Sports facilities	6.0	15.1	1.2	6.6	2.3	4.8	3.0	6.7	2.0	4.0
Libraries	1.7		0.7	2.4		3.1	1.8	2.2		1.6
Cinemas	1.4			1.7		1.5	1.8	2.7		1.2
Banks	2.2		2.8	2.7	1.1	2.4	1.9		0.8	1.9
Shops	3.3	8.8	3.7	4.3	1.7	4.3	3.6	3.7	1.8	3.3
Peace-end of violence	38.5	14.1	15.3	22.1	25.2	27.7	6.1	25.5	47.7	27.5
Political settlement	26.8	10.2	5.2	13.0	7.2	20.1	4.3	7.8	26.7	14.8
Improved income/wage etc	13.1	7.1	4.1	3.5	16.0	8.3	8.2	7.0	7.4	7.6
Lower taxes	8.2		3.0	2.2	5.7	4.4	0.5	2.6	18.5	6.7
Inflation/Price control	5.5		1.8	2.0	7.0	0.7		1.5	14.4	5.0
Social security	4.2		1.6	1.9	1.9	2.1	1.7	1.3	3.8	2.4
Improved utilities	4.2		1.5						2.2	1.2
Other recreational services	1.7			1.7			0.6	0.6		0.8
Law and Order	3.0			1.0	2.2			0.6	3.4	1.5
Telecommunications				2.1	1.1	1.8	3.1			1.4
Other	9.9		3.5	5.8	8.7	3.3	4.2	3.8	14.3	7.3
Total	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0
Number	836 600	115 000	1 172 700	1 379 700	647 600	720 600	893 600	800 200	1 815 800	8 381 700

Sample number = 8718

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.2.

NOTE 2: The questionnaire asked respondents to prioritise their first three choices in terms of the first eighteen choices listed in this table. If they had other choices they were asked to prioritise these.

Eight additional codes were then disaggregated from the category 'other'.

NOTE 3: 'Other' = Stabilise economy, Loans, Churches, Lower interest/bond rates, Agricultural issues and Deregulation.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 12.2.2: What could the government do to help this household most? by race and location (Percentage)

Choice	African			Coloured			Indian			White			All
	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	

NOTE 3: 'Other' = Stabilise economy, Loans, Churches, Lower interest/bond rates, Agricultural issues and Deregulation.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 12.2.2: What could the government do to help this household most? by race and location (Percentage)

Choice	African			Coloured			Indian			White			All
	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	
Jobs	49.5	64.4	71.8	27.3	56.4	65.8		55.4	58.8	49.5	18.6	23.5	51.0
Schools	20.9	19.8	27.9	16.7	5.8	14.1			13.1	20.9	11.5	12.2	19.2
Training	6.5	5.9	4.8	15.7	8.1	8.2				6.5	6.1	8.8	6.6
Health services	18.4	7.5	6.1		2.3	4.4		4.1	6.0	18.4	6.1	5.9	11.7
Roads	16.3	11.3	5.1	12.9	16.1	7.1		8.9	4.9	16.3	3.8	2.3	11.4
Electricity	31.3	22.4	10.8	18.9	15.2	5.0				31.3	4.4	3.7	20.7
Housing	29.7	52.4	54.4	32.1	54.6	33.4		42.6	35.3	29.7	13.0	11.3	34.4
Sanitation	10.2	13.5	6.7	13.2	11.1					10.2			8.9
Piped water	46.4	12.2	3.6	12.3	8.4					46.4			26.1
Food aid	23.9	17.8	14.2	24.6	44.2	36.3			8.6	23.9	10.0	6.9	19.8
Transport	6.1	4.8	4.8	10.8		4.7		9.6	5.0	6.1	5.4	6.6	5.7
Sports facilities	2.9	6.1	1.5	15.9	7.8	11.7		23.3	10.7	2.9	3.1	2.4	4.0
Libraries	1.4	2.6	1.1			2.6		10.2		1.4		0.6	1.6
Cinemas	1.2	1.4			1.9					1.2	5.0		1.2
Banks	2.1	3.0				1.1				2.1	3.6	1.4	1.9
Shops	4.0	3.0	2.2		4.2	5.5				4.0	4.2	0.8	3.3
Peace-end of violence	12.0	20.2	44.0	20.3	25.8	45.0		37.0	49.7	12.0	69.6	48.7	27.5
Political settlement	4.0	10.4	23.2	7.8	5.3	14.2		32.7	26.7	4.0	46.9	38.9	14.8
Improved income/wage etc	5.3	12.9	6.4	32.7	12.9	11.5		13.6	10.5	5.3	6.8	8.1	7.6
Lower taxes			1.1		1.2	3.3		8.9			32.6	41.1	6.7
Inflation/Price control			1.5			3.2		12.2	6.7		20.1	29.5	5.0
Social security	1.2	1.6	1.9		4.4			4.7	11.8	1.2	4.9	5.5	2.4
Improved utilities						2.8					5.3	6.2	1.2
Other recreational services	0.5	0.8				3.1		4.1	5.8	0.5		1.0	0.8
Law and Order	0.3		0.8					3.4	9.8	0.3	3.9	6.7	1.5
Telecommunications	2.2		0.3							2.2			1.4
Other	3.9	4.2	4.5		3.1	7.3		3.4	10.7	3.9	13.4	26.6	7.3
Total	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0
Number	3 819 400	1 070 300	1 167 100	41 400	256 800	352 000	1 100	130 500	93 200	109 200	395 900	944 100	8 381 700

Sample number = 8718

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.2.

NOTE 2: The questionnaire asked respondents to prioritise their first three choices in terms of the first eighteen choices listed in this table. If they had other choices they were asked to prioritise these.

Eight additional codes were then disaggregated from the category 'other'.

NOTE 3: 'Other' = Stabilise economy, Loans, Churches, Lower interest/bond rates, Agricultural issues and Deregulation.

NOTE 4: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



**Table 12.3: Perceptions of safety, at the time of the interview relative to five years before, by race (Percentage)**

Perceptions of safety		African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
How safe do you feel inside the home?	More	17.9	12.7	7.0	4.9	14.9
	The Same	25.9	30.7	20.9	29.7	26.8
	Less	56.2	56.6	72.1	65.3	58.3
	Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
How safe do you feel outside the home?	More	11.9	7.8	3.1	1.9	9.6
	The Same	26.2	27.2	11.2	18.7	24.5
	Less	61.8	64.9	85.7	79.4	65.9
	Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Have you been a victim of crime?	Yes	7.9	17.0	14.8	18.3	10.7
	No	92.1	83.0	85.2	81.7	89.3
Total		100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number		6 078 700	658 700	228 200	1 547 100	8 512 700

Sample number = 8 829

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.4, 9.5 and 9.6a.

NOTE 2: Crime is within the previous 12 months.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 12.3.1: Perceptions of safety, at the time of the interview relative to five years before, by province (Percentage)

Perceptions of safety		W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N. W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A
How safe do you feel inside your home?	More	9.2	30.7	8.0	11.3	23.2	16.2	23.8	41.9	4.0	14.9
	The Same	29.9	24.2	15.3	28.8	31.7	32.8	42.8	25.7	19.9	26.8
	Less	60.9	45.2	76.7	59.9	45.1	51.0	33.4	32.4	76.2	58.3
	Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
How safe do you feel outside your home?	More	5.9	24.3	5.0	6.7	14.6	9.3	19.3	26.4	1.7	9.6
	The Same	21.7	26.6	14.1	21.4	38.6	31.1	43.3	33.0	14.2	24.5
	Less	72.4	49.1	80.9	71.9	46.8	59.6	37.4	40.6	84.2	65.9
	Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Have you been a victim of crime?	Yes	12.6	13.4	5.9	16.5	4.4	9.3	3.8	2.3	18.0	10.7
	No	87.4	86.6	94.1	83.5	95.6	90.7	96.2	97.7	82.0	89.3
Total		100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number		887 500	118 900	1 174 400	1 381 500	671 800	724 800	902 700	809 000	1 842 100	8 512 700

Sample number = 8 829

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.4, 9.5 and 9.6a.

NOTE 2: Crime is within the previous 12 months.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 12.3.2: Perceptions of safety, at the time of the interview relative to five years before, by race and location (Percentage)

Perceptions of safety		African			Coloured			Indian			White			All
		Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	
How safe do you feel inside your home?	More	22.4	18.1	3.4	51.6	14.6	6.5		10.0	2.9	4.9	4.5	5.1	14.9
	The same	29.3	23.2	17.2	22.6	36.1	27.7		17.3	26.3	34.7	29.6	29.2	26.8
	Less	48.4	58.7	79.4	25.8	49.3	65.7	100.0	72.7	70.8	60.4	65.9	65.7	58.3
	Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
How safe do you feel outside your home?	More	14.1	13.3	3.6	49.2	9.0	1.9		4.7	1.0	2.3	2.6	1.6	9.6
	The same	30.2	26.0	13.4	24.9	35.8	21.1		11.3	11.2	24.9	23.2	15.9	24.5
	Less	55.6	60.7	83.0	25.8	55.3	76.9	100.0	84.0	87.8	72.8	74.2	82.5	65.9
	Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Have you been a victim of crime?	Yes	6.6	8.4	11.7	6.8	10.9	22.8		14.0	16.2	14.0	12.6	21.3	10.7
	No	93.4	91.6	88.3	93.2	89.1	77.2	100.0	86.0	83.8	86.0	87.4	78.7	89.3
Total		100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number		3 827 100	1 077 300	1 174 300	43 300	262 600	352 800	1 800	131 400	95 000	126 400	430 700	990 000	8 512 700

Sample number = 8 829

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section Sections 9.4, 9.5 and 9.6a.

NOTE 2: Crime is within the previous 12 months.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 12.4: Type of crime affecting households who have been victims of any crime by race (Percentage)**

Crime	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Assault	32.9	49.1	20.7	13.9	10.1
Robbery	50.9	55.8	87.0	88.3	22.9
Rape	3.8	2.6	.	.	0.8
Murder	11.5	1.8	.	0.4	2.3
Abduction	2.9	0.9	.	0.9	0.7
Other	7.9	4.4	2.6	7.1	2.4
Number	478 500	112 000	33 700	282 500	906 800

Sample number = 922

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.6b.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 12.4.1: Type of crime affecting households who have been victims of any crime by province (Percentage)

Crime	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Assault	39.5	68.5	25.5	32.4	38.9	35.4	23.4	15.7	19.9	10.1
Robbery	66.6	12.4	55.1	59.0	58.2	37.3	53.9	78.9	78.4	22.9
Rape	1.8		9.3	3.5	2.8	2.6	2.6		0.3	0.8
Murder	1.8	12.9	10.7	7.4		18.0	8.6		4.3	2.3
Abduction	2.2		5.0	1.6		2.7	3.0		1.5	0.7
Other	8.1	12.4	4.7	5.9	7.2	9.9	18.9	6.4	5.9	2.4
Number	111 900	15 900	69 600	227 600	29 800	67 600	34 200	18 800	331 400	906 800

Sample number = 922

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.6b.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 12.4.2: Type of crime affecting households who have been victims of any crime by race and location (Percentage)

Crime	African			Coloured			Indian			White			All
	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	
Assault	31.8	40.4	30.2	33.3	66.7	43.4		23.8	17.1		18.9	13.8	10.1
Robbery	47.7	54.5	54.3	33.3	25.8	67.3		81.0	84.3	84.2	75.7	91.1	22.9
Rape	4.9	1.9	2.8		3.4	2.4							0.8
Murder	13.0	5.3	12.8		3.4	1.2					1.9		2.3
Abduction	3.6	2.1	2.2			1.2						1.2	0.7
Other	6.8	7.0	10.4		10.3	2.4		4.8		14.5	15.3	4.3	2.4
Number	251 000	90 300	137 200	2 900	28 600	80 500		18 400	15 400	17 700	54 400	210 400	906 800

Sample number = 922

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.6b.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 12.5: Type of crime affecting ALL households by race (Percentage)**

Crime	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All/S.A.
Assault	2.6	8.3	3.1	2.5	0.8
Robbery	4.0	9.5	12.9	16.1	1.9
Rape	0.3	0.4			0.0
Murder	0.9	0.3		0.0	0.2
Abduction	0.2	0.1		0.2	0.0
Other	0.6	0.7	0.4	1.3	0.2
Number	6 078 700	658 700	228 200	1 547 100	8 512 700

Sample number = 8 829

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.6b.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 12.5.1: Type of crime affecting ALL households by province (Percentage)

Crime	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Assault	5.0	9.2	1.5	5.3	1.7	3.3	0.9	0.4	3.6	0.8
Robbery	8.4	1.7	3.3	9.7	2.6	3.5	2.0	1.8	14.1	1.9
Rape	0.2		0.5	0.6	0.1	0.2	0.1		0.0	0.0
Murder	0.2	1.7	0.6	1.2		1.7	0.3		0.8	0.2
Abduction	0.3		0.3	0.3		0.2	0.1		0.3	0.0
Other	1.0	1.7	0.3	1.0	0.3	0.9	0.7	0.1	1.1	0.2
Number	887 500	118 900	1 174 400	1 381 500	671 800	724 800	902 700	809 000	1 842 100	8 512 700

Sample number = 8 829

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.6b.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 12.5.2: Type of crime affecting ALL households by race and location (Percentage)

Crime	African			Coloured			Indian			White			All
	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	
Assault	2.1	3.4	3.5	2.3	7.3	9.9	3.3	2.8		2.4	2.9		0.8
Robbery	3.1	4.6	6.3	2.3	2.8	15.4	11.3	15.2	13.2	9.6	19.4		1.9
Rape	0.3	0.2	0.3		0.4	0.6							0.0
Murder	0.9	0.4	1.5		0.4	0.3				0.2			0.2
Abduction	0.2	0.2	0.3			0.3					0.3		0.0
Other	0.4	0.6	1.2		1.1	0.6	0.7		2.0	1.9	0.9		0.2
Number	3 827 100	1 077 300	1 174 300	43 300	262 600	352 800	1 500	131 400	95 000	126 400	430 700	990 000	8 512 700

Sample number = 8 829

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.6b.

NOTE 2: Respondent's perception at time of the interview, before the elections.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 12.6: Respondent's perception of current situation relative to parent's situation and expectations for the future by race (Percentage)**

Perceptions of safety		African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Richer than parents	Richer	20.4	27.0	35.5	39.9	24.9
	The same	21.8	26.5	32.4	26.3	23.2
	Poorer	57.8	46.5	32.2	33.8	51.9
	Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
	Number	6 061 000	657 000	227 400	1 531 200	8 476 500
Situation under new Govt.	Better	69.2	38.5	33.6	8.0	56.0
	The same	14.6	25.3	17.7	30.2	18.0
	Worse	16.1	36.3	48.8	61.8	26.0
	Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
	Number	5 796 800	427 400	195 000	1 352 100	7 771 200

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.7 and 9.8.

NOTE 2: Respondent's perception at time of the interview, before the elections.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 12.6.1: Respondent's perception of current situation relative to parent's situation and expectations for the future by province (Percentage)

Perceptions of safety		W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A.
Richer than parents	Richer	33.5	32.0	10.7	24.4	27.8	21.3	28.7	26.0	27.5	24.8
	The same	24.6	15.3	13.4	21.6	27.4	30.1	23.3	27.5	24.3	23.2
	Poorer	41.8	52.7	75.8	53.9	44.7	48.6	48.0	46.5	48.2	51.9
	Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
	Number	878 300	118 900	1 172 000	1 378 800	662 800	724 800	899 100	804 600	1 837 300	8 476 500
Situation under new Govt.	Better	33.9	64.0	70.9	43.0	61.9	68.3	72.6	72.5	41.0	56.0
	The same	26.8	15.5	10.5	23.0	17.3	15.1	16.6	12.4	20.5	18.0
	Worse	39.3	20.5	18.6	34.0	20.8	16.6	10.7	15.1	38.5	26.0
	Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
	Number	590 300	82 200	1 045 900	1 278 200	617 900	722 100	878 600	784 600	1 771 500	7 771 200

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.7 and 9.8.

NOTE 2: Respondent's perceptions at the time of the interview, before the elections.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 12.6.2: Respondent's perceptions of current situation relative to parent's situation and expectations for the future by race and location (Percentage)

Perceptions of safety		African			Coloured			Indian			White			All
		Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	
Richer than parents	Richer	21.4	21.1	16.7	40.0	21.8	29.2		36.6	34.6	38.9	33.0	43.1	24.9
	The same	21.7	21.4	22.3	12.9	26.2	28.4		31.4	34.4	30.0	27.9	25.1	23.2
	Poorer	57.0	57.5	61.0	47.0	52.0	42.4	100.0	32.0	31.1	31.1	39.1	31.8	51.9
	Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
	Number	3 813 900	1 074 800	1 172 200	43 300	262 600	351 100	1 800	131 400	94 200	125 100	425 100	981 000	8 476 500
Situation under new Govt.	Better	71.3	69.9	61.9	59.3	48.4	29.1	51.2	43.5	20.9	12.4	8.6	7.2	56.0
	The same	15.3	12.5	14.4	26.0	21.4	28.0	48.8	14.7	20.7	31.0	27.7	31.0	18.0
	Worse	13.5	17.5	23.7	14.7	30.2	42.9		41.8	58.4	56.6	63.7	61.7	26.0
	Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
	Number	3 652 300	1 044 200	1 100 300	25 800	166 300	235 200	1 800	106 900	86 300	106 900	345 400	899 900	7 771 200

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 9.7 and 9.8.

NOTE 2: Respondent's perception at the time of the interview, before the elections.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

# **CHAPTER THIRTEEN**

## **WELFARE AND INCOME DISTRIBUTION**

## Section 8.7: Household Income from Non-Employment Sources

---

In this section we are going to talk about any money or any form of assistance that members of the household may have received from sources **which do not involve employment of some kind**. There are many ways in which the household can receive money without being employed. For example, pension payments, charity, unemployment insurance fund, government disability grants, and other forms like that.

**Interviewer :**

**First:** Introduce this section by saying :

"I will read a list of the different ways in which people can receive money or assistance, and I'd like you to indicate whether any member of the household did, in fact, receive such assistance or not."

**Then :** Ask Question 1 for each item on the list.

<b>If no to all the items, Go to Section 9</b>
--

**Next :** For each of the items marked with a YES to Question1 : Ask Questions 2, 3 and 4.

- Note:**
- Do not include any money received from family or friends in this section..
  - If a member of the household has received money or assistance from a particular source, please make sure that you go on to ask for the estimated value of that money or assistance.

1. Did any member of the household receive income or any money from any of the sources listed below?			2. How much was received by the first person last month ?			3. How much was received by the second person last month ?			4. How much was received by the third person last month ?		
Source	Yes	No	Name	Code	Rand	Name	Code	Rand	Name	Code	Rand
01- Old Age Pension/ (Social Pension)	-1	-2									
02- Private Pension/ Private provident Fund	-1	-2									
03- Government Civil Servants pension	-1	-2									
04- Government Disability Grant	-1	-2									
05- Government Poor Relief	-1	-2									
06- Government Workmen's Compensation	-1	-2									
07- Interest earnings including dividends, interest from savings, loans	-1	-2									
08- Unemployment Insurance fund	-1	-2									
09- NGO Food or Meals	-1	-2									
10- Other NGO Transfers	-1	-2									
11- Government Supplementary Food scheme through clinics	-1	-2									
12- Other (describe)	-1	-2									

## CALCULATION OF TOTAL INCOME

NOTE: THIS IS A BRIEF SUMMARY OF HOW INCOME WAS CALCULATED. INTERESTED RESEARCHERS ARE ENCOURAGED TO OBTAIN COPIES OF THE PROGRAMS USED IN THESE CALCULATIONS. THESE ARE WRITTEN FOR "STATA" AND WILL BE SUPPLIED ON REQUEST.

### RENT INCOME AND IMPUTED VALUE OF HOUSING

Households were asked the value of the bond outstanding on their homes and to place a resale value on their homes (Section 2.1). The difference between the value of the home and the value of the bond is the net value of the home - i.e. the portion which the household "owns". Because the household could rent out their home (or, alternatively, sell it and invest the money elsewhere), it is assumed that there is an imputed rent derived from one's own home. The value of imputed rent income was estimated using the median rental rate in Section 7.2 of the questionnaire (13%.p.a., i.e. 1,083% per month) For example if a house is worth R75000 and has a bond of R50000, then the imputed rent income is R270  $[(R75000-R50000) \times 1,083\%]$ .

Rent income on farm land (Section 7.1) and other properties (Section 7.2) was also included.

### REMITTANCES

Total household remittances and marital maintenance, (Section 6.1), in the form of cash or kind are included. Households were asked how much they had received in the last month as well as the last year. The amounts received in the last year were regarded as more reliable since there are certain times of the year (e.g. Christmas) when remittances would be higher. These are remittances **received**. If "net" remittances are required, remittances **sent** are available in Section 6.2.

### REGULAR WAGE INCOME (Section 8.2)

Net wages were used, if recorded. Where only gross earnings were given, a rough conversion was done based on ratios calculated for four income groups. The same "conversion factor" would clearly not apply to all individuals, since for example those in

the lower income categories have less subtracted from their gross earnings in the form of tax and other deductions than higher income earners.

Bonuses, profit-sharing payments and the value of food, transport and housing subsidies were added.

### CASUAL WAGES (Sections 8.3.1 and 8.3.2.)

Income from casual employment was simply calculated as the sum of cash paid and the value of benefits in the form of subsidised food/goods.

### AGRICULTURAL INCOME

Note: a household was regarded as being involved in large scale agriculture if it was able to sell what was farmed for more than R20 000 in the previous year. Income from large and small scale/subsistence agriculture must be considered separately.

#### Subsistence/small scale agriculture

##### *Crop production* (Section 8.5.1.1)

If the amount harvested was not known, it was taken to be the amount sold. If a unit price was given, this was used, otherwise a median price for the type of crop was used. The implicit value of production and the implicit value of in-kind costs were converted to Rands. Crops produced for own consumption are included in the calculation of income, since they could potentially be sold and generate income. As such, they also represent an expenditure to the household since it buys the produce from itself.

##### *Livestock, cattle, etc.* (Section 8.5.1.2)

Median sales prices were used to value the income from the production of milk and eggs. Herd losses (although fairly high in

August 1994

some cases) were ignored because of incomplete information. A



**REGULAR WAGE INCOME** (Section 8.5.1.1)  
Net wages were used, if recorded. Where only gross earnings were given, a rough conversion was done based on ratios calculated for four income groups. The same "conversion factor" would clearly not apply to all individuals, since for example those in

**Livestock, cattle, etc.** (Section 8.5.1.2)  
Median sales prices were used to value the income from the production of milk and eggs. Herd losses (although fairly high in August 1994

some cases) were ignored because of incomplete information. A few households did not know how many animals/chickens had been slaughtered. In these cases a conversion factor based on the median ratio of slaughtered to owned was used.

**Other farming income** (Section 8.5.1.3)

16 small scale farmers receive subsidies or drought relief. Other farming income would include income received from providing services to other farmers or renting out equipment.

**Farming costs** (Section 8.5.1.5)

All the costs from this section were set against imputed earnings.

**Large scale/commercial agriculture**

Revenue was calculated as the sum of gross income from crop production, horticulture, animal products, etc as well as subsidies and drought relief. The cost of labour was taken to be R350 per labourer per month if the cost was not recorded, but the number of workers was. After subtracting costs involved, profit was adjusted for the percentage of the farm the household owned if in partnership. If costs exceeded revenue, then profit was set to zero.

**INCOME FROM SELF-EMPLOYMENT** (Section 8.6)

Profit was calculated as the difference between gross sales and expenses. Where the business was running at a loss, profit was set to zero. Clearly, profits can be negative in the short run. This step was undertaken as we want long run income.

**NON-EMPLOYMENT INCOME** (Section 8.7)

Income from pensions, disability grants, U.I.F., etc. is included.

Table 13.1: Average MONTHLY household income by province and race (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	1 050.00	147 800	2 157.00	373 800	4 259.00	1 800	5 748.00	288 000	3 234.00	811 400
N. Cape	1 668.00	26 800	1 089.00	87 300	.	.	.	.	1 225.00	114 100
E. Cape	745.00	990 400	1 573.00	47 000	.	.	4 547.00	95 000	1 098.00	1 132 300
Kwazulu	984.00	1 045 400	2 817.00	42 800	3 741.00	178 500	5 277.00	96 100	1 705.00	1 362 900
O.F.S.	917.00	553 600	1 187.00	18 900	.	.	10 304.00	86 600	2 161.00	657 100
E. Tvl	1 122.00	642 300	463.00	800	5 102.00	2 800	10 864.00	67 400	2 057.00	713 300
N. Tvl	723.00	811 000	.	.	.	.	3 820.00	70 400	971.00	881 400
N.W.	1 006.00	716 900	829.00	1 700	1 231.00	900	4 239.00	72 400	1 301.00	791 900
P.W.V.	1 439.00	1 055 700	3 244.00	46 700	5 485.00	31 800	6 653.00	641 200	3 442.00	1 775 500
All/S.A.	1 005.00	5 990 000	2 057.00	617 100	4 009.00	215 800	6 394.00	1 417 100	2 089.00	8 240 000

Sample number = 8 568

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.1.1: Average MONTHLY household per capita income by province and race (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	414.00	147 800	533.00	373 800	1 646.00	1 800	2 172.00	288 000	1 095.00	811 400
N. Cape	727.00	26 800	378.00	87 300					460.00	114 100
E. Cape	185.00	990 400	302.00	47 000			1 619.00	95 000	310.00	1 132 300
Kwazulu	210.00	1 045 400	772.00	42 800	908.00	178 500	2 248.00	96 100	463.00	1 362 900
O.F.S.	364.00	553 600	351.00	18 900			3 556.00	86 600	785.00	657 100
E. Tvl	400.00	642 300	463.00	800	1 667.00	2 800	2 891.00	67 400	640.00	713 300
N. Tvl	176.00	811 000					1 656.00	70 400	294.00	881 400
N.W.	395.00	716 900	829.00	1 700	1 231.00	900	1 513.00	72 400	499.00	791 900
P.W.V.	530.00	1 055 700	951.00	46 700	1 444.00	31 800	2 575.00	641 200	1 296.00	1 775 500
All/S.A.	322.00	5 990 000	537.00	617 100	1 005.00	215 800	2 382.00	1 417 100	710.00	8 240 000

Sample number = 8 568

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.1.2: Average MONTHLY per capita income by province and race (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	274.00	565 500	459.00	1 755 000	1 420.00	5 300	1 896.00	873 200	820.00	3 199 100
N. Cape	479.00	93 200	241.00	394 400	.	.	.	.	287.00	487 500
E. Cape	142.00	5 204 300	289.00	255 800	.	.	1 231.00	350 800	214.00	5 810 900
Kwazulu	158.00	6 510 500	642.00	187 900	847.00	788 400	2 034.00	249 400	300.00	7 736 200
O.F.S.	228.00	2 226 900	309.00	65 000	.	.	3 270.00	272 900	554.00	2 564 900
E. Tvl	240.00	3 001 800	463.00	800	2 212.00	6 400	3 118.00	234 800	452.00	3 243 900
N. Tvl	135.00	4 359 300	.	.	.	.	1 551.00	173 600	189.00	4 532 900
N.W.	259.00	2 779 000	829.00	1 700	1 231.00	900	1 332.00	230 200	342.00	3 011 800
P.W.V.	382.00	3 973 100	737.00	205 500	1 304.00	133 800	2 240.00	1 904 200	983.00	6 216 600
All/S.A.	210.00	28 713 700	443.00	2 866 100	926.00	934 900	2 112.00	4 289 200	468.00	36 803 800

Sample number = 38 960

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.2: Average MONTHLY household income by province and race: Female headed households (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	994.00	48 200	1 725.00	87 300	4 650.00	900	3 142.00	50 600	1 934.00	187 000
N. Cape	490.00	1 100	939.00	22 600					919.00	23 600
E. Cape	644.00	385 300	1 485.00	9 800			1 691.00	9 200	688.00	404 300
Kwazulu	889.00	326 700	1 823.00	11 500	2 172.00	29 800	2 396.00	10 000	1 058.00	378 000
O.F.S.	740.00	138 900	781.00	4 500			3 504.00	9 200	908.00	152 600
E. Tvl	990.00	114 100	463.00	800	718.00	900	2 292.00	2 000	1 006.00	117 900
N. Tvl	605.00	258 800					1 651.00	12 300	653.00	271 000
N.W.	827.00	145 400					3 848.00	7 100	969.00	152 500
P.W.V.	1 153.00	319 500	2 536.00	4 200			3 691.00	107 200	1 798.00	430 900
All/S.A.	833.00	1 737 900	1 576.00	140 800	2 199.00	31 600	3 269.00	207 600	1 142.00	2 117 800

Sample number = 2 240

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



Table 13.2.1: Average MONTHLY household per capita income by province and race: Female headed households (Rand)

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	225.00	48 200	426.00	87 300	2 325.00	900	2 198.00	50 600	862.00	187 000
N. Cape	82.00	1 100	240.00	22 600	.	.	.	.	232.00	23 600
E. Cape	173.00	385 300	277.00	9 800	.	.	520.00	9 200	184.00	404 300
Kwazulu	168.00	326 700	435.00	11 500	708.00	29 800	1 855.00	10 000	263.00	378 000
O.F.S.	213.00	138 900	205.00	4 500	.	.	3 197.00	9 200	392.00	152 600
E. Tvl	272.00	114 100	463.00	800	359.00	900	1 372.00	2 000	293.00	117 900
N. Tvl	157.00	258 800	.	.	.	.	1 302.00	12 300	209.00	271 000
N.W.	255.00	145 400	.	.	.	.	1 923.00	7 100	333.00	152 500
P.W.V.	388.00	319 500	1 219.00	4 200	.	.	2 024.00	107 200	803.00	430 900
All/S.A.	227.00	1 737 900	404.00	140 800	743.00	31 600	1 991.00	207 600	419.00	2 117 800

Sample number = 2 240

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 13.2.2: Average MONTHLY per capita income by province and race: Female headed households (Rand)**

Province	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
W. Cape	206.00	232 400	360.00	417 900	2 325.00	1 800	1 852.00	85 800	490.00	737 900
N. Cape	82.00	6 400	216.00	98 100					208.00	104 500
E. Cape	127.00	1 951 200	287.00	50 000			634.00	24 500	137.00	2 025 800
Kwazulu	141.00	2 057 700	399.00	52 700	671.00	96 300	1 647.00	14 500	180.00	2 221 200
O.F.S.	163.00	630 700	195.00	17 800			3 086.00	10 500	210.00	659 000
E. Tvl	205.00	549 800	463.00	800	359.00	1 900	1 146.00	4 100	213.00	556 600
N. Tvl	117.00	1 333 200					1 238.00	16 300	131.00	1 349 600
N.W.	185.00	648 900					1 584.00	17 400	222.00	666 300
P.W.V.	268.00	1 373 200	1 153.00	9 300			1 722.00	229 700	481.00	1 612 200
All/S.A.	165.00	8 783 600	343.00	646 800	695.00	99 900	1 685.00	402 800	243.00	9 933 100

Sample number = 10 666

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.3: Average MONTHLY household income by location and race (Rand)

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Rural	819.00	3 759 700	1 233.00	42 300	7 313.00	1 800	10 575.00	109 300	1 099.00	3 913 200
Urban	1 175.00	1 064 100	1 418.00	246 000	3 967.00	121 700	5 125.00	405 100	2 264.00	1 837 000
Metropolitan	1 450.00	1 166 100	2 640.00	328 700	4 000.00	92 200	6 457.00	902 700	3 517.00	2 489 800
All/S.A.	1 005.00	5 990 000	2 057.00	617 100	4 009.00	215 800	6 394.00	1 417 100	2 089.00	8 240 000

Sample number = 8 568

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.



**Table 13.3.1: Average MONTHLY household per capita income by location and race (Rand)**

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Rural	250.00	3 759 700	297.00	42 300	2 301.00	1 800	3 203.00	109 300	334.00	3 913 200
Urban	397.00	1 064 100	414.00	246 000	1 009.00	121 700	1 909.00	405 100	773.00	1 837 000
Metropolitan	482.00	1 166 100	660.00	328 700	973.00	92 200	2 495.00	902 700	1 254.00	2 489 800
All/S.A.	322.00	5 990 000	537.00	617 100	1 005.00	215 800	2 382.00	1 417 100	710.00	8 240 000

Sample number = 8 568

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.3.2: Average MONTHLY per capita income by location and race (Rand)

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Rural	160.00	19 213 500	262.00	199 500	2 969.00	4 500	3 301.00	350 000	218.00	19 767 500
Urban	266.00	4 698 200	329.00	1 061 900	950.00	508 600	1 662.00	1 249 600	553.00	7 518 300
Metropolitan	352.00	4 802 000	541.00	1 604 600	875.00	421 800	2 167.00	2 689 600	920.00	9 518 000
All/S.A.	210.00	28 713 700	443.00	2 866 100	926.00	934 900	2 112.00	4 289 200	468.00	36 803 800

Sample number = 38 960

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 13.4: Average MONTHLY household income by location and race: Female headed households (Rand)**

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Rural	689.00	1 017 400					2 666.00	7 100	703.00	1 024 600
Urban	895.00	308 500	1 263.00	74 700	2 065.00	21 900	2 295.00	44 600	1 152.00	449 800
Metropolitan	1 144.00	412 000	1 929.00	66 000	2 502.00	9 800	3 576.00	155 800	1 834.00	643 500
All/S.A.	833.00	1 737 900	1 576.00	140 800	2 199.00	31 600	3 269.00	207 600	1 142.00	2 117 800

Sample number = 2 240

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.4.1: Average MONTHLY household per capita income by location and race: Female headed households (Rand)

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Rural	175.00	1 017 400	.	.	.	.	1 332.00	7 100	183.00	1 024 600
Urban	244.00	308 500	315.00	74 700	726.00	21 900	1 774.00	44 600	431.00	449 800
Metropolitan	342.00	412 000	505.00	66 000	781.00	9 600	2 083.00	155 800	787.00	643 500
All/S.A.	227.00	1 737 900	404.00	140 800	743.00	31 600	1 991.00	207 600	419.00	2 117 800

Sample number = 2 240

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.4.2: Average MONTHLY per capita income by location and race: Female headed households (Rand)

Location	African		Coloured		Indian		White		All	
	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number	Average	Number
Rural	131.00	5 362 600	.	.	.	.	1 555.00	12 300	134.00	5 374 800
Urban	184.00	1 500 200	288.00	327 400	708.00	64 000	1 475.00	69 400	264.00	1 961 000
Metropolitan	245.00	1 920 800	399.00	319 300	672.00	35 900	1 735.00	321 200	454.00	2 597 200
All/S.A.	165.00	8 783 600	343.00	646 800	695.00	99 900	1 685.00	402 800	243.00	9 933 100

Sample number = 10 666

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.5: ANNUAL household income categories (all income sources) by race (Percentage)

Income category	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
R0	1.9	1.1	0.4	1.2	1.7
R1-R999	3.7	0.6	0.4	0.1	2.8
R1000-R2999	9.3	2.5	0.4		6.9
R3000-R4999	15.3	4.7	2.4	1.2	11.7
R5000-R6999	13.1	4.9	2.1	1.1	10.1
R7000-R9999	15.2	11.4	3.7	1.5	12.3
R10000-R14999	16.7	13.8	7.7	3.2	14.0
R15000-R19999	9.2	12.3	11.0	3.9	8.6
R20000-R29999	8.4	17.0	17.4	8.6	9.3
R30000-R49999	5.1	21.4	21.3	19.4	9.2
R50000-R69999	1.2	7.3	15.3	20.5	5.4
R70000-R99999	0.5	2.2	10.4	19.1	4.1
R100000-R149999	0.2	0.3	6.2	12.1	2.4
R150000-R299999	0.0	0.4	0.8	6.4	1.2
R300000 +	0.0		0.4	1.5	0.3
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	5 990 000	617 100	215 800	1 417 100	8 240 000

Sample number = 8 568

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.5.1: ANNUAL household income categories (all income sources) by province (Percentage)

Income Category	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All
R0	0.9	2.7	4.1	1.0	1.3	0.9	1.9	1.5	1.3	1.7
R1-R999	0.5	1.7	8.2	2.0	2.2	1.7	4.8	1.2	1.3	2.8
R1000-R2999	1.9	6.1	12.0	7.5	4.7	6.1	15.0	7.7	2.5	6.9
R3000-R4999	3.7	10.4	15.2	13.6	16.1	10.7	21.9	12.2	5.4	11.7
R5000-R6999	3.9	8.7	13.7	10.7	10.1	9.7	14.5	17.8	4.9	10.1
R7000-R9999	10.3	15.6	13.6	12.5	13.4	14.4	12.1	15.5	9.3	12.3
R10000-R14999	11.6	15.6	8.9	13.6	19.6	23.5	10.2	15.5	13.7	14.0
R15000-R19999	9.8	14.9	7.8	9.4	9.5	10.9	5.3	7.0	8.7	8.6
R20000-R29999	11.9	14.4	7.1	10.4	7.8	7.2	5.2	8.1	12.5	9.3
R30000-R49999	19.4	7.1	3.9	9.6	6.0	6.6	4.9	7.7	12.9	9.2
R50000-R69999	11.9	1.7	2.8	5.1	1.9	4.0	2.4	3.6	8.6	5.4
R70000-R99999	7.8	0.9	2.1	2.9	2.8	1.8	0.9	1.1	9.2	4.1
R100000-R149999	4.4		0.4	1.3	2.8	1.1	0.8	0.5	5.8	2.4
R150000-R299999	1.6			0.4	0.8	1.0	0.1	0.5	3.5	1.2
R300000 +	0.4		0.2	0.0	1.0	0.4			0.5	0.3
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	811 400	114 100	1 132 300	1 362 900	657 100	713 300	881 400	791 900	1 775 500	8 240 000

Sample number = 8 568

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.5.2: ANNUAL household income categories (all income sources) by race and location. (Percentage)

Income Category	African			Coloured			Indian			White			All
	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	
R0	1.8	2.2	1.9		1.6	0.9		0.7		3.5	0.6	1.2	1.7
R1-R999	4.6	2.4	2.1		0.8	0.6		0.7				0.2	2.8
R1000-R2999	11.7	6.3	4.1		4.4	1.5		0.7					6.9
R3000-R4999	17.7	14.8	7.9	11.3	5.9	2.9		2.2	2.8	1.9	2.4	0.6	11.7
R5000-R6999	16.1	8.1	7.9	11.6	7.4	2.1		2.2	2.0	0.9	1.6	0.8	10.1
R7000-R9999	15.4	14.3	15.6	23.0	17.7	5.3		5.1	1.9		2.4	1.4	12.3
R10000-R14999	15.4	17.7	20.2	15.8	20.6	8.5	51.2	6.5	8.5	5.0	4.2	2.6	14.0
R15000-R19999	7.2	12.6	12.6	18.2	14.7	9.7		13.0	8.5	6.1	4.5	3.3	8.6
R20000-R29999	5.6	12.2	14.2	8.5	12.2	21.8		20.1	14.2	3.7	11.1	8.2	9.3
R30000-R49999	3.2	6.8	9.8	7.0	10.8	31.1		24.4	17.6	17.8	23.4	17.9	9.2
R50000-R69999	0.9	1.6	1.9	4.6	2.7	11.1		10.1	22.6	20.6	22.4	19.7	5.4
R70000-R99999	0.3	0.7	1.0		1.1	3.3		7.9	13.9	15.7	14.2	21.7	4.1
R100000-R149999	0.1	0.2	0.4			0.6		5.0	7.9	10.1	9.1	13.7	2.4
R150000-R499999		0.0	0.2			0.8	43.8	0.7		8.9	2.9	7.6	1.2
R300000+			0.2					0.7		5.7	1.2	1.1	0.3
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	3 759 700	1 064 100	1 166 100	42 300	246 000	328 700	1 800	121 700	92 200	109 300	405 100	902 700	8 240 000

Sample number = 8 568

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3, 8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.6 Average MONTHLY per capita, household per capita and household income by decile (Rand)



Table 13.6 Average MONTHLY per capita, household per capita and household income by decile (Rand)

Decile	Per capita		Household Per Capita		Household	
	Avpcinc (R)	Percent	Avhhpc (R)	Percent	Avhhinc (R)	Percent
1	15.00	0.3	18.00	0.3	97.00	0.5
2	50.00	1.1	65.00	0.9	304.00	1.5
3	74.00	1.6	103.00	1.5	448.00	2.1
4	102.00	2.2	152.00	2.1	614.00	2.9
5	139.00	3.0	220.00	3.1	824.00	3.9
6	190.00	4.1	325.00	4.6	1 101.00	5.3
7	271.00	5.8	493.00	6.9	1 501.00	7.2
8	422.00	9.0	789.00	11.1	2 242.00	10.7
9	794.00	17.0	1 312.00	18.5	3 818.00	18.3
10	2 619.00	56.0	3 619.00	51.0	9 938.00	47.6
Average	468.00	100.0	710.00	100.0	2 089.00	100.0
Number		36 803 800		8 240 000		8 240 000

Sample = 38 960

Sample = 8 568

Sample = 8 568

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Avpcinc = Average per capita income in rand per month.

Avhhpc = Average household per capita income in rand per month.

Avhhinc = Average household income in rand per month.

Percent = Percentage of all income accruing to the decile.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 13.7: Distribution of income quintile by race (Percentage)**

Race	Quintile 1	Quintile 2	Quintile 3	Quintile 4	Quintile 5	Total
African	26.5	25.6	22.6	18.6	6.8	100.0
Coloured	6.5	15.0	32.6	31.4	14.4	100.0
Indian	1.6	4.9	20.7	38.8	33.9	100.0
White	1.3	0.8	3.4	18.2	76.3	100.0
All	20.0	20.0	20.0	20.0	20.0	100.0
Number	.	.	.	.	.	8 240 000

Sample number = 8 568

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 13.7.1: Distribution of income quintile by province (Percentage)**

Province	Quintile 1	Quintile 2	Quintile 3	Quintile 4	Quintile 5	Total
W. Cape	4.8	9.8	22.0	28.8	34.6	100.0
N. Cape	17.6	25.0	28.8	11.7	16.9	100.0
E. Cape	38.4	24.1	20.7	9.6	7.1	100.0
Kwazulu	24.3	27.6	20.8	15.0	12.3	100.0
O.F.S.	18.1	22.1	23.3	15.8	20.7	100.0
E. Tvl	17.0	24.1	19.5	24.1	15.2	100.0
N. Tvl	39.6	27.7	16.7	9.1	6.8	100.0
N.W.	15.1	21.0	20.4	31.5	12.0	100.0
P.W.V.	6.4	9.2	17.8	27.1	39.4	100.0
All/S.A.	20.0	20.0	20.0	20.0	20.0	100.0
Number	.	.	.	.	.	8 240 000

Sample number = 8 568

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.7.2: Distribution of income quintile by race and location (Percentage)

Race & Location	Quintile 1	Quintile 2	Quintile 3	Quintile 4	Quintile 5	Total
African						
Rural	33.3	29.1	19.3	13.8	4.5	100.0
Urban	19.0	22.3	26.0	23.0	9.6	100.0
Metropolitan	11.2	17.3	30.1	29.8	11.5	100.0
Coloured						
Rural	4.6	27.4	50.4	13.5	4.0	100.0
Urban	10.4	21.2	37.7	19.4	11.4	100.0
Metropolitan	3.8	8.9	26.5	42.8	18.0	100.0
Indian						
Rural					100.0	100.0
Urban	2.2	5.0	20.9	40.2	31.7	100.0
Metropolitan	0.9	4.8	20.9	37.7	35.6	100.0
White						
Rural	3.5	1.9	4.1	17.3	73.2	100.0
Urban	0.6	1.6	5.1	25.8	66.8	100.0
Metropolitan	1.4	0.2	2.5	14.9	81.0	100.0
All						
Rural	32.2	28.3	19.2	13.9	6.4	100.0
Urban	12.7	16.5	22.6	24.3	23.9	100.0
Metropolitan	6.3	9.5	19.3	26.4	38.5	100.0
All	20.0	20.0	20.0	20.0	20.0	100.0
Number						8 240 000

Sample number = 8 568

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.7.3: Distribution of income quintile by source of income (Percentage)

Source of income	Quintile 1	Quintile 2	Quintile 3	Quintile 4	Quintile 5	All
Regular wage	23.3	43.8	66.9	78.5	64.9	65.1
Casual labour	6.0	5.1	3.8	2.3	1.7	2.4
Self-employment	6.1	5.9	4.5	5.7	7.9	6.9
Agriculture	6.2	3.1	1.6	1.0	6.2	4.4
Remittances	27.0	14.0	6.1	1.7	0.5	3.0
Rent	0.2	1.0	2.0	4.1	10.4	7.3
Other	31.2	27.1	15.1	6.8	8.4	10.8
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	.	.	.	.	.	8 240 000

Sample number = 8 568

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: For 'Other' refer to Table 13.9.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 13.8: Household income sources by race (Percentage)**

Source of income	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Regular wage	65.3	77.3	63.8	63.3	65.1
Casual labour	3.2	3.5	1.0	1.8	2.4
Self-employment	6.3	3.1	16.7	6.9	6.9
Agriculture	2.1	0.2	0.0	7.0	4.5
Remittances	7.1	2.5	1.1	0.6	3.0
Rent	1.6	5.6	11.4	10.9	7.3
Other	14.4	7.8	6.0	9.3	10.8
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	5 877 600	610 400	214 900	1 400 100	8 102 900

Sample number = 8 423

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3-8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: For 'other' refer to Table 13.9.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 13.8.1: Household income sources by province (Percentage)**

Source of income	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A
Regular wage	65.1	66.8	55.5	63.2	52.6	53.4	53.1	74.6	73.5	65.1
Casual labour	3.0	1.9	2.5	1.8	1.5	0.7	3.1	1.5	3.0	2.4
Self-employment	8.0	3.6	6.9	9.1	10.0	5.8	4.7	3.7	6.1	6.9
Agriculture	0.0	1.8	2.4	2.0	18.9	23.1	3.8	3.4	0.2	4.5
Remittances	1.2	9.5	5.4	5.4	2.8	3.3	11.2	5.2	0.8	3.0
Rent	11.6	2.7	3.4	7.3	3.3	2.8	4.0	3.0	9.5	7.3
Other	11.0	13.8	24.0	11.2	11.0	10.8	20.1	8.5	6.9	10.8
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	803 700	111 000	1 085 800	1 349 500	648 600	706 700	864 400	780 200	1 753 100	8 102 900

Sample number = 8423

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3, 8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: For 'other' refer to Table 13.9.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.8.2: Household income sources by race and location (Percentage)

Source of income	African			Coloured			Indian			White			All		
	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan
Regular wage	58.0	73.5	72.6	86.2	73.3	78.4	52.4	53.9	77.3	27.1	66.9	69.3	50.0	67.9	71.2
Casual labour	2.3	2.6	5.4	0.6	2.9	3.9	0.0	0.7	1.4	1.3	1.6	2.0	2.0	1.9	2.8
Self-employment	4.9	8.8	6.9	1.2	2.2	3.6	46.7	26.2	3.1	4.2	9.2	6.7	4.8	10.4	6.3
Agriculture	4.0	0.2	0.0	4.7	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	51.5	1.4	0.2	16.8	0.8	0.2
Remittances	11.5	3.9	1.4	0.5	6.4	1.1	0.0	1.5	0.6	0.4	0.5	0.7	8.4	2.1	0.9
Rent	0.5	2.2	3.2	0.0	2.4	7.2	0.0	11.0	12.4	5.2	8.7	12.9	1.8	6.5	10.4
Other	18.7	8.9	10.5	6.9	12.7	5.9	0.0	6.7	5.3	10.3	11.8	8.3	16.2	10.4	8.3
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	3 692 900	1 040 900	1 143 700	42 300	242 100	325 900	1 800	120 900	92 200	105 400	402 600	892 100	3 842 500	1 806 500	2 453 900

Sample number = 8 423

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3, 8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: For 'other' refer to Table 13.9.

NOTE 3: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.9: Household income from non-employment sources by race (Percentage)



**Table 13.9: Household income from non-employment sources by race (Percentage)**

Non-employment sources	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Old age pension	71.9	35.2	20.1	5.4	38.1
Private pension	12.7	7.2	4.2	30.0	20.0
Government pension	1.1	2.7	27.6	26.8	13.6
Government disability grant	8.1	22.6	13.1	1.1	5.8
Government poor relief	0.5	1.4	7.1	0.0	0.5
Government workers' compensation	0.9	1.5	4.8	0.4	0.8
Interest earnings	0.5	0.5	13.2	30.9	14.7
Unemployment insurance	3.6	6.1	3.0	1.4	2.7
NGO food/meals	0.1	.	.	0.1	0.1
Other NGO transfers	.	0.1	.	0.1	0.0
Govt. supplementary food through clinics	0.0	.	.	.	0.0
Maintenance grant	.	18.0	2.6	0.0	1.1
Sick benefit	.	0.6	.	.	0.0
Inheritance	0.0	.	1.1	0.4	0.2
Other	0.6	4.0	3.2	3.3	2.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	1 876 700	249 000	79 400	610 400	2 815 400

Sample number = 2 920

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Section 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 13.10: Main source of income by race (Percentage)**

Source of income	African	Coloured	Indian	White	All
Regular wage	52.9	75.7	79.5	75.4	59.2
Casual labour	4.4	4.5	0.8	1.4	3.8
Self-employment	5.7	1.7	7.4	3.4	5.1
Agriculture	16.0	4.3	3.3	1.9	12.3
Remittances	2.1	0.2		1.7	1.8
Rent	0.3	0.3	1.2	1.7	0.6
Other	18.5	13.4	7.7	14.4	17.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	5 877 600	610 400	214 900	1 400 100	8 102 900

Sample number = 8 423

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 1.7.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3, 8.2.4, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 13.10.1: Main source of income by province (Percentage)**

Source of income	W. Cape	N. Cape	E. Cape	Kwazulu	O.F.S.	E. Tvl	N. Tvl	N.W.	P.W.V.	All/S.A
Regular wage	74.4	53.8	34.6	53.7	63.7	67.6	33.0	67.4	76.4	59.2
Casual labour	4.2	5.4	4.3	3.5	2.0	1.7	3.9	1.7	5.9	3.8
Self-employment	3.5	2.7	4.3	5.9	3.7	5.7	5.5	3.7	6.4	5.1
Agriculture	2.8	11.7	18.2	16.6	10.5	11.4	26.6	13.9	3.2	12.3
Remittances	0.1	0.9	6.0	2.0	1.6	1.8	2.8	0.9	0.1	1.8
Rent	1.1		0.4	0.9		0.3	0.4	0.3	0.8	0.6
Other	13.9	25.6	32.1	17.5	18.6	11.6	27.9	12.1	7.2	17.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	803 700	111 000	1 085 800	1 349 500	648 600	706 700	864 400	780 200	1 753 100	8 102 900

Sample number = 8 423

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

Table 13.10.2: Main source of income by race and location (Percentage)

Source of income	African			Coloured			Indian			White			All
	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	Rural	Urban	Metropolitan	
Regular wage	44.2	63.9	71.1	84.0	66.1	81.7	51.2	73.9	87.5	60.8	70.3	79.5	59.2
Casual labour	3.2	4.7	8.1		4.4	5.1		0.7	0.9	1.0	1.4	1.4	3.8
Self-employment	4.6	7.3	8.1	2.1	2.0	1.5	48.8	8.7	4.8	3.3	3.7	3.3	5.1
Remittances	21.6	9.0	4.3		7.6	2.4		4.3	1.9	1.5	1.4	2.2	12.3
Agriculture	3.4			2.3						18.7	0.8	0.1	1.8
Rent	0.1	0.5	0.7			0.6		0.7	2.0	5.3	1.6	1.4	0.6
Other	22.9	14.7	7.8	11.6	19.9	8.7		11.6	2.9	9.5	20.8	12.2	17.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	3 692 900	1 040 900	1 143 700	42 300	242 100	325 900	1 900	120 900	92 200	105 400	402 600	892 100	8 102 900

Sample number = 8 423

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3, 8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

**Table 13.10.3: Main source of income by quintile (Percentage)**

Source of income	Quintile 1	Quintile 2	Quintile 3	Quintile 4	Quintile 5	All
Regular wage	18.5	41.0	65.2	84.1	83.8	59.2
Casual labour	6.1	5.6	3.6	2.3	1.6	3.8
Self-employment	7.7	5.9	4.3	4.2	3.5	5.1
Agriculture	37.1	16.8	7.6	1.6	0.6	12.3
Remittances	6.1	1.2	0.6	0.5	1.3	1.8
Rent	0.4	0.7	0.4	0.4	1.1	0.6
Other	24.2	28.9	18.3	6.9	8.1	17.1
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Number	1 510 900	1 648 000	1 647 700	1 648 000	1 648 400	8 102 900

Sample number = 8 423

NOTE 1: Based on Questionnaire Sections 2.1.6-2.1.9, 5.3, 6.1, 7.1.8, 7.1.9b, 7.1.13b, 7.2.2, 8.2.3, 8.2.4, 8.3.3, 8.3.6, 8.5.1.1-8.5.1.4, 8.5.2, 8.6 and 8.7.

NOTE 2: Rounding off: this results in marginal differences in corresponding totals.

# APPENDIX

## REGIONAL PROFILES

BEUKES, E & PEARCE, A. Profile of the Orange Free State (Region C). September 1993.

BRIJLAL, P & HADEBE, P. A profile of Kwazulu/Natal. August 1994.

COBBLEDICK, J; & SHARRATT, M. A Profile of Poverty in the Durban Region. October 1993.

DEWAR, N & DODSON, B. Dimensions of Poverty in the Western Cape Region, South Africa. November 1993.

ERASMUS, J; MANUEL, F; MULLER, A.M; McLACHLAN, M.H & MALATSI, M. Regional Poverty Profile: Eastern & Northern Transvaal. November 1993.

HALL, P; SAAYMAN, G; MOLATEDI, D & KOK, P. A Profile of Poverty in the PWV, Vol 1&2. 1993.

KRUGER, V & BUTHELEZI, S. Eastern Cape/Border/Ciskei Regional profile. August 1994.

LEVIN, M & SOFISA, T.N. Port Elizabeth, Uitenhage & Kirkwood. August 1993.

MPAMBANI, S.A. A profile of Transkei. August 1994.

## CROSS-CUTTING THEMES

EMMETT, A & RAKGOADI, S. Water Supply and Sanitation Services in South Africa. November 1993.

FINCHAM, R; HARRISON, D; KHOSA, M & LE ROUX, I. Nutrition and Health in South Africa: The State of Nutrition and the Development of Nutrition Policy. November 1993.

HINDSON, D & PAREKH, B. Urbanisation, Housing and Poverty: A National Literature Survey, 1980 - 1993. November 1993.

VAN HOREN, C; AFRANE-OKESE, Y; EBERHARD, A; TROLLIP, H & WILLIAMS, A. Energy Poverty in South Africa: Widening Access to Basic Energy Services. November 1993.

# **SAMPLE QUESTIONNAIRE**



**Project for Statistics on Living Standards and Development**

Good (morning/afternoon/evening), I'm \_\_\_\_\_ and we are conducting a survey for the Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit (show study ID card). The purpose of the study is to find out about your living conditions in order to plan future development in South Africa. The information you give to us will be kept confidential. You and your household members will not be identified by name or address in any of the reports we plan to write.

	Name	Code/Number
1. District		
2. E.A.		
3. Cluster		
4. Household		
5. Survey Organisation		

District			Cluster			Household Number		Organisation	

**6. Attempted visits:**

	6a. Date	6b. Time
Visit #1		
Visit #2		
Visit #3		

	Number
7a. Number of the listing unit selected	
7b. Total number of households in listing unit	
7c. Sequential number of the household on listing unit	

**8. Household Selection**

Original..... -1  
Replacement..... -2

	Visit 1	Visit 2 (if necessary)
9. Name of Interviewer:		
10. Code of Interviewer:		
11. Date:	____ / ____ / 1993	____ / ____ / 1993
12. Time Began:		
13. Anthropometrist Name:		
14. Anthropometrist Code:		

15. Name of Supervisor: \_\_\_\_\_

16. Code of Supervisor: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature of Supervisor: \_\_\_\_\_

**Strictly Confidential**

17. Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Location: \_\_\_\_\_

Reference to map: \_\_\_\_\_

18. Telephone Number (if respondent will provide it): \_\_\_\_\_

19. Population group of respondent (circle one):

African .....-1

Coloured .....-2

Indian .....-3

White.....-4

Other (Specify) .....-5

.....

20. Gender of respondent:

Male .....-1

Female.....-2

21. Language of respondent (main language spoken at home):

English .....-01

Afrikaans.....-02

Xhosa .....-03

Zulu.....-04

Tswana.....-05

North Sotho.....-06

South Sotho.....-07

Venda .....-08

Shangaan/Tsonga.....-09

Swazi.....-10

Ndebele .....-11

Other (Specify).....-12

.....

## INDEX

Section Number	Section Name	Page Numbers							Comments
1	Household Roster	4	5						
2	Household Services	6	7	8	9				
3	Food Spending and Consumption	10	11	12					
4	Non-Food Spending	13	14	15	16	17			
5	Education	18	19						
6	Remittances and Marital Maintenance	20	21	22	23				
7	Land Access and Use	24	25	26					
8.1	Employment Status	27	28	29					
8.2	Regular Employment	30	31	32	33				
8.3	Wage Work: Casual or Temporary	34	35		37	38	39	40	
8.4	Transport	41							
8.5	Agricultural Production	42	43	44	45	46	47		
8.6	Other Forms of Self-Employment	48	49						
8.7	Income from Non-Employment Sources	50	51						
9	Perceived Quality of Life	52	53						
10	Health	54	55	56					
11	Anthropometry	57							

## Section 1: Household Roster

Codes for Question 3	Codes for Question 6	Codes for Question 11	Codes for Question 14
01=Resident Head	00=None	01=Employment	01=Pretoria-Witwatersrand-Vaal (PWV)
02=Absent Head	01=Sub A - Std 1 (Class 1/Grade 1 - Std 1)	02=Looking for employment	02=Durban
03=Wife or husband or partner	02=Std 2	03=Schooling	03=Cape Town
04=Son or daughter	03=Std 3	04=Student	04=Port Elizabeth
05=Father or mother	04=Std 4	05=Personal reasons	05=E. London
06=Grandchild	05=Std 5	06=Escape violence or political problems	06=Bloemfontein
07=Grandparent	06=Std 6 (Form 1)	07=Visiting spouse or family	07=Kimberley
08=Mother- or father-in-law	07=Std 7 (Form 2)	08=Visiting friends	08=Pietermaritzburg
09=Son- or daughter-in-law	08=Std 8 (Form 3/Junior Certificate)	09=Living with other partner	09=Other Urban Area in Transvaal
10=Brother- or sister-in-law	09=Std 9 (Form 4)	10=Prison	10=Other Urban Area in Cape Province
11=Aunt or uncle	10=Std 10 (Matric/Form 5/Senior Certificate)	11=Vacation	11=Other Urban Area in Natal
12=Sister or brother	11=Std 7,8,or 9 + diploma	12=In hospital or clinic	12=Other Urban Area in Orange Free State
13=Niece or nephew	12=Std 10 + teacher training	13=Away on business	13=Rural Area in Transvaal
14=Cousin	13=Std 10+ nursing	14=National service	14=Rural Area in Cape Province
15=Great-grandparent	14=Std 10 + diploma at technikon or other technical institution	15=Other (Specify)	15=Rural Area in Natal
16=Household help (or relative of)	15=Std 10 + some university courses		16=Rural Area in Orange Free State
17=Lodger or relative of lodgers	16=Completed university degree		17=Homeland - Urban
18=Other family	17= Creche/daycare		18=Homeland - Rural
19=Other non-family	18=Pre-primary		19=Another African country (Specify)
	19=Other (Specify)		20=Other (Specify)

**Interviewer:** List all individuals who meet all three of the following criteria:

- (i) They live under this "roof" or within the same compound/homestead/stand **at least 15 days** out of the past year **and**
- (ii) When they are together they share food from a common source **and**
- (iii) They contribute to or share in a common resource pool

- Note:**
- If answer to Q.12 is yes, go back to column 1 and circle the code number of the individual (except in the case of lodgers and household help. These individuals' codes should NOT be circled). This is the PERSON CODE to be used in Sections 2 to 11 for questions relating to the household members.
  - For sections 2 - 11, answer remaining questions only for individuals whose person codes have been circled, indicating that they are defined as members of the household.
  - Once person codes have been circled in column (1), copy name, age and code of these persons to bottom flap. Mark an (\*) next to person code of the principal respondent in column 2.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.	11.	12.	13.	14.
List names of all	What is	Gender	Age in	What is the	If the spouse	If the father	If the	How	What is	Has	Did	If Yes,	
					of	of	mother of	many	the	lived		where	
					lives								

- For sections 2 - 11, answer remaining questions only for individuals whose person codes have been circled, indicating that they are the head of the household.
- Once person codes have been circled in column (1), copy name, age and code of these persons to bottom flap.

1. Code	2. List names of all individuals who meet the 3 criteria above.  (List household head first, use first names only)	3. What is _____'s relationship to household head?  (Use code box)	4. Gender  Male -M Female -F	5. Age in YEARS (at next birthday)	6. What is the highest educational qualification attained by _____?  (Use code box)	7. If the spouse of _____ lives here, write the spouse code.  If absent, code 99; if deceased, code 88. If no spouse, write " " Code	8. If the father of _____ lives here, write the father's code  If absent, code as 99; if deceased, code 88. Code	9. If the mother of _____ lives here, write the mother's code.  If absent, code 99; if deceased code 88. Code	10. How many months did _____ spend away from the household in the last 12 months? Months	11. What is the reason for his/her absence?  (Use code box) Code	12. Has _____ lived under this roof for more than 15 days of the last 30 days?  (If Yes circle code in col 1) Yes No	13. Did _____ move here during the past 5 years?  If NO go to next person Yes No	14. If Yes, where was _____'s last place of residence?  (Use code box) Code
01.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
02.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
03.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
04.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
05.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
06.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
07.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
08.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
09.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
10.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
11.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
12.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
13.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
14.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
15.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
16.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
17.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	
18.			M F								-1 -2	-1 -2	

## Section 2: Household Services

### 2.1 Housing

#### 1. Type of dwelling?

- Shack ..... -01
- House/Part of a house ..... -02
- Traditional dwelling (hut) ..... -03
- Maisonette ..... -04
- Flat ..... -05
- Hostel ..... -06
- Outbuilding ..... -07
- Combination of buildings ..... -08
- Other (Specify) ..... -09

#### 2. What are the main materials used for the roof, wall and floor? Circle the appropriate codes. (Not more than 3)

	2a. Roof	2b. Walls	2c. Floor Covering/Floor
Bricks	-01	-01	-01
Cement block	-02	-02	-02
Pre-fab	-03	-03	-03
Corrugated iron	-04	-04	-04
Wood	-05	-05	-05
Plastic	-06	-06	-06
Cardboard	-07	-07	-07
Mixture of mud and cement	-08	-08	-08
Wattle and daub	-09	-09	-09
Tile	-10	-10	-10
Carpet			-11
Linoleum			-12
Mud	-13	-13	-13
Thatching	-14	-14	-14
Asbestos	-15	-15	-15
Other (Specify)	-16	-16	-16

### 2.2 Water

#### 3. How many rooms does the dwelling have? (Exclude bathrooms, toilets & passages but include kitchens, lounges & dining rooms)

#### 4. How many rooms does the household occupy in this dwelling?

#### 5. Does the household own this dwelling?

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→ Go to Question 9

#### 6. If owned: Does the household have a bond or loan on this dwelling?

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→ Go to Question 8

#### 7. If YES: How much is still owed on the bond or loan?

R .....

#### 8. If you sold this dwelling today, about how much do you think you could get for it? (i.e. how much would it cost to rebuild it today?)

R .....

→ Go to Section 2.2

#### 9a. Does the household have to pay rent to live here?

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→ Go to Question 9c

#### 9b. If YES: How much rent is the household supposed to pay in a month?

R .....

#### 9c. If NO: Suppose you did have to pay rent to live here, how much do you think you would have to pay in a month?

R .....

#### 5. About how far away is the water that has to be fetched?

Mud	-14	-14	-14
Thatching	-15	-15	-15
Asbestos	-16	-16	-16
Other (Specify)			

## 2.2 Water

In this section we are going to talk about the water used by this household for drinking, cooking, bathing, or washing clothes, and other household purposes like these.

1. Does the water used for drinking come from the same source as the water used for other purposes like bathing or washing clothes?

Mostly yes ..... -1  
 Sometimes ..... -2  
 Mostly no ..... -3

2. What is the source of water used most often in this household for things like drinking or bathing and washing clothes? (SINGLE MENTION ONLY)

Piped - internal ..... -01 → Go to Section 2.3  
 Piped - yard tap ..... -02 → Go to Section 2.3  
 Water carrier/tanker ..... -03 → Go to Section 2.3  
 Piped - public tap/kiosk (free) ..... -04  
 Piped - public tap/kiosk (paid for) ..... -05  
 Borehole ..... -06  
 Rainwater tank ..... -07  
 Flowing river/stream ..... -08  
 Dam/stagnant water ..... -09  
 Well (non-borehole) ..... -10  
 Protected spring ..... -11  
 Other (specify) ..... -12  
 .....

3. Is the household able to get all the water it needs for normal household purposes?

Mostly yes ..... -1  
 Sometimes ..... -2  
 Mostly no ..... -3

4. Does the household have to fetch and carry water to the house each day?

Yes ..... -1  
 No ..... -2 → Go to Section 2.3

R

5. About how far away is the water that has to be fetched?

Less than 100m ..... -1  
 100m - less than 500m ..... -2  
 500m - less than 1km ..... -3  
 1km - less than 5km ..... -4  
 5km or more ..... -5

6. Who in the household usually fetches water?

**Interviewer:** Prompt for up to 3 people by asking: Anybody else?  
 First, record person codes and names in the grid below.  
 Then Ask questions 6c to 6e

	6a. Person fetching water  Name	6b.  Person Code	6c. Average number of trips per day  Number	6d. How long does each round trip take on average ? (include time spent waiting in queue) Minutes	6e. How much is carried to the house each day?  Litres
First Mention					
Second Mention					
Third Mention					

**Note for interviewer:**

1 plastic drum = 25 litres  
 1 paraffin "gogogo" = 20 litres

## 2.3 Sanitation

1. What kind of toilet does the household use?

- Flush toilet..... -1  
 Improved pit latrine - with ventilation (VIP) ..... -2  
 Other pit latrine ..... -3  
 Bucket toilet ..... -4  
 Chemical toilet ..... -5  
 None ..... -6 → Go to Section 2.4

2. Where is the toilet?

- Inside dwelling ..... -1  
 Outside dwelling - on stand..... -2  
 Outside dwelling - off stand..... -3

## 2.4 Energy

In this section, we are going to talk about the different kinds of energy that this household uses for different purposes.

1. Is the house connected to an electricity supply?

- Yes.....-1  
 No.....-2

2. I'm going to read a list of different household activities. For each one, I'd like you to tell me what the main source of energy is.

**Interviewer :** Ask for each activity in turn and then circle the correct answer  
(Record answers on the grid below)

	2a. Cooking		2b. Lighting		2c. Heating- Water		2d. Heating- Home	
	Main Source	Second Source	Main Source	Second Source	Main Source	Second Source	Main Source	Second Source
Wood	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1
Paraffin	-2	-2	-2	-2	-2	-2	-2	-2
Charcoal/ Coal	-3	-3	-3	-3	-3	-3	-3	-3
Electricity from grid	-4	-4	-4	-4	-4	-4	-4	-4
Electricity from generator	-5	-5	-5	-5	-5	-5	-5	-5
Candles	-6	-6	-6	-6	-6	-6	-6	-6
Gas from bottle (LPG)	-7	-7	-7	-7	-7	-7	-7	-7
Town gas (Piped)	-8	-8	-8	-8	-8	-8	-8	-8
Car battery	-9	-9	-9	-9	-9	-9	-9	-9
Dry battery (eg Torch)	-10	-10	-10	-10	-10	-10	-10	-10
Dung	-11	-11	-11	-11	-11	-11	-11	-11
Other (Describe)	-12	-12	-12	-12	-12	-12	-12	-12
.....								

## 2.5 EXPENDITURE - ENERGY, WATER, RATES

3. If wood is mentioned as a source of energy for any of the above

.....? 1. How much the household spend last month on



- If wood is not mentioned or not collected, go to Section 2.5.**

	3a. Person collecting wood  Name	3b.  Person Code	3c. Average number of trips per week  Number	3d. How long does each round trip take on average ? (Include time spent collecting wood) Minutes
First Mention				
Second Mention				
Third Mention				

## 2.5 EXPENDITURE - ENERGY, WATER, RATES

**ASK ALL:** About how much did the household spend last month on \_\_\_?

**Repeat this question for each type of energy mentioned in the following list.**

1a.	1b.	1c.
Item Name	Item Code	Amount spent Rand
Wood	-01	
Paraffin	-02	
Charcoal/Coal	-03	
Electricity	-04	
Candles	-05	
Gas	-06	
Purchasing/ Charging batteries	-07	
Diesel oil for generators	-08	
Other Energy (Describe) .....	-09	
Water	-10	
Municipal rates	-11	
Water, electricity and Municipal rates if paid together	-12	

**Note:** If nothing is spent on an energy item, write "0" (zero).

### Section 3: Food Spending and Consumption

In this section, we look at the patterns of food consumption for all the people in the household. This should include all the food that members of the household have bought and eaten. It should not include food that has been bought for resale or exchanging for commercial purposes.

#### Interviewer :

**First:** Introduce this section by saying :

"I have a list of different kinds of food that people may have eaten during the past week or month . As I read each one, I'd like you to tell me whether or not it was bought or consumed in this household during the past month. "

**Then :** Ask Question 1 for each item on the list.

**Next :** For each of the items marked with a YES to Question 1 : Ask Questions 2, 3, 4 and 5

- Note:**
- For **Question 3, 4 and 5**, record the amount in the verbal form in which the respondent gives it to you.
  - For **Question 4** we want to know whether any of those foods were received in the form of a gift or as payment for work that any member of the household did.
  - For **Question 5** we want to know if the household was able to consume any of the foods listed as a result of its being produced by the household

1. Was _____ bought or consumed by this household in the past month ?	2. Does the household	3. What was the amount spent OR quantity	4. How much was received as a gift or as a payment in the	5. How much was eaten from own production in the last
---	-----------------------------	--	---	---

1. Was _____ bought or consumed by this household in the past month ?				2. Does the household usually buy or receive it weekly or monthly?		3. What was the amount spent OR quantity purchased in the last period?		4. How much was received as a gift or as a payment in the last period? (Value OR Quantity)		5. How much was eaten from own production in the last period? (Value OR Quantity)	
Code	Food name	Eaten/Bought?		Weekly -1 Monthly -2	Amount (Rand)	Amount (Quantity)	Amount (Rand)	Amount (Quantity)	Amount (Rand)	Amount (Quantity)	
		YES	NO								
01	Maize grain/samp (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
02	Mealie Meal/Maize Flour (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
03	Rice (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
04	White/Brown Bread (loaves)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
05	Wheat Flour (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
06	Breakfast Cereal (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
07	Dried Peas/Lentils/Beans (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
08	Potatoes (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
09	Tomatoes (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
10	Madumbes/Sweet Potatoes/Other Roots/Tubers (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
11	Vegetable Oil (litres)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
12	Margarine/Butter/Ghee/Other Fats (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
13	Cheese (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
14	Jam (units)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
15	Fresh Milk/Sour Milk/Yoghurt (litres)	-1	-2	-1 -2							

1. Was _____ bought or consumed by this household in the past month ?				2. Does the household usually buy or receive it weekly or monthly?		3. What was the amount spent OR quantity purchased in the last period?		4. How much was received as a gift or as a payment in the last period? (Value OR Quantity)		5. How much was eaten from own production in the last period? (Value OR Quantity)	
Code	Food name	Eaten/Bought?		Weekly -1 Monthly -2	Amount (Rand)	Amount (Quantity)	Amount (Rand)	Amount (Quantity)	Amount (Rand)	Amount (Quantity)	
		YES	NO								
16	Baby Formula/Milk Powder (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
17	Sugar (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
18	Mutton/Beef/Pork (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
19	Chicken (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
20	Eggs (Unit=one egg, not kilo)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
21	Fresh Fish (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
22	Tinned Fish (units)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
23	Pumpkin/squash (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
24	Other vegetables (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
25	Bananas (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
26	Apples (units)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
27	Citrus fruit (kilos)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
28	Soft drinks (litres)	-1	-2	-1 -2							
29	Meals prepared outside home	-1	-2	-1 -2							
30	Meals given to guests	-1	-2	-1 -2							
31	Other food expenditure/ Consumption	-1	-2	-1 -2							

#### Section 4: Non-Food Spending

## Section 4: Non-Food Spending

### 4.1 Regular Non-Food Spending

**Interviewer: For each of the items listed, ASK:**

1. In the past month, about how much, if anything, was spent on \_\_\_\_ (Ask for each item on the list below) ?

	CODE	RAND
<b>PERSONAL ITEMS:</b>		
Cigarettes, tobacco	-01	
Beer, wine, spirits	-02	
Entertainment (cinema, sports, music, etc)	-03	
Personalised care items: soap, shampoo, haircuts, facials, and so on	-04	
Newspapers/stationery, envelopes, stamps	-05	
Telephone	-06	
<b>REGULAR TRANSPORT COSTS:</b>		
Petrol, oil and car service	-07	
Buses, taxis, trains and air tickets	-08	
<b>MISCELLANEOUS:</b>		
Washing powder	-09	
Childcare	-10	
Religious and membership dues of organisations	-11	
Informal taxation and donations	-12	
Domestic servants, gardeners and other household labour	-13	

## 4.2 Occasional Non-Food Spending

**Interviewer: For each of the items listed, ASK:**

1. And in the past year, about how much was spent by the household on:

	CODE	RAND
<b>HOUSEHOLD:</b>		
Kitchen equipment, like pots and pans, lamps, torches and so on	-01	
Home maintenance and repairs to the dwelling	-02	
Bedding, sheets, blankets and towels	-03	
Furniture and other household appliances	-04	
<b>CLOTHING AND SHOES:</b>		
Shoes for adults and children	-05	
Clothes for adults and children	-06	
Material to make clothing or curtains	-07	
<b>HEALTH AND CARE: (Exclude payment to medical aid schemes)</b>		
Dentists, doctors or nurses	-08	
Hospital fees	-09	
Medical supplies, for example, medicines, bandages and so on	-10	
Traditional healer's fees	-11	
<b>PERSONAL AND OTHER ITEMS:</b>		
Holidays	-12	
Jewellery, watches, other luxury goods (eg. yacht)	-13	

## 4.3 Summary of Food and Non-Food Expenditure

### 4.3 Summary of Food and Non-Food Expenditure

**Interviewer:** Ask all households to provide a summary of expenditure in the food and non-food categories listed in the grid below.

Name the expenditure category (e.g. groceries) and then ask each of the following questions.

**Where the block is shaded, do not ask that particular question.**

1a. Code	1b. Name	2. How much did the household spend in the last month? Rand	3. How much is usually spent in a month? Rand	4. How much was spent in the last year? Rand
01	Groceries (including toiletries and household essentials)			
02	Food eaten out			
03	Holidays			
04	Cars and other vehicles (including hire purchases and lease agreements)			
05	Furniture, including hire purchase agreements			
06	Clothing			
07	Payments to domestic servants and gardeners			
08	Insurance (including life, short-term and funeral policies)			
09	Savings (including retirement annuities and stokvel contributions)			

#### 4.4 Household Durables

**Interviewer: Introduce by saying:** "I have a list of household items here which someone in the household may or may not own"

1. **Then ask:** How many \_\_\_\_\_ does the household own ? Write "0" (zero) if none owned.

	CODE	NUMBER
Motor vehicle, including cars and bakkies	-01	
Bicycles	-02	
Radio	-03	
Electric Stove	-04	
Gas Stove	-05	
Primus Cooker	-06	
Fridge	-07	
TV	-08	
Geyser	-09	
Electric Kettle	-10	
Telephone	-11	

#### 4.5 Household Debt



#### 4.5 Household Debt

1. Does any member of this household owe cash or goods to any institution or to an individual who is not a household member?

Yes.....-1

No.....-2

→ Go to Section 5

2. **Interviewer:** Introduce by saying: "I am going to read through a list of possible lenders. As I read through the list, please indicate whether or not money is owed to that source." and mark Yes or No in Question 2a.

If YES to Question 2a, then ask Questions 2b and 2c.

Note: Exclude bond on house in which respondent is living.

2a. Is anything owed to _____ ?				2b. How much is owed to _____?	2c. What is the monthly payment?
Code	Possible Lender	YES	NO	Amount	Amount
01	Relative or friend	-1	-2	R	R
02	Government Agency	-1	-2	R	R
03	Landlord	-1	-2	R	R
04	Banks or Building Society	-1	-2	R	R
05	Non Governmental Organization (NGO)	-1	-2	R	R
06	Money Lender	-1	-2	R	R
07	Stokvel/Credit Union	-1	-2	R	R
08	Burial Services	-1	-2	R	R
09	Employer	-1	-2	R	R
10	Hire Purchase	-1	-2	R	R
11	Shopkeeper Credit	-1	-2	R	R
12	Other (Specify)	-1	-2	R	R

## Section 5: Education

### 5.1 Enrolment

**Interviewer:** Ask these questions for each person on the household roster between the ages of 6 to 24 years.  
List all the names and codes from the flap first and then ask Questions 3 to 8.

1.	2.	3.		4.	5.	6.	7.	8.
		Is _____ enrolled in some kind of formal education?		If not, why? (Use code box)	What was the last year of enrolment?	How long does it take to go to and from school?	How much does it cost to travel to and from school each week?	What is the form of transport used by _____? (Use code box)
Name	Person Code	YES Go to 6.	NO	Code	Year	Minutes	Rand	Code
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					
		-1	-2					

Codes for Question 4	Codes for Question 8
01=School expenses too high 02=Needed to get work 03=Illness/disabled 04=Became pregnant 05=No school locally 06=Could not cope with school work 07=School boycott 08=Social unrest/violence 09=Completed education 10=Required for work at home or on the farm 11=Other (Specify)	1= Bus 2= Taxi 3= Train 4= Bicycle 5= Car/motor bike 6= Walk 7= Car "Pool"/Lift Club 8= Other (Describe)

### 5.2 Education Spending

1. If anything, did your household spend on the following items:

## 5.2 Education Spending

1. In the last 12 months, how much, if anything, did your household spend on the following items:

	CODE	RAND
<b>EDUCATION SPENDING:</b>		
School fees for Pre-primary Education	-01	R
School fees for Primary Education	-02	R
School fees for Secondary Education	-03	R
Tuition fees for Tertiary Education	-04	R
<b>OTHER EXPENSES:</b>		
School Uniforms	-05	R
Transport to school	-06	R
Meals at school	-07	R
Stationery for school	-08	R
School books	-09	R
Boarding Fees	-10	R
Contributions to school buildings	-11	R
Extra Costs for Teachers	-12	R
Extramural activities	-13	R
Other (Specify)	-14	R

## 5.3 Bursaries, Scholarships and School Meals

- 1a. In the past year, did the household receive any help with education in the form of bursaries, scholarships, or donations?

Yes ..... -1

No..... -2 → Go to Question 2

- 1b. If YES: What was the value of that assistance? R \_\_\_\_\_

- 2a. And did the household receive any help in the form of subsidised (cheap) or free meals at school?

Yes ..... -1

No..... -2 → Go to Section 6

- 2b. If YES: How much did the household save as a result of those meals? R \_\_\_\_\_

## Section 6: Remittances and Marital Maintenance

### 6.1 Income Received from Absent Members of the Household or from Any Other Person.

1. Are there any members of this household who have been away for more than half of the last month, (or any other persons) who send money or food, or make any other kind of contribution to this household?

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→ Go to Section 6.2

**Interviewer: SAY:** "Please name each person who has been away for more than half of the last month (and any other person) who sends money or food or makes some other kind of contribution to the household (record names in the column provided under Question 2).

**Next:.** Ask Questions 3 to 6.

- Note:**
- For **Question 4a** it is possible that the individual sending money or goods has more than one type of relationship with the household. (For instance a person may be husband, father, and grandfather) In these cases use the first applicable code from the box.
  - For **Questions 4b and 4c:** Fill in the name and the person code of the related household member from the household roster.
  - For **Questions 6a to 6c** we want to know how much do you think it would have cost the household to buy all the things that \_\_\_\_\_ brought to the household in the past 12 months?

#### Codes for Question 3

01=Pretoria-Witwatersrand-Vaal (PWV)	11=Other Urban Area in Natal
02=Durban	12=Other Urban Area in Orange Free State
03=Cape Town	13=Rural Area in Transvaal
04=Port Elizabeth	14=Rural Area in Cape Province
05=East London	15=Rural Area in Natal
06=Bloemfontein	16=Rural Area in Orange Free State
07=Kimberley	17=Homeland - Urban
08=Pietermaritzburg	18=Homeland - Rural
09=Other Urban Area in Transvaal	19=Another African country (Specify)
10=Other Urban Area in Cape Province	20=Other (Specify)

#### Codes for Question 4a

1=Wife/Husband/Partner
2=Father/Mother
3=Son/Daughter
4=Brother/Sister
5=Other Family
6=Not Related

07=Kimberley  
 08=Pietermaritzburg  
 09=Other Urban Area in Transvaal  
 10=Other Urban Area in Cape Province

17=Homeland - Urban  
 18=Homeland - Rural  
 19=Another African country (Specify)  
 20=Other (Specify)

2. List names of people making contributions to household  Names	3. Where is ____ now?  (Use code box)  Code	4. What is ____'s relationship to any member of the household ?			5. In the past 12 months, did ____ send or give money to the household?			6. In the past 12 months, did ____ make a contribution in kind to the household?		
		4a.  Relationship Code	4b.  Person Name	4c.  Person Code	5a. Number of times?  Number	5b. How much in total in the past 12 months?  Rand	5c. How much in the past 30 days?  Rand	6a. Number of times?  Number	6b. Total Value in the past 12 months?  Rand	6c. Total value in the past 30 days?  Rand

## 6.2 Absent Household Members and Other Persons Who Received Contributions from the Household.

1. Are there any members of this household who have been away for more than half of the last month, (or any other persons) who have received money, food, or any other assistance from this household in the past 12 months?

Yes ..... -1

No..... -2

→ Go to Section 7

**Interviewer: SAY:** "Please name each person who has been away for more than half of the last month (and any other person) who received food or any other kind of assistance from the household (record names in the column provided under Question 2).

In the case of the entire family being supported (like in the case of migrant workers) WRITE "Family".

**Next:.** Ask Questions 3 to 6.

**Note:** • For **Question 4a** : Fill in the relationship code from the code box

- For **Questions 4b and 4c**: Fill in the name and the person code from the flap. If name and code are not on the flap, **code 88**
- For **Questions 6a to 6c** we want to know how much do you think it would have cost the household to buy all the things that \_\_\_\_\_ brought to the household in the past 12 months?

### Codes for Question 3

01=Pretoria-Witwatersrand-Vaal (PWV)	11=Other Urban Area in Natal
02=Durban	12=Other Urban Area in Orange Free State
03=Cape Town	13=Rural Area in Transvaal
04=Port Elizabeth	14=Rural Area in Cape Province
05=East London	15=Rural Area in Natal
06=Bloemfontein	16=Rural Area in Orange Free State
07=Kimberley	17=Homeland - Urban
08=Pietermaritzburg	18=Homeland - Rural
09=Other Urban Area in Transvaal	19=Another African country (Specify)
10=Other Urban Area in Cape Province	20=Other (Specify)

### Codes for Question 4a

1=Wife/Husband/Partner
2=Father/Mother
3=Son/Daughter
4=Brother/Sister
5=Other Family
6=Not Related
7=Family

2. List names of people receiving contributions from the household  Names	3. Where is ____ now?  (Use code box)  Code	4. What is ____'s relationship to any member of the household ?			5. In the past 12 months, did the household send or give money to ____?			6. In the past 12 months, did the household make a contribution in kind to ____?		
		4a.  Relationship Code	4b.  Person Name	4c.  Person Code	5a. Number of times?  Number	5b. How much in total in the past 12 months? Rand	5c. How much in the past 30 days? Rand	6a. Number of times?  Number	6b. Total Value in the past 12 months? Rand	6c. Total value in the past 30 days? Rand

## Section 7: Land Access and Use

### 7.1 Land for Farming: Plot or Field

- 1a. Does any person in this household have the right to use (have access to) any land for arable farming, that is, to grow and cultivate crops on?  
(Interviewer: Do not include small gardens attached to the dwelling.)

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→ Go to Question 2

- 1b. IF YES: Is this land

Communal ..... -1

Private (Own Farm) ..... 2

Private (Rented) ..... 3

Other (Specify) ..... 4

.....

- 2a. Does any person in this household have the right to use (have access to) any land for stock farming, that is, to for animals to graze on?

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→ Go to Question 3

- 2b. IF YES: Is this land

Communal ..... -1

Private (Own Farm) ..... 2

Private (Rented) ..... 3

Other (Specify) ..... 4

.....

**IF NO TO BOTH QUESTION 1a AND QUESTION 2a, GO TO SECTION 7.2**

3. How much of the land does the household use for growing crops and how much does the household use for grazing of animals?

All for crops ..... -1

Most for crops ..... -2

Half for crops and half for grazing ..... -3

Most for grazing ..... -4

All for grazing ..... -5

4. What is the total size of all land that is available to household members for growing crops? Record in hectares for those who can give this information.

\_\_\_\_\_ hectares

If information cannot be given in hectares, think of a soccer field - is the total area smaller, about the same or bigger than a soccer field?

**If bigger:** Determine about how many soccer fields the land the household could use for growing crops would cover?

Interviewer: Remember: (i) A soccer field is about ½ hectare.  
(ii) One hectare equals approx. 2 acres

	5a Thinking about last year: Of the land that the household could have used for growing crops, about how much did it actually use?	5b And, what proportion of the land has the household already used or does it plan to till in 1993?
Less than half	-1	-1
About half	-2	-2
More than half	-3	-3
All	-4	-4
None	-5	-5

- 9a. Of the land that is available to the household for growing crops, was any of it rented out to other people in the past 12 months?

- 6a. What are the sources of water, if any, used on the land used for growing crops?  
(Allow for multiple responses, up to three)



6a. What are the sources of water, if any, used on the land used for growing crops?  
(Allow for multiple responses, up to three)

6b. And which is the main source? (Single mention)

	6a. Sources of water used	6b. Main Source
River/Stream	-1	-1
Dam	-2	-2
Borehole	-3	-3
Tank	-4	-4
Municipality	-5	-5
Rain	-6	-6
Neighbour	-7	-7
Other (Specify)	-8	-8
.....		

6c. About how much of the land used for growing crops is the household able to water from these sources (and not counting rain)?

- Less than half ..... -1  
 About half ..... -2  
 More than half ..... -3  
 All ..... -4  
 None ..... -5

7. Does the household have the right to sell any part of the land it uses for growing crops?

- Yes ..... -1  
 No ..... -2 → Go to Question 9

8a. If Yes: About how much of it can be sold? \_\_\_\_\_ hectares

8b. How much do you think the household would be able to get for the land if it sold the land it uses for growing crops?

R \_\_\_\_\_

9a. Of the land that is available to the household for growing crops, was any of it rented out to other people in the past 12 months?

- Yes ..... -1  
 No ..... -2 → Go to Question 10

9b. If YES: How much was paid to the household as rental for land used for crops? (Rand)

R \_\_\_\_\_

10a. Did the household have to pay rent for any of the land used for growing crops in the past 12 months?

- Yes ..... -1  
 No ..... -2 → Go to Question 11

10b. If YES: How much was paid in rent? R \_\_\_\_\_

11a. What are the sources of water, if any, used on the land used for grazing of animals? (Allow for multiple responses, up to 3)

11b. And which is the main source? (Single mention)

	11a. Sources of water used	11b. Main Source
River/Stream	-1	-1
Dam	-2	-2
Borehole	-3	-3
Tank	-4	-4
Municipality	-5	-5
Rain	-6	-6
Neighbour	-7	-7
Other (Specify)	-8	-8
.....		

- 12a. Does the household have the right to sell any part of the land it uses for the grazing of animals?

Yes ..... -1

No.....-2 → Go to Question 13

- 12b. **If Yes:** About how much of it can be sold? \_\_\_\_\_ hectares

- 12c. **If Yes:** How much do you think the household would be able to get if it sold the land it uses for the grazing of animals?

R \_\_\_\_\_

- 13a. Of the land that is available to the household for grazing of animals, was any of it rented out to other people in the past 12 months?

Yes ..... -1

No.....-2 → Go to Question 14

- 13b. **If Yes:** How much was paid to the household as rental for land used for grazing?

R \_\_\_\_\_

- 14a. Did the household have to pay rent for any of the land used for the grazing of animals in the past 12 months?

Yes ..... -1

No.....-2 → Go to Section 7.2

- 14b. **If YES:** How much was paid in rent?

R \_\_\_\_\_

## 7.2 Non-Farming Land and Other Property (Immovable Property)

1. Does any member of this household own other property or a share of other property (such as a second or holiday home, a business or commercial property) (NOT counting the property on which the household lives presently) ?

Yes..... 1

Go to Question 2

No..... 2

Go to Section 8

2. **Interviewer:** First list each property in Question 2a

Then for each of them ask questions 2b to 2d.

2a.  List of properties	2b.  How much do you think it is worth?	2c.  Is any rent being received?		2d.  Amount Received as Rental for this property in the past 12 months
		YES	NO	
01.	R	-1	-2	R
02.	R	-1	-2	R
03.	R	-1	-2	R
04.	R	-1	-2	R
05.	R	-1	-2	R
06.	R	-1	-2	R
07.	R	-1	-2	R
08.	R	-1	-2	R
09.	R	-1	-2	R
10.	R	-1	-2	R
11.	R	-1	-2	R
12.	R	-1	-2	R

## Section 8.1: Employment Status

**Interviewer:** This section is to be completed for all persons aged **16 years or more**. In this section, it is particularly important to check through the answers to the questions regarding hours of work, to confirm replies.

**First:** List all persons aged 16 and older and report their codes. Then ask Questions 3 to 8.

- Note:**
- In **Question 5** "0" (zero) is a valid answer.
  - In **Question 8** fill in the details if the response does not fall within the main codes.

1.	2.	3. Is ____ currently employed?  If NO go to Q5		4. What type of work does ____ do?	5. How many hours did ____ work last week?	6. Would ____ have preferred more work?		7. Did ____ look for more work or for a job in the last week? If YES, go to next person		8. If NO, why did ____ not look for work?
Name	Code	YES	NO	Code	Hours	YES	NO	YES	NO	Code
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	
		-1	-2			-1	-2	-1	-2	

### Codes for Question 4

- 1=Regular wage employment including self-employed professionals
- 2=Casual wage employment
- 3=Self-employment in agriculture
- 4=Other self-employment
- 5=Other (Specify)

### Codes for Question 8

- 1=Already employed
- 2=No jobs or work available
- 3=Illness
- 4=Physically disabled
- 5=Mentally disabled
- 6=Housewife/Child rearing
- 7=Formal education
- 8=Retired/Pensioner
- 9=Other (Specify)

**Interviewer:** For each respondent answering **YES to Question 7** above, please continue with Questions 9 to 15  
Begin by filling in the names and codes of the household members concerned in the grid below.

- Note:**
- For **Question 10:** if the answer is "Other", please ask the individual to describe the method he/she used and record it in the grid below.
  - For **Question 15b:** We want to know if it is a private or a public company or a factory or a private individual in the case of household and so on.

Codes for Question 10
1= Newspaper
2= Employment agencies
3= Factory gate / Knocking at the door
4= Through friends/family
5= Other (Specify)

Codes for Question 15a	Codes for Question 15b	Codes for Question 15c	
01=Professional, semi-professional and technical occupations	1= Central Government	01= Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	09= Finance
02=Managerial, executive and administrative occupations	2= Provincial Administration	02= Mining	10= Educational Services
03=Clerical and sales occupations	3= Local Authority or Regional Authority	03= Manufacturing	11= Medical Services
04=Transport, delivery and communications occupations	4= Public Corporation	04= Electricity & Water	12= Legal Services
05=Service occupations	5= Private Sector Employer	05= Construction	13= Domestic Services
06=Farming and related occupations	6= Non-Profit Institution	06= Wholesale & Retail	14= Armed Forces
07=Artisan, apprentice and related occupations	7= Self-Employment	07 = Restaurant & Hotels/Entertainment/ Sport	15= Other Services
08=Production foremen and supervisors and mining and quarrying occupations	8= Householder	08= Transport & Communication	16= Other (Specify)
09=Operators, production workers and related semi-skilled occupations	9= Other (Specify)		.....
10=Labourers			
11=Other occupations (Specify)			

9a.	9b.	10. What was the most important method by which ____ looked for work?	11. About how many hours did ____ devote to looking for work last week?	12. What is the lowest wage in rand per day that ____ would accept for a casual or day job ?	13. What is the lowest wage in rand per month that ____ would accept for a permanent job ?	14. Has ____ ever had a paid job for more than a month ? IF NO Go to Sec.8.2		15a. Describe the work that ____ did in the most recent job.		15b. Who was ____ working for in the most recent job?		15c. In which economic sector was ____ employed in the most recent job?	
Person Name	Per- son Code	Code	Hours	Rand	Rand	YES	NO	Description	Code	Employer	Code	Name	Code
						-1	-2						
						-1	-2						
						-1	-2						
						-1	-2						
						-1	-2						
						-1	-2						
						-1	-2						
						-1	-2						

## Section 8.2: Regular Employment

### 8.2.1 Regular Employment

**Interviewer:** Ask questions 1a and 1b in turn for each member of the household aged 16 years or more. Use the household roster on the flap.  
Refer to answers in Section 8.1 to see if everybody has been included.

1a. Does \_\_\_\_\_ (Read each name in turn) have a regular job for which he/she earned a salary in the past week?

Yes..... → Write the person's name and code down from the flap in the grid below.

No..... → Ask Question 1b

1b. Does \_\_\_\_\_ (Repeat the name) earn his/her living as a doctor or a lawyer or through some other special training he/she has?

Yes..... → Write the person's name and code down in the grid below in Question 2

No..... → Ask Question 1a to next person aged 16 years or more

- Note:**
- **EXCLUDE:** Farm owners, shopkeepers/owners
  - **INCLUDE:** Farm managers, shop workers, lawyers, doctors, architects, management consultants and other self-employed professionals
  - **INCLUDE:** Those workers on paid vacation

Codes for Question 3a	Codes for Question 3b	Codes for Question 3c	
01=Professional, semi-professional and technical occupations	1= Central Government	01= Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	09= Finance
02=Managerial, executive and administrative occupations	2= Provincial Administration	02= Mining	10= Educational Services
03=Clerical and sales occupations	3= Local Authority or Regional Authority	03= Manufacturing	11= Medical Services
04=Transport, delivery and communications occupations	4= Public Corporation	04= Electricity & Water	12= Legal Services
05=Service occupations	5= Private Sector Employer	05= Construction	13= Domestic Services
06=Farming and related occupations	6= Non-Profit Institution	06= Wholesale & Retail	14= Armed Forces
07=Artisan, apprentice and related occupations	7= Self-Employment	07 = Restaurant & Hotels/Entertainment/ Sport	15= Other Services
08=Production foremen and supervisors and mining and quarrying occupations	8= Householder	08= Transport & Communication	16= Other (Specify)
09=Operators, production workers and related semi-skilled occupations	9= Other (Specify)		
10=Labourers			
11=Other occupations (Specify)			

### 8.2.2. The Kind of Work (Questions 3a - 3e)

### 8.2.2. The Kind of Work (Questions 3a - 3e)

**Interviewer:** Ask the next series of questions for EACH person on the list.

- Note**
- For Question 3a : We must be able to tell what they actually do.
  - For Question 3b : We want to know if it is a private or a public company or a factory or a private individual in the case of households, and so on.
  - For Question 3c : We need to get the "business" (sector) they are in.

2a.	2b.	3a. What does ____ do?		3b. Who does ____ work for?		3c. In which economic sector is ____ employed?		3d. About how many hours, not counting travel time, does ____ work on an average day?	3e. How many hours of paid overtime, if any, did ____ work in the past week?
Name	Person Code	Describe Job	Code	Type of Employer	Code	Sector Name	Code	Hours	Overtime Hours

### 8.2.3. Payment

**Interviewer:** Write down person names and codes in Questions 4a and 4b in the grid below of all those who have REGULAR EMPLOYMENT.

**Next:** Ask Questions 4c to 4i.

**Note:** • For Question 4e DEDUCTION includes things like pension payments, unemployment insurance, medical insurance, and so on (but not tax).

4a.  Name	4b.  Person Code	4c. On what basis is ____ paid?  Wk//fortnight/mo	4d. What was ____'s actual take-home pay AFTER DEDUCTIONS in his/her pay packet?  Rand	4e. How much was deducted?  (Do not include Taxes)  Rand	4f. When you add all the amounts together, including tax and all other amounts, how much would ____ get? (Gross Pay) Rand	4g. How much, if anything, was paid to ____ in the form of a bonus in the last year?  Rand	4h. And, how much, if anything, was paid to ____ as a share of profits in the past year?  Rand	4i Does ____'s employer contribute to a pension fund on his/her behalf?  YES      NO	
		-1   -2   -3						-1	-2
		-1   -2   -3						-1	-2
		-1   -2   -3						-1	-2
		-1   -2   -3						-1	-2
		-1   -2   -3						-1	-2
		-1   -2   -3						-1	-2
		-1   -2   -3						-1	-2
		-1   -2   -3						-1	-2
		-1   -2   -3						-1	-2
		-1   -2   -3						-1	-2

### 8.2.4. Subsidies and Benefits/Equipment



### 8.2.4. Subsidies and Benefits/Equipment

**Interviewer:** Write down the same person names and codes as in the previous section in the grid below for all those who have regular employment.

**SAY:** Sometimes the people or company that people work for provide other benefits, not just pay. This is what I want to ask you about in this section.

**Note:** • Refer to same pay period specified above.

- For **Questions 5c to 5e**, the value of a subsidy is equal to the amount that \_\_\_\_\_ would have to pay each \_\_\_\_\_ pay period for that particular item. If he/she did not get the benefit "0" (zero) is a valid answer.
- Ask **Question 5g ONLY if self-employed**: Think about what it would cost to replace that equipment if it was stolen.

5a.  Name	5b.  Person Code	5c. How much does _____ get in the form of free or subsidised transport each _____ (pay period)  Rand	5d. How much does _____ get in the form of free or subsidised (cheap) food each _____ (pay period)  Rand	5e. How much does _____ get in the form of free or subsidised (cheap) housing each _____ (pay period)  Rand	5f. Is _____ a paid-up member of a Trade Union?  YES      NO		5g If self-employed: What is total value of all equipment that _____ uses to do his/her job?  Rand
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	
					-1	-2	

## Section 8.3: Wage Work: Casual or Temporary

### 8.3.1 Main Casual or Temporary Job

**Interviewer:** Ask this question for all members of the household, including children. Use the Flap.

- 1 Did \_\_\_\_\_ (Read each name in turn) do any casual or temporary work in the past month for which he/she was paid in some way, for example, by being given money or food?

Yes..... → Write the person's name and code in Questions 2a and 2b down from the flap and continue.  
 No..... → Go to Section 8.4

- Note:**
- Examples of the kind of work I mean include: gardening or cleaning, typing, temporary work in a factory, looking after someone's children, and so on.
  - Ask people about any paid work done at all, no matter how unimportant it seems, for how short a time it lasted, or how little was earned.
  - Record the MAIN casual or temporary job first and then the second job. If only one job, record as main job.

Codes for Question 3a	Codes for Question 3b	Codes for Question 3c	
01=Professional, semi-professional and technical occupations	1= Central Government	01= Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	09= Finance
02=Managerial, executive and administrative occupations	2= Provincial Administration	02= Mining	10= Educational Services
03=Clerical and sales occupations	3= Local Authority or Regional Authority	03= Manufacturing	11= Medical Services
04=Transport, delivery and communications occupations	4= Public Corporation	04= Electricity & Water	12= Legal Services
05=Service occupations	5= Private Sector Employer	05= Construction	13= Domestic Services
06=Farming and related occupations	6= Non-Profit Institution	06= Wholesale & Retail	14= Armed Forces
07=Artisan, apprentice and related occupations	7= Self-Employment	07 = Restaurant & Hotels/Entertainment/ Sport	15= Other Services
08=Production foremen and supervisors and mining and quarrying occupations	8= Householder	08= Transport & Communication	16= Other (Specify)
09=Operators, production workers and related semi-skilled occupations	9= Other (Specify)		
10=Labourers			
11=Other occupations (Specify)			

## Main Casual or Temporary Job (Continued/....)

### 8.3.2. The Kind of Work (Questions 3a - 3c)

**Interviewer:** Ask the next series of questions for EACH person on the list.

**Note**

- For Question 3a : We must be able to tell what they actually do.
- For Question 3b : We want to know if it is a private or a public company or a factory or a private individual in the case of households, and so on.
- For Question 3c : We need to get the "business" (sector) they are in.

2a.	2b.	3a. What does ____ do?		3b. Who does ____ work for?		3c. In which economic sector is ____ employed?		3d. About how many hours, not counting travel time, does ____ work on an average day?	3e. How many hours of paid overtime, if any, did ____ work in the past week?
Name	Person Code	Describe Job	Code	Type of Employer	Code	Sector Name	Code	Hours	Overtime Hours

## Main Casual or Temporary Job (Continued/. . .)

### 8.3.3. Payment

**Interviewer:** Write down person names and codes in Questions 4a and 4b in the grid below of all those who have a CASUAL or TEMPORARY JOB.

**Next:** Ask Questions 4c to 4f.

- Note:**
- For **Questions 4d and 4e**, the value of a subsidy is equal to the amount that \_\_\_\_\_ would have to pay each \_\_\_\_\_ pay period for that particular item. If he/she did not get the benefit "0" (zero) is a valid answer.
  - For **Question 4f, Ask ONLY if self-employed:** Think about what it would cost to replace that equipment if it was stolen.

4a.  Person Name	4b.  Person Code	4c. In the past month, what was ____ paid in cash for the work that he/she did?  Rand	4d. How much did ____ get in the form of free or subsidised (cheap) food as payment for the work?  Rand	4e. How much did ____ get in the form of free or subsidised (cheap) goods as payment for the work?  Rand	4f. If self-employed: What is the total value of all the equipment that ____ uses to do his/her job?  Rand

### 8.3.4 Second Casual or Temporary Job

**Interviewer:** Ask this question for all members of the household, including children who have a second casual or temporary job.

- 1 Apart from the work we have just talked about, did \_\_\_\_\_ (Read each name mentioned in the previous section in turn) do any other casual or temporary work in the past month for which he/she was paid in some way, for example, by being given money or food?

Yes..... → Write the person's name and code in Questions 2a and 2b down from the flap and continue.

No..... → Go to Section 8.4

**Note:** • Examples of the kind of work I mean include: gardening or cleaning, typing, temporary work in a factory, looking after someone's children, and so on.

- Ask people about any paid work done at all, no matter how unimportant it seems, for how short a time it lasted, or how little was earned.

Codes for Question 3a	Codes for Question 3b	Codes for Question 3c	
01=Professional, semi-professional and technical occupations	1= Central Government	01= Agriculture/Fishing/Forestry	09= Finance
02=Managerial, executive and administrative occupations	2= Provincial Administration	02= Mining	10= Educational Services
03=Clerical and sales occupations	3= Local Authority or Regional Authority	03= Manufacturing	11= Medical Services
04=Transport, delivery and communications occupations	4= Public Corporation	04= Electricity & Water	12= Legal Services
05=Service occupations	5= Private Sector Employer	05= Construction	13= Domestic Services
06=Farming and related occupations	6= Non-Profit Institution	06= Wholesale & Retail	14= Armed Forces
07=Artisan, apprentice and related occupations	7= Self-Employment	07 = Restaurant & Hotels/Entertainment/ Sport	15= Other Services
08=Production foremen and supervisors and mining and quarrying occupations	8= Householder	08= Transport & Communication	16= Other (Specify)
09=Operators, production workers and related semi-skilled occupations	9= Other (Specify)		
10=Labourers			
11=Other occupations (Specify)			

## Second Casual or Temporary Job (Continued/....)

### 8.3.5. The Kind of Work (Questions 3a - 3c)

**Interviewer:** Ask the next series of questions for EACH person on the list.

- Note**
- For Question 3a : We must be able to tell what they actually do.
  - For Question 3b : We want to know if it is a private or a public company or a factory or a private individual in the case of households, and so on.
  - For Question 3c : We need to get the "business" (sector) they are in.

2a.	2b.	3a. What does ____ do?		3b. Who does ____ work for?		3c. In which economic sector is ____ employed?		3d. About how many hours, not counting travel time, does ____ work on an average day?	3e. How many hours of paid overtime, if any, did ____ work in the past week?
Name	Person Code	Describe Job	Code	Type of Employer	Code	Sector Name	Code	Hours	Overtime Hours

## Second Casual or Temporary Job (Continued/. . .)

### 8.3.6. Payment

**Interviewer:** Write down person names and codes in Questions 4a and 4b in the grid below of all those who have a CASUAL or TEMPORARY JOB.

**Next:** Ask Questions 4c to 4f.

- Note:**
- For **Questions 4d and 4e**, the value of a subsidy is equal to the amount that \_\_\_\_\_ would have to pay each \_\_\_\_\_ pay period for that particular item. If he/she did not get the benefit "0" (zero) is a valid answer.
  - For **Question 4f**, Ask **ONLY if self-employed**: Think about what it would cost to replace that equipment if it was stolen.

4a.  Person Name	4b.  Person Code	4c. In the past month, what was ____ paid in cash for the work that he/she did?  Rand	4d. How much did ____ get in the form of free or subsidised (cheap) food as payment for the work?  Rand	4e. How much did ____ get in the form of free or subsidised (cheap) goods as payment for the work?  Rand	4f. If self-employed: What is the total value of all the equipment that ____ uses to do his/her job?  Rand

## Section 8.4: Transport

Ask all who are currently employed for a wage, salary or in-kind payment (Refer to people listed in Sections 8.2 and 8.3).

**Interviewer:** First list the people employed and then ask them Questions 3 to 5.

1.  Name	2.  Person Code	3. About how long, in total, does it usually take _____ to get to work each day?  Minutes	4. How much does it cost for _____ to get to and from work each day?  Rand	5. What kinds of transport does _____ use to get to and from work? (Up to 3 multiple mentions allowed)						
				Bus	Taxi	Train	Bicycle	Car/Motor Bike	Walk	Other (Specify)
				-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7.....
				-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7.....
				-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7.....
				-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7.....
				-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7.....
				-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7.....
				-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7.....
				-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7.....
				-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7.....
				-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7.....



## Section 8.5: Agricultural Production

### 8.5 Agricultural Production

1a. In the past 12 months, did this household grow crops or keep livestock for sale, exchange or home consumption?

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→Go to Section 8.6

1b. If YES: Was the household able to sell what was farmed over the year for more than R20,000?

Yes ..... -1

→Go to Section 8.5.2

No ..... -2

→Go to Section 8.5.1

### 8.5.1 Agriculture - Subsistence/Small-Scale

#### 8.5.1.1. Crop Production Including Home Consumption

**Interviewer Ask:** What crops, if any, did the household harvest in the past year? (Write down the relevant name and record the code from the box for each crop harvested.)

**Next:** Ask Questions 1c to 1g.

- Note:**
- For Question 1c: SAY: Let us begin with \_\_\_\_\_. (Read from Q1a). What unit would you use to measure your crop of \_\_\_\_\_? (Repeat for each crop).
  - For Questions 1c to 1g always refer to the units mentioned under Question 1c and the name of the crop in Question 1a.
  - For Question 1e: include units exchanged or bartered.
  - For Question 1f: include units given to any workers who were not members of the household, but who helped with the crop.
  - For Question 1g: include units given to people who were not members of the household in return for the right to use the land.

1a.	1b.	1c. In what unit does the household usually measure the crop of _____?		1d. How many _____ (units) of _____ (crop) were harvested in the past 12 months?	1e. How many _____ (units) of _____ (crop) did the household sell in the past 12 months		1f. How many _____ (units) of _____ (crop) were given to pay for labour?	1g. How many _____ (units) of _____ (crop) were given to pay for the use of the land?
Crop Name	Crop Code	Name	Code	Number	Number	Average price per unit	Number	Number

Codes for Questions 1b Types of Crops		Codes for Question 1c Units of Measure
01= Maize Grain	12=Millet	01= Kilos
02= Maize Fresh	13=Madumbe./Other Tubers (Specify)	02= 10 kilo bags
03= Sorghum	14=Peanuts/Nuts	03= 25 kilo bags
04= Wheat	15=Tomato	04= 50 kilo bags
05= Potato	16=Onion	05= 80 kilo bags
06= Orchard Fruit	17=Sugar/Cane	06= Tons
07= Bananas	18=Other Vegetables	07= Boxes
08= Grapes	19=Pasture Crops (e.g. lucerne)	08= 25 litre drum
09= Dry Beans	20=Commercial Flowers	09= Piece/"Ear"
10= Pumpkin/Squash	21="Imifino", "Morogo" berries, mushrooms	10= Basin (Specify size)
11= Green Vegetables	22=Other (Specify)	11= Bunches
		12= Other (Specify)

### 8.5.1.2 Livestock: Cattle, Pigs, etc.

1 Does the household own or farm with any animals or poultry of any kind?

Yes.....-1 → **Note: Ask every question from 2 to 7**

No.....-2 → **Go to Section 8.5.1.3**

	Cattle	Sheep	Goats	Pigs	Poultry
2a. How many ____ (Name of animal) does the household <u>own</u> at the moment?					
2b. In the past year, how many, if any, ____ were born?					
2c. In the past year, how many, if any ____ did the household sell?					
2d. (Ask for each kind of animal sold): In the past year, how much money did the household get from the sale of ____? (Rand)					
2e. In the past year, how many ____, if any, did the household buy?					
2f. In the past year, how many ____, if any, did the household slaughter?					
2g. In the past year, how many ____, if any, did the household lose because they were stolen or died or were run over, or something like that (e.g. fined, impounded)?					
2h. At present, how many ____, if any, has the household loaned to someone else?					
2i. And, at present, how many ____, if any, has the household borrowed from someone else?					

3 **Ask all who have cattle or goats:**

3a. About how many litres of milk were obtained from your herd during the past week (last 7 days)?

\_\_\_\_\_ litres

3b. And, how much of this was for **this household's own use**?

\_\_\_\_\_ litres

3c. And, how much of it was for **sale or exchange**?

\_\_\_\_\_ litres

3d. What was the value of milk sold or exchanged?

R \_\_\_\_\_

4 **Ask all who have hens or ducks or other poultry:**

4a. About how many eggs were obtained from your poultry during the past week (last 7 days)?

\_\_\_\_\_

4b. And, how many of these did the household **use**?

\_\_\_\_\_

4c. And, how many did the household **sell or exchange**?

\_\_\_\_\_

4d. What was the value of eggs sold or exchanged?

R \_\_\_\_\_

5 **Ask all who have sheep:** In the past 12 months, how much did the household

3. In the last 12 months, did the household receive anything in any other way not

if any, has the household borrowed  
from someone else?

5. **Ask all who have sheep:** In the past 12 months, how much did the household make, if anything, from the **sale of wool and mohair**?

R \_\_\_\_\_

6. **Ask all who own animals:** In the past 12 months, how much, if anything, did the household make from the sale of animal skins and hides?

R \_\_\_\_\_

7. What was the cost of veterinary services including medicines and dip (in cash and credit)?

R \_\_\_\_\_

### 8.5.1.3 Other Farming Income

- 1a. Did the household receive anything in the form of subsidies or drought relief in the past 12 months?

Yes.....-1

No.....-2 → **Go to Question 2**

- 1b. **If YES:** How much was it worth in rand? R \_\_\_\_\_

- 2a. In the last 12 months, did the household receive anything by providing a service to other farmers, for example, ploughing or planting?

Yes.....-1

No.....-2 → **Go to Question 3**

- 2b. **If YES:** How much was it worth in rand? R \_\_\_\_\_

3. In the last 12 months, did the household receive anything in any other way not already mentioned from farming? (Describe)

Yes.....-1 → **Describe**

No.....-2

### 8.5.1.4 Farming Assets

- 1a. Does this household own any tractors or other farming vehicles?

Yes.....-1

No.....-2 → **Go to Question 2**

- 1b. **If YES:** Approximately how much could you sell them for? R \_\_\_\_\_

- 2a. Does this household own mechanised farm equipment/pumps?

Yes.....-1

No.....-2 → **Go to Question 3**

- 2b. **If YES:** Approximately how much could you sell them for? R \_\_\_\_\_

- 3a. Does this household own other non-mechanical farm tools (Spades, hoes, etc.)?

Yes.....-1

No.....-2 → **Go to Section 8.5.1.5**

- 3b. **If YES:** Approximately how much could you sell them for? R \_\_\_\_\_

### 8.5.1.5 Other Farming Costs

In the last 12 months, how much, if anything, did the household pay in cash and credit for:

	Code	Rand
Wages for workers who helped with farming	-01	R
Farming materials, like seed, fertilizer, pesticides	-02	R
Petrol, diesel and oil for machines	-03	R
Food for the poultry or farm animals	-04	R
Farm land that was rented from someone else	-05	R
Other payments made in the last 12 months to gain access to land	-06	R
Land taxes	-07	R
Various services, for example tractors, oxen which were used for ploughing	-08	R
Interest on loans	-09	R
Any other costs (Describe)	-10	R

## 8.5.2 Agriculture - Large-Scale, Commercial

Ask these questions only for farmers whose annual turnover exceeds R20 000.

1a. Is/are this/these farm/s owned in partnership?

Yes.....-1

No.....-2 → Go to Question 2

1b. If YES: What percentage of the farm/s does this household own?

\_\_\_\_\_ %

2. In this section, I'd like you to indicate what amount you received in total in the past 12 months from your farming activities.

Let's begin with \_\_\_\_\_: How much did you receive from the sale of \_\_\_\_\_  
(Repeat for each category)

	Code	Rand
Field Crop Products (for example vegetables, wheat, etc)	-01	R
Horticultural Products (for example, Proteas, other flowers, etc)	-02	R
Animal Products (including game or cattle/sheep etc)	-03	R
Forestry Products	-04	R
Other Farm Income e.g. drought relief, subsidies (Specify)	-05	R
.....		

3. Now, I'd like us to look at the expenses incurred from farming in the past 12 months. Let us begin with capital expenses.

	Code	Rand
Capital Expenses	-01	R
New equipment	-02	R
New buildings	-03	R
Other development work on the farm	-04	R
And what were your approximate running costs through the year, including wages and interest payments?	-05	R
Any other Expenses (Specify)	-06	R
.....		

4a. How many workers do you employ on the farm for most of the year (that is, permanent workers)?

4b. What is the total number of workers employed temporarily or seasonally on the farm during the past year (Add the number of workers employed each month)?

5. Here is a list of assets that you may or may not own.  
Please tell me approximately how much it would cost to replace them?

	Code	Rand
Tractors and other farm vehicles	-1	R
Mechanised farm equipment (for example, pumps)	-2	R
Other farm tools	-3	R

## Section 8.6: Other Forms of Self-Employment

**Interviewer:** This section is to be completed for all persons. DO NOT limit questions to those aged 16 and older.

1. Apart from the work that we have already talked about, did anyone in this household do any other kind of work for an income in the past month? I am going to read from a list of possibilities. As I read each one, please indicate whether or not it was a source of income for the household in the past month?

Yes..... -1 → Write the activity's name and code in the grid below.  
 No..... -2 → Go to Section 8.7

**Probe for other forms of employment, no matter how small or temporary**

**If NO to all, GO TO SECTION 8.7**

**Interviewer:** List all the activities at household level and report their codes. Then ask Questions 3 to 9.

- Note:**
- In **Question 3** record person names and codes of up to 3 household members most involved in the activity. Put the name and code of the person who spends the most time in this activity first
  - In **Question 6**, Costs include how much was spent by members of the household in, for example, paying workers or travelling or buying stocks when involved in **the activity**. In other words what were the total expenses?
  - In **Question 8**, think about how much would it cost you to replace all the equipment and your stock if it were stolen?
  - In **Question 5,6,7,8 and 9** "0" (zero) is a valid answer

### Codes for Question 2

01=Shopkeeper	09=Taxi operator
02=Selling goods on the street	10=Food processing
03=Shebeen operator	11=Weaving cloth
04=Herbalist	12=Building or repairing houses
05=Sewing and selling clothes	13=Collecting wood/fuel for sale
06=Repairing shoes	14=Child care
07=Traditional healer	15=Self-Employed Artisan
08=Helping to transport goods to market	16=Other (Specify)

07=Traditional healer  
08=Helping to transport goods to market

15=Self-Employed Artisan  
16=Other (Specify)

1.	2.	3.						4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.
Activity Name	Activity Code	Who are the household members who spend time in the production or sale of or help in ____?						About how much time was devoted last month by all household members to ____?	How much in total did the household bring in last month as a result of ____? (Gross Sales) Rand	How much was spent in total last month by the household for ____? (Total Expenses) Rand	On average what is the monthly profit from ____? (Profit) Rand	What is the total value of equipment or stock that you need to do ____? (Value) Rand	How many people excluding household members are employed in this activity? Number
		Member 1		Member 2		Member 3							
		Name	Code	Name	Code	Name	Code						



---

## Section 8.7: Household Income from Non-Employment Sources

---

In this section we are going to talk about any money or any form of assistance that members of the household may have received from sources **which do not involve employment of some kind**. There are many ways in which the household can receive money without being employed. For example, pension payments, charity, unemployment insurance fund, government disability grants, and other forms like that.

**Interviewer :**

**First:** Introduce this section by saying :

"I will read a list of the different ways in which people can receive money or assistance, and I'd like you to indicate whether any member of the household did, in fact, receive such assistance or not."

**Then :** Ask Question 1 for each item on the list.

<b>If no to all the items, Go to Section 9</b>
--

**Next :** For each of the items marked with a YES to Question 1 : Ask Questions 2, 3 and 4.

- Note:**
- Do not include any money received from family or friends in this section..
  - If a member of the household has received money or assistance from a particular source, please make sure that you go on to ask for the estimated value of that money or assistance.

1. Did any member of the household receive income or any money from any of the sources listed below?			2. How much was received by the first person last month ?			3. How much was received by the second person last month ?			4. How much was received by the third person last month ?		
Source	Yes	No	Name	Code	Rand	Name	Code	Rand	Name	Code	Rand
01- Old Age Pension/ (Social Pension)	-1	-2									
02- Private Pension/ Private provident Fund	-1	-2									
03- Government Civil Servants pension	-1	-2									
04- Government Disability Grant	-1	-2									
05- Government Poor Relief	-1	-2									
06- Government Workmen's Compensation	-1	-2									
07- Interest earnings including dividends, interest from savings, loans	-1	-2									
08- Unemployment Insurance fund	-1	-2									
09- NGO Food or Meals	-1	-2									
10- Other NGO Transfers	-1	-2									
11- Government Supplementary Food scheme through clinics	-1	-2									
12- Other (describe)	-1	-2									

## Section 9: Perceived Quality of Life

Ask the questions in this section only to one person in the household.

Respondent Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Respondent Code: \_\_\_\_\_

1. Taking everything into account, how satisfied is this household with the way it lives these days? **(Circle one response)**

Very satisfied ..... -1  
 Satisfied..... -2  
 Neither satisfied nor dissatisfied..... -3  
 Dissatisfied..... -4  
 Very dissatisfied..... -5

2. What in your opinion could government do to most help this household improve its living conditions? In other words, what do you need most? Tell me 3 different things. **(Probe, but do not prompt. Keep on probing until three things have been mentioned.)**

**NOTE:**

- 1) Use the list below to record the needs mentioned by the respondent.
- 2) If a response does not fit the list, record under "Other" rows.

3. **When 3 things have been mentioned, ask:**

3a. Which of the three \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_ is most important? (Mark with a "1")

3b. And which one comes second? (Mark with a "2")

3c. Mark the third with a "3"

	Check Three	Rank 1, 2, 3
Jobs	-01	
Schools	-02	
Training	-03	
Clinics	-04	
Roads	-05	
Electricity	-06	
Housing	-07	
Sanitation	-08	
Piped water	-09	
Food aid	-10	
Transport	-11	
Sports facilities	-12	
Libraries	-13	
Cinemas	-14	
Banks	-15	
Shops	-16	
Peace - cessation of violence	-17	
Political Settlement	-18	
Other 1 (Specify)	-19	
Other 2 (Specify)	-20	
Other 3 (Specify)	-21	

3c. Mark the third with a "3"

4. Thinking about the last 5 years, how would you say your physical safety when you are inside your home has changed, if at all? Are you safer than you were 5 years ago, about the same, or less safe than you were 5 years ago?

More ..... -1  
The same ..... -2  
Less ..... -3

5. Now thinking about your physical safety when you are outside the home:  
How does it compare with 5 years ago? Do you feel safer than 5 years ago, about the same, or less safe than 5 years ago?

More ..... -1  
The same ..... -2  
Less ..... -3

- 6a. In the past 12 months, has any person in this household been a victim of crime?

Yes..... -1  
No..... -2 → Go to Question 7

- 6b. If YES: I have a list of things here that could have happened to people.  
I am going to read the list. As I go through each one, please say whether that has happened to somebody in this household in the past 12 months?  
(Read from list)

	YES	NO
Assault	-1	-2
Robbery	-1	-2
Rape	-1	-2
Murder	-1	-2
Abduction	-1	-2
Other (Specify) .....	-1	-2

7. When you compare your situation with that of your parents, do you think you are richer, about the same, or poorer than they were?

Richer ..... -1  
The same ..... -2  
Poorer ..... -3

8. Suppose we get a new government: Do you think the situation for your household will get better, stay the same, or get worse?

Get better ..... -1  
Stay the same ..... -2  
Get worse ..... -3

## Section 10: Health

### 10.1 Health Spending/Incidence/Expense

1. Think about the last two weeks: Has any member of the household been sick or injured during the past two weeks? This includes people who have some form of permanent injury, disability, or ailment.

Yes ..... -1

No ..... -2

→ Go to Section 10.2

**Interviewer : if YES, ask:** Please name each person who has been sick or injured during the past two weeks or any person who is disabled.  
(Prompt fully by asking: Anybody else? Write down the person name and code of each person mentioned.)

**Next:** Do all the questions for each person listed before going onto the next person.

- Note:**
- For **Question 5:** if there is not a second illness code as a "00".
  - After **Question 6:** Circle all individuals that are still sick at the time of interview.
  - For **Question 9c:** record the actual total cost to the household for consultation, accommodation at hospitals or clinics, medicines, etc.
  - For **Question 9d:** record the actual cost to the household of medicines only.
  - For **Question 10:** Ask only if the answer in Question 8 is "No-one". Otherwise move to next the person

2. Name of Person Injured Disabled or Sick	3.	4. What was the nature of the main illness, injury, disability or ailment?	5. What was the nature of the second illness, injury, disability or ailment if any?	6. How many of the past 14 days has ___ been sick or injured?	7. How many of the past 14 days has ___ not being able to do what he/she normally does because of illness or injury?	8. Who if anyone has been consulted to deal with illness or injury? IF Code=1 Go to Q.10	9a. How long did it take to get there?	9b. How long did ___ have to wait to get treat- ment?	9c. How much was charged in total ?	9d. What was the cost of medi- cines?	10. If "no-one" in Q.8 Why did ___ not want to consult/see someone or go somewhere for treatment?
Name	Code	Code	Code	Days	Days	Code	Minutes	Minutes	Rand	Rand	Code

Codes for Question 4 and Question 5		Codes for Question 8	Codes for Question 10
01=Tuberculosis	12=Flu	01= No-one	01= Did not want or need to
02=Asthma	13=Fever	02= Family or friend	02= Too expensive
03=Malaria	14=Injury	03= Private Doctor	03= Insufficient money for transport
04=Rheumatic heart disease	15=Violence-related injury	04= Traditional healer	04= Did not know where to go
05=High blood pressure	16=Illness related to pregnancy	05= Health centre or Clinic	05= Knew where to go, but did not know how to get there
06=Measles	17=Cancer	06= Hospital	06= Hours were not convenient
07=Hepatitis B	18=Allergies	07= Visit by Primary Health Worker	07= Would lose pay from work
08=Kidney problems	19=Diabetes	08= Pharmacy	08= Did not speak respondent's language
09=Stroke	20=HIV infection	09= Shop/ Supermarket	09=Too many people waiting to be seen
10=Cirrhosis of the liver	21=Physical disability (Specify)	10= Private Nurse	10=Other (Specify)
11=Diarrhoea/gastroenteritis	22=Mental disability	11= Other (Specify)	
	23=Other (Specify)		

## Household Roster Flap

**Interviewer:** Copy name, code and age of all the regular household members circled in the household roster section on page 5.  
Use it as, a reference for the other section

[illegible][illegible][illegible]